Outcomes of the curriculum

أهداف المنهج (جميع الوحدات)

Unit 7

Lesson 1 : To read short texts to find specific information.

Lesson 2 : To form and use the simple verb tenses.

Lesson 3 : To use simple questions forms.

Lesson 4 : To write a description of a day in someone's life.

Lesson 5 : To describe characters, setting and major events in a story using key details.

Lesson 6 : To understand the language features of a specific type of text.

Lesson 7 : To ask and answer questions about your weekend.

Unit 8

Lesson 1 : To form and use present simple questions about measurements. To say large numbers correctly.

Lesson 2 : To use adjectives to describe places.

Lesson 3 : To use the superlative form of adjectives.

Lesson 4 : To ask someone for their opinion and agree or disagree with it.

Lesson 5 : To read short texts to find specific information.

Lesson 6 : To write an opinion piece.

Lesson 7 : To write an email to a friend about your best holiday (workbook).

Unit 9

Lesson 1 : To read a range of high-frequency words.

Lesson 2 : To use context to confirm or self-correct word recognition and understanding, rereading as necessary.

Lesson 3 : To read and respond to short explanatory texts.

Lesson 4 : To identify a text type from its format and appearance.

Lesson 5 : To express facts, points of view, hopes and aspirations.

Lesson 6 : To write descriptions giving examples.

Lesson 7 : To review and use the vocabulary and structures of the unit.

Unit 10

Lesson 1 : To gather information from provided sources to answer a question.

Lesson 2 : To express facts.

Lesson 3 : To take turns speaking about the topics and texts under discussion.

Lesson 4 : To answer such questions as who, what, where, when, why, and how to demonstrate understanding of key details in a text.

Lesson 5 : To explain orally verbal and non-verbal age appropriate texts.

Lesson 6 : To read and respond to short explanatory texts.

Lesson 7 : To write a description of your school.

Unit 11

Lesson 1 : To describe sea animals.
To use the zero conditional.

Lesson 2 : To use regular and irregular verbs.
To interpret non-verbal reading texts.

Lesson 3 : To identify gist and main idea(s) in short listening texts.

Lesson 4 : To ask and answer questions in order to seek help, get information, or clarify something that is not understood.

Lesson 5 : To read a simple short story or biography and express a basic opinion about characters or the plot.

Lesson 6 : To skim grade appropriate text to get the general idea.

Lesson 7 : To pronounce familiar words with some accuracy.

Unit 12

Lesson 1 : To research information about a scientist.

Lesson 2 : To use question tags.
To ask and answer questions in order to clarify something.

Lesson 3 : To demonstrate understanding of key details in a text.

Lesson 4 : To use critical thinking to discuss an issue.

Lesson 5 : To express facts, points of view, hopes and aspirations.

Lesson 6 : To plan texts orally.

Lesson 7 : To make a poster about a job.

Contents

Unit 7

SB pages 2:11 WB pages 70:76

How was your weekend ?



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A diary entry; Robinson Crusoe
- **Writing :**
  A diary entry giving your opinion about a fantastic day
- **Listening :**
  An interview with a musician
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about your weekend; discussing types of music
- **Language :**
  Past simple time expressions; questions review; responding to past events with although and because
- **Life Skills :**
  Making decisions

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5 WB pages 70 & 71



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

aquarium (n) متحف الأحياء المائية / حوض أسماك



sports centre (n) مركز رياضى



funfair (n) مدينة الملاهى



planetarium (n) القبة السماوية / مرصد فلكى

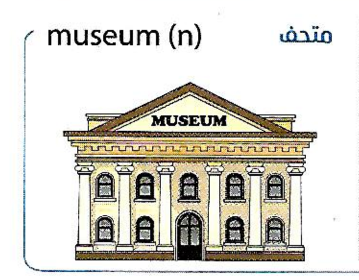
football stadium (n) ستاد كرة القدم



bowling alley (n) صالة البولينج



museum (n) متحف



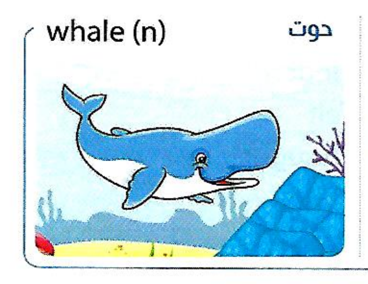
big wheel (n) العجلة الدوارة (فى مدينة الملاهى)



nervous (adj) متوتر / عصبى



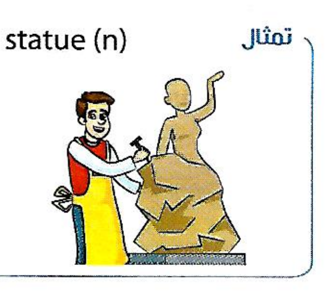
whale (n) حوت



team (n) فريق



statue (n) تمثال



Key Vocabulary

weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	diary (n)	مفكرة (يوميات)
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	school uniform (n)	الزى المدرسى
exhibition (n)	معرض - عرض	school canteen (n)	مقصف المدرسة (كانتين)

Lesson 1

SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

shark (n)	سمكة قرش	stars (n)	نجوم
closed (adj)	مغلق	bowling (n)	البولينج (لعبة الكرات الخشبية)
football match (n)	مباراة كرة قدم	restaurant (n)	مطعم
dolphin (n)	دولفين	haircut (n)	قصة الشعر
arrive (d) (v)	يصل	moon (n)	قمر
breakfast (n)	وجبة الإفطار	dinner (n)	وجبة العشاء

Lesson 2

SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

move (d) (v)	ينتقل - ينقل	decision (n)	قرار
shopping (n)	التسوق	aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر ...
hope (d) (v)	يأمل - يتمنى	option (n)	اختيار
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة	salad (n)	سلطة
fantastic (adj)	رائع	determine (d) (v)	يحدد
activities (n)	أنشطة	challenge (d) (v) , (n)	يتحدى / تحدى
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	select (ed) (v)	يختار
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما - تمامًا	solution (n)	حل
lunch (n)	وجبة الغداء	history (n)	تاريخ
great (adj)	رائع - عظيم	park (n)	حديقة عامة
fun (n)	متعة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took	taken
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
know	يعرف	knew	known

drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	driven
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant
win	يفوز	won	won
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
leave	يغادر / يرحل	left	left
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
correct	صحيح	incorrect	غير صحيح
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم
nervous	متوتر / عصبى	quiet / relaxed	هادئ / مسترخ
friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
dark	ظلام	light	ضوء
effective	فعال / مؤثر	ineffective	غير فعال / غير مؤثر
like	يحب	dislike	يكره
delicious	لذيذ	terrible	سئ / فظيع

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

aquarium	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water متحف الأحياء المائية
bowling alley	a place where you can go bowling صالة بولينج
canteen	a dining room in an office, building or school كانتين (مطعم) / (مقصف المدرسة)
funfair	a park with fun rides and games مدينة ملاهى
museum	a building to keep and display important things from the past متحف

planetarium	an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets	مرصد فلكى / قبة سماوية
sports centre	a place where you can do sports indoors	مركز رياضى
stadium	a place where you can play or watch sports matches	استاد رياضى
nervous	worried or frightened about something	متوتر / عصبى

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

talk about	يتحدث عن	quite nervous	متوتر إلى حد ما
ride on the big wheel	يركب على المراجيح الدوارة	at the end of ...	فى نهاية ...
		It was a lot of fun	كان ممتعًا جدًا
look at the stars	ينظر الى النجوم	work with	يعمل / يتعامل مع
move to a new house	ينتقل إلى منزل جديد	decide to ...	يقرر أن ...
It took 3 hours to ...	استغرق ثلاث ساعات لـ ..	make a decision	يتخذ قرار
		aged five	بالغ من العمر خمس سنوات
frightened of	خائف من	on the other side of the town	على الجانب الآخر من المدينة
make things	يصنع الأشياء		
the best solution for	أفضل حل لـ	eat out	يتناول الطعام بالخارج (فى مطعم)
take the bus to city	يستقل الأتوبيس إلى المدينة	like being outside	يحب أن يكون بالخارج
in order to + inf. ...	لكى ...	come home	يعود إلى المنزل

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

have breakfast / lunch	يتناول وجبة الإفطار / الغداء	go shopping	يتسوق
		listen to music	يستمع للموسيقى
have a maths lesson	لديه حصة رياضيات	have a haircut	يعمل قصة شعر
go swimming	يذهب للسباحة	meet my best friend	أقابل صديقى المفضل
go on the big wheel	يركب المراجيح الدوارة	do different things	يقوم بأشياء مختلفة
go bowling	يلعب لعبة البولينج	do the same things	يقوم بعمل نفس الأشياء
go to bed early	يذهب للفراش مبكرًا	do homework	يقوم بأداء الواجب المنزلى
have a fantastic weekend	يقضى اجازة رائعة	do a sport	يمارس رياضة

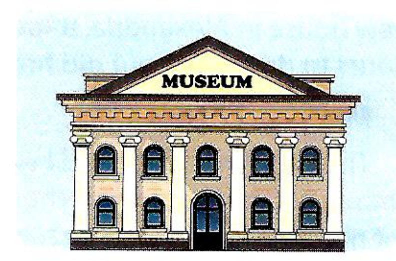
II Reading and listening

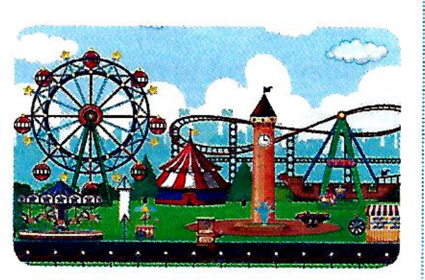


on Lesson 1 SB page 3

Narrator : Listen to Dina talk about her birthday.

Dina : It was my birthday[(1)] last Saturday so I went to the museum[(2)] with my mum and sister, and we saw some old statues[(3)]. We learned a lot. In the evening, I wanted to go to the funfair[(4)] but my brother wanted to go to his favourite restaurant. I love my brother so we went to the restaurant. We went there four months ago for his birthday too! And two days ago, on Sunday we went to the planetarium[(5)] but it was closed[(6)]. So we took a bus to the aquarium[(7)] on the other side of[(8)] town. It was fantastic, I saw a shark[(9)]!







Check Vocabulary

(1) عيد ميلاد	(2) متحف	(3) تماثيل	(4) مدينة الملاهي	(5) مرصد فلكي
(6) مغلق	(7) متحف الأحياء المائية	(8) الجانب الآخر من	(9) سمكة قرش	





Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

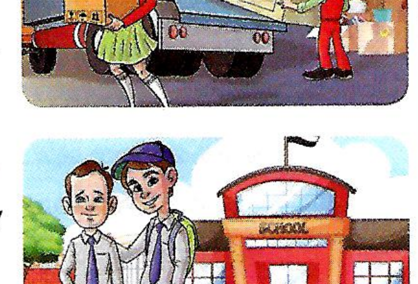
1 *Read Adam's diary[1]. What do you think the word nervous[2] means and why does Adam feel this ?*

Sunday 8th May

Yesterday our family moved to[3] our new house in Alexandria. It took[4] three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.

Monday 9th May

This morning, mum and I went shopping[5] to buy a new school uniform[6] for me. I hope students are friendly[7] in my new school !



Tuesday 10th May

Today I went to my new school. I was quite nervous, but I sat next to a boy called Sami and he was friendly. We had lunch together in the school canteen[8].

Check Vocabulary

(1) مفكرة يوميات	(2) متوتر / عصبى	(3) انتقل إلى	(4) استغرق
(5) ذهب للتسوق	(6) زى مدرسى	(7) ودود	(8) المقصف المدرسى (الكانتين)

on Lesson 2 SB page 4

2 *Read another page from Adam's diary. What is great ?*

Monday 16th May

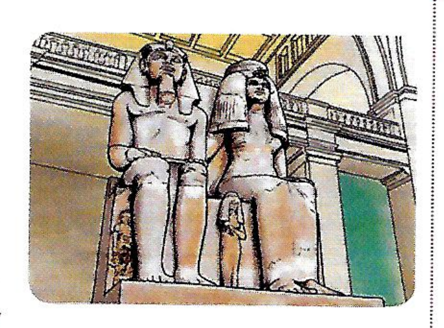
What a fantastic[1] weekend[2] ! I went to Sami's house on Saturday and we played football, in the park. I don't usually like football but all his brothers wanted to play. It was a lot of fun ! On Sunday, mum helped me with my homework. Then dad and I went to the sports centre[3]. It is great, there is a really big swimming pool[4].



Check Vocabulary

(1) رائع	(2) عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	(3) مركز رياضى	(4) حمام سباحة

on Lesson 2 wB page 71



I had a fantastic weekend!

It was my friend Dalia's birthday[1] and her family took us to some exciting[2] places. In the morning, we went to the funfair[3]. I didn't go on the big wheel but I enjoyed my time there. In the afternoon, we visited a museum[4]. We saw some very old statues[5]. I remembered all the things that our teacher taught us in history[6]! In the evening, I ate at Dalia's house and I came home very late[7]!

Check Vocabulary

عيد ميلاد (1)	مثيرة (2)	مدينة ملاهى (3)	متحف (4)	تماثيل قديمة جدًا (5)	تاريخ (6)	متأخر جدًا (7)

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 exhibition - exhibit

* **exhibition (n)** — عرض / معرض (للفنون أو التحف والتماثيل)

ex.: - I saw an exhibition about dolphins.

* **exhibit (n)** — المعروض (التحفة أو التمثال المعروض)

ex.: - I saw a lot of exhibits in the Egyptian Museum such as coins and statues.

2 go + (activity + ing)

لاحظ غالبًا ما يأتى هذا الفعل مع الأنشطة والرياضات المضاف لها (ing)

ex.: - I went bowling.
- She goes shopping every Friday.

3 funfair - fair

* **funfair (n)** — مدينة ملاهى

ex.: - Dream Park is one of the most fantastic funfairs in Cairo.

* **fair (n)** — معرض

ex.: - I go to the Cairo Book Fair every year.

4 quite (adv) بمعنى (إلى حد ما) وتستخدم بعدها صفة (تبين درجة الصفة)

ex.: - She is quite nervous.

5 frightened of (inf. + ing) / noun خائف من

ex.: - He is frightened of the dark.
- She is frightened of crossing the road.

6 like / love (inf. + ing) / noun. أفعال تستخدم بمعنى (يحب)

ex.: - He likes going to the zoo.
- She loves flowers.

7 لاحظ أن : جميع أسماء الرياضات لا تأخذ **(a , an , the)**

ex.: - SB I played tennis.
- Do you like football ?

أما إذا استخدمت تلك الألعاب الرياضية كصفات تستخدم (a, an , the) قبلها حسب الجملة :

ex.: - SB I watched a football match yesterday.
- The tennis match I played yesterday was exciting.

8 hear - listen

* **hear (v)** يسمع (تدل على القدرة على الاستماع بدون إنتباه) (حاسة السمع)

ex.: - Can bats hear ?

* **listen to (v)** ينصت إلى (تدل على الانتباه والإصغاء باهتمام)

ex.: - Good students should listen to their teachers.

9 move

* **move** يُحرك / يتحرك

ex.: - Please, move this chair away, Basem.
- Trees move in the wind.

* **move to** ينتقل إلى مسكن جديد

ex.: SB Yesterday, our family moved to a new house in Alexandria.

10 have — لاحظ أن : الفعل (have) له عدة معان مختلفة

* **have = own** — يستخدم بمعنى يمتلك

ex.: - My father has a blue car.

* **have = eat** — يستخدم بمعنى يأكل

ex.: - I have lunch in the school canteen.

* **have = drink** — يستخدم بمعنى يشرب

ex.: - I have juice after meals.

11 sport - sports — ملحوظة :

* **sport (n)** — تستخدم كاسم بمعنى رياضة

ex.: - My favourite sport is football.

* **sports (adj)** — تستخدم كصفة بمعنى رياضي (متعلق بالنشطة الرياضية)

ex.: - Ali is at the sports centre.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I want to watch the match between Egypt and South Africa, so I will go to the ....
 a. court b. stadium c. playground d. funfair
2. Salma is going to the .... She loves riding on the big wheel.
 a. funfair b. planetarium c. sports centre d. aquarium
3. I went to Helwan .... to see the beautiful stars through the huge telescope.
 a. funfair b. stadium c. sports centre d. planetarium
4. There are a lot of colourful fish in the ....
 a. swimming pool b. sports centre
 c. aquarium d. planetarium
5. Don't forget to write the date of our meeting in your ....
 a. calendar b. dairy c. date d. diary
6. In the science museum, I saw a/an .... about dolphins.
 a. exhibition b. decision c. match d. bowling

7. Toka was very .... about her exams, so she couldn't sleep.
   a. happy   b. nervous   c. pleased   d. content

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Egyptian .... is full of ancient statues and coins.
   a. School   b. Museum   c. Hospital   d. Centre
2. The bowling .... is a building where you can go bowling.
   a. ball   b. alley   c. bowler   d. bowl
3. The big .... is one of the fantastic rides in the funfair.
   a. wall   b. whale   c. wheel   d. wing
4. No one lives in the Arctic القطب الشمالى ....
   a. Match   b. Tree   c. Area   d. Wheel
5. There are very old .... at the Egyptian Museum.
   a. centres   b. statues   c. pyramids   d. temples
6. Samar, ... thirteen, is in prep one this year.
   a. age   b. aging   c. aged   d. ages
7. I went .... yesterday morning. I bought a lot of groceries بقالة .
   a. shopping   b. swimming   c. bowling   d. diving
8. I .... a haircut two weeks ago.
   a. did   b. took   c. had   d. made
9. SB It .... three hours to drive from our old house in Cairo.
   a. talked   b. had   c. took   d. spent
10. For school, I always wear a school ....
    a. uniform   b. money   c. research   d. hobby
11. WB Hassan .... to Cairo in 2019.
    a. moved   b. waved   c. gave   d. did
12. A/An .... is a dining room in an office, building or a school.
    a. aquarium   b. city   c. alley   d. canteen

III Language

Review on The Past Simple Tense مراجعة على زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation التكوين



الجمل الخبرية
المثبتـة

(a) Regular verbs : **(أ) الأفعال المنتظمة :**

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

◀ الفعل المنتهى بـ :

e (بعض الأفعال)	+ d	invite → invited
(حرف ساكن) + y	+ ied	carry → carried
(حرف متحرك) + y	+ ed	stay → stayed
(حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك)	يضاعف الحرف الأخير + ed	stop → stopped
بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها	+ ed	visit → visited

(b) Irregular verbs : **(ب) الأفعال غير المنتظمة :**

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع هذه القاعدة (تحفظ) كما هى مثل :

الفعل	الماضى	الفعل	الماضى
cut	cut	put	put
eat	ate	drink	drank
swim	swam	go	went
sleep	slept	ride	rode

لاحـظ أن : يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى كالآتى :

I / He / She / It	فاعل مفرد →	was / wasn't
We / They / You	فاعل جمع →	were / weren't

ex. - Mariam was frightened of the cave.
- There weren't any cars on the beach.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Subject فاعل **+ didn't + inf.** المصدر

ex. - He didn't study his lessons yesterday.
- I didn't send an email to my friend last week.
- She didn't go to the beach.

3 Interrogative صيغـة الاستفهام

(a) Yes/No questions : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

فى حالة السؤال باستخدام «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل **+ inf.** المصدر **?**

ex. - Did you clean the car ?
- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

(b) Wh-questions : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

فى حالة السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام **+ did + subject** الفاعل **+ inf.** المصدر **..... ?**

ex. - What did you study ?
- Where did she go ?

Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

in the past	في الماضي
yesterday	أمس
this morning	هذا الصباح
in 1999	فى عام ١٩٩٩
in October	فى شهر أكتوبر



Usage الاستخدام

◄ يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى زمن الماضى.

ex.: - Maha helped her mother with her work last night.
- She went to school two hours ago.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Abdallah had lunch with his brother Ali ....
   a. tomorrow b. next week c. yesterday d. now
2. Rokaya worked very hard and .... very well in the exam.
   a. do b. does c. doing d. did
3. On Sunday 8th May, our family .... to our new house in Alexandria.
   a. moved b. moving c. are moved d. were moved
4. We .... lunch together in the school canteen this morning.
   a. is having b. having c. had d. has

5. WB It's Wednesday today, so it was Tuesday ....

a. this morning b. last morning c. yesterday d. tomorrow

6. Last October, I .... my uncle and cousins in Cairo.

a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting

7. How did you .... when you started a new school ?

a. feels b. felt c. feel d. feeling

8. Three days ago, Ali .... to Alexandria with his family.

a. drive b. drives c. drove d. is driving

9. My uncle .... his car in 2002.

a. is buying b. buy c. buys d. bought

10. .... you enjoy the game last week ? - Yes, I did.

a. Were b. Are c. Did d. Do

11. Who did you .... last night ?

a. sees b. seen c. saw d. see

12. Mr Ayman didn't .... the office early yesterday.

a. leaves b. leave c. left d. leaving

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I have lunch with my friends yesterday. (.................................)
2. This morning, mum and I go shopping. (.................................)
3. I had a maths lesson two days last. (.................................)
4. Did you ill yesterday ? (.................................)
5. What places do you visit last weekend ? (.................................)
6. Last night, I listen to music. (.................................)

IV Speaking Corner

Talking about your weekend

الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Stimulus ?	Response ✓
• When did you go to the funfair ? - متى ذهبت إلى الملاهى ؟	- I went to the funfair last Saturday at 8 o'clock. ذهبت إلى مدينة الملاهى السبت الماضى فى تمام الساعة الثامنة.
• Where did you go last Sunday morning ? - أين ذهبت الأحد الماضى صباحًا ؟	- I went to the planetarium. ذهبت إلى القبة السماوية (المرصد الفلكى).
• Where did you have your dinner last Monday ? - أين تناولت العشاء الاثنين الماضى ؟	- I had my dinner at a restaurant last Monday. تناولت العشاء الاثنين الماضى فى مطعم.



V Writing

Stop here !

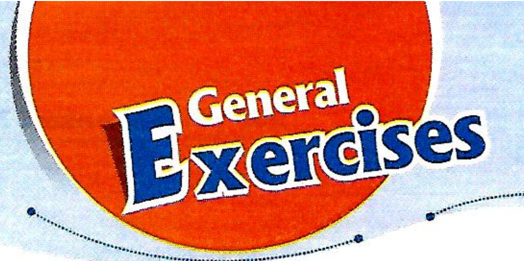
الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«How was your last weekend ?»

1. Last weekend, I went bowling. ١. لعبت لعبة البولينج فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الماضى.
2. I rode on the big wheel. ٢. ركبت لعبة عجلة الملاهى الدوارة.
3. I saw an exhibition about dolphins. ٣. رأيت معرض عن الدرافيل.
4. I had dinner in a restaurant. ٤. تناولت العشاء فى مطعم.

«Moving to a new house»

1. I moved to a new house with my family. ١. انتقلت إلى منزل جديد مع عائلتى.
2. I went shopping to buy a new school uniform. ٢. ذهبت للتسوق لشراء زى مدرسى جديد.
3. I was quite nervous. ٣. كنت عصبى إلى حد ما.
4. I sat next to a friendly boy. ٤. جلست بجانب ولد ودود.



On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Dad is good at ....
   a. swimming b. football c. riding d. basketball
2. Mum's .... are delicious.
   a. foods b. cookies c. salads d. cakes
3. My .... likes making things.
   a. dad b. mum c. sister d. brother
4. Dad likes ....
   a. sports b. salad c. cooking d. fishing

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman : What did you do last weekend ?
Ashraf : I went to the (1) ....
Ayman : The funfair ! That's fantastic.
Ashraf : Which ride did you (2) .... most ?
Ayman : I loved the big (3) ....
Ashraf : How (4) .... was the ticket for the big wheel ?
Ayman : It (5) .... 20 pounds.
Ashraf : Fantastic ! What else did you do ?
Ayman : I ate some popcorn.
Ashraf : That's my favourite!

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I .... breakfast with my family yesterday.
   a. spent b. played c. talked d. had
2. Last week, we .... to a new house in Tanta.
   a. moved b. made c. saw d. grew
3. Adults usually .... good decisions.
   a. deliver b. spend c. make d. do

4. WB The balls are heavy at the ....
   a. bowling alley   b. swimming pool
   c. stadium   d. handball ground
5. We buy candies حلوى and chips from the school ....
   a. box   b. canteen   c. factory   d. library
6. Most Egyptians are kind and ....
   a. friendly   b. irregular   c. wild   d. hard
7. A .... is an indoor centre where you can learn about stars and planets.
   a. sports centre   b. planetarium   c. swimming pool   d. funfair
8. How .... your day yesterday ? - It was nice.
   a. were   b. was   c. is   d. did
9. We .... in the swimming pool last month.
   a. swim   b. swam
   c. was swimming   d. are swimming
10. What did you .... for lunch yesterday ?
   a. ate   b. eating   c. eats   d. eat

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Two days ago, she <u>is</u> in hospital. (.................................)
2. Where did you <u>went</u> yesterday ? (.................................)
3. We climbed the mountain <u>next</u> night. (.................................)
4. I <u>have</u> a wonderful time at the zoo this morning. (.................................)

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"How was your weekend ?"

....

....

....

....

....

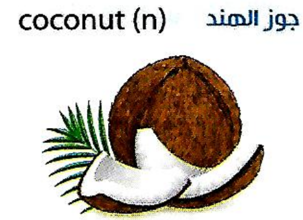
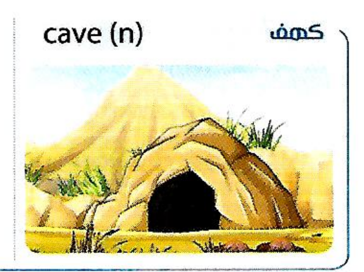
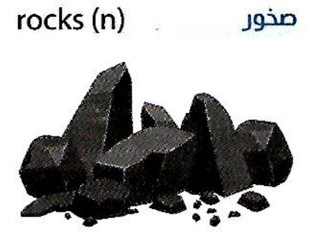
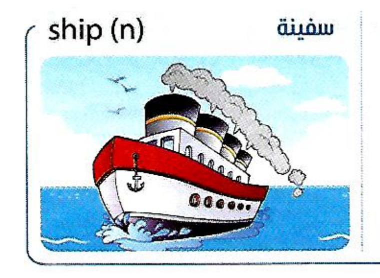
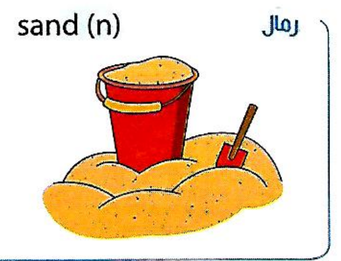


SB pages 6 : 8 WB pages 72 & 73



Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

musician (n) موسيقار	island (n) جزيرة	sailor (n) بحار
		
storm (n) عاصفة	coconut (n) جوز الهند	cave (n) كهف
		
jungle (n) أدغال - غابة	rocks (n) صخور	beach (n) شاطئ
		
ship (n) سفينة	trumpet (n) آلة البوق	sand (n) رمال
		

Key Vocabulary

interview (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى حوار / مقابلة رسمية (شخصية)	opinion (n)	رأى
interviewer (n)	محاور (من يقوم بتوجيه الأسئلة فى المقابلة الشخصية)		

Types of music

أنواع الموسيقى

jazz	موسيقى الجاز	opera	الأوبرا (ألحان وحوار)
classical	الموسيقى الكلاسيكية	pop	موسيقى البوب
rock	موسيقى الروك (الصاخبة)	traditional music	الموسيقى التقليدية

Lesson 3

SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

type (n)	نوع	share (d) (v)	يشارك
sound (ed) (v), (n)	يبدو - صوت (شىء)	stress (ed) (v)	يشدد الحرف (على كلمة أو مقطع)
voice (n)	صوت (بشرى)	jacket (n)	جاكت

Lesson 4

SB page 8 WB page 73

adventure (n)	مغامرة	dead (adj)	ميت
terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
nearby (adj)	قريب	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
arrive (d) (v)	يصل	through (prep)	خلال
alone (adj), (adv)	وحده / بمفرده	nut (n)	حبة مكسرات - بندق
shapes (n)	أشكال	glass (n)	زجاج
without (prep)	بدون	nobody (pron)	لا أحد
entry (n)	دخول - مقدمة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
rise	يرتفع / يعلو	rose	risen
fall	يسقط / ينخفض	fell	fallen
sink	يغرق	sank	sunk
find	يجد	found	found
swim	يسبح	swam	swam



Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
rise	يعلو	fall	ينخفض
end	نهاية	beginning / start	بداية
sink	يغرق	float	يطفو
nearby	قريب	far away	بعيد
dead	ميت	alive	على قيد الحياة / حى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

alone	not with other people	بمفرده
classical music	a type of serious music played by people like Mozart	موسيقى كلاسيكية
coconut	large brown nuts	جوز هند
jazz	a type of music first played by black Americans	موسيقى الجاز
opera	a type of music where actors sing the words of a story	الأوبرا
pop music	a type of popular music	موسيقى البوب
rock music	a type of popular music usually played with electric guitars	موسيقى الروك
sailor	someone who works on a boat or a ship	بحار
sink	go down into water	يغوص (الأشياء)
terrible	very bad	رهيب
traditional	using ideas or ways that people first used a long time ago	تقليدى

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

an interview with ...	مقابلة شخصية مع ...	Remember to + inf.	تذكر أن ...
play the piano	يعزف البيانو	on the island	على الجزيرة
write down	يدون (ملاحظات)	walk along	يمشى باستقامة / بطول ...
in each question	فى كل سؤال	walk through	يمشى خلال
share ... with	يتشارك .. مع	sleep on a bed	ينام فى الفراش
have different opinions	لديه آراء مختلفة	without any people	بدون أى أشخاص
go down into	ينخفض / يهبط إلى	want to + inf.	يريد أن ...
it is good for you	إنه جيد بالنسبة لك	all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم
it is difficult to + inf.	إنه من الصعب أن	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
What happened ?	ماذا حدث ؟	look for	يبحث عن

II Reading and Listening



Listening Lesson 3 SB page 6

Listen to an interview with the musician Marvin Allstar.

Interviewer : Marvin Allstar is a famous(1) musician(2). He writes songs and plays in a band(3). Hello, Marvin, what type of music do you like ?

Marvin : Hello. Well, I like jazz music(4) best. I play the trumpet(5) in a jazz band.



Check Vocabulary

(1) مشهور	(2) موسيقار	(3) فرقة موسيقية	(4) موسيقى الجاز	(5) آلة البوق



Interviewer : The trumpet ? When did you learn to play the trumpet ?

Marvin : Oh, when I was about 12. I learned the piano first when I was four, and I moved on to[6] the trumpet at 12. I like the sound[7] of the trumpet.

Interviewer : Amazing! Do you like pop music[8] ?

Marvin : No, I don't, and I don't like rock music[9]. But I quite like traditional[10] music.

Check Vocabulary

(6) انتقل إلى	(7) صوت	(8) موسيقى البوب	(9) موسيقى الروك	(10) تقليدى

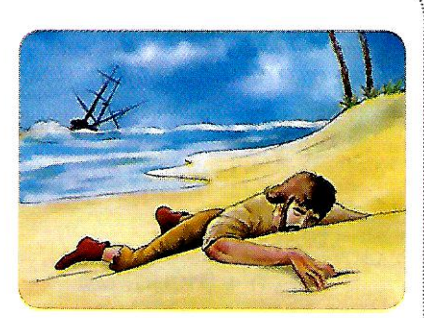
Videoscript on Lesson 3

There are lots of different styles of music ...
... such as classical ... jazz ...
... and opera. Did you know that people first watched the famous opera Aida, by Giuseppe Verdi, in Cairo in 1871 ?
Hakim is a very popular singer. He sings to modern and traditional music. This style[1] of music is called Geel.
Hakim is famous in Egypt and other countries around the world.
You can often hear music at weddings[2] and other celebrations[3].
Egypt also has a lot of traditional music. You can hear it from Alexandria to Aswan.
In traditional music you can hear instruments[4] like drums and the ney[5]. The ney is a type of flute.
Another traditional instrument is the qanun[6]. This is a string instrument[7] that you play with your fingers. You can also hear the violin ...
... and the oud[8]. The oud is similar to the guitar, but it usually has more strings.
You can also hear these instruments in many other countries.
Do you like music ? What styles of music do you like ?

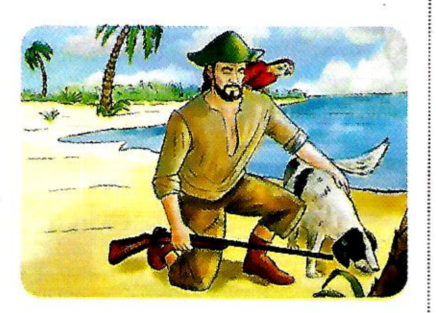
Check Vocabulary

(1) أسلوب	(2) حفلات الزفاف	(3) احتفالات	(4) آلات موسيقية	(5) آلة الناى	(6) آلة القانون	(7) آلة وترية	(8) آلة العود





Robinson Crusoe is an adventure[1] story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor[2]. One day his ship sank[3] because there was a really terrible storm[4]. Crusoe swam to a nearby[5] island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary[6] of what happened to him on the island.



18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone[7]. This afternoon I found a dead[8] fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish!

19th December

I found a coconut[9] on the beach today. It was delicious[10]. It rained last night and I was cold and wet[11], so today I went to look for a cave[12]. I want a warm[13] place to sleep. I walked through a jungle[14] and there were some rocks[15], but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave !!

Check Vocabulary

مغامرة (1)	بحار (2)	غرق / غاص (3)	عاصفة شديدة (4)	قريب (5)	مفكرة (يوميات) (6)	بمفرده (7)	ميت (8)
جوز الهند (9)	لذيذ (10)	مبتل (11)	كهف (12)	دافئ (13)	أدغال (غابة كثيفة) (14)	صخور (15)	

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 learn - teach

* learn (v) to + inf. / noun. يتعلم (يتبع بمصدر الفعل أو اسم)

ex.: - He learned to play the piano.

- He learns English at school.

* teach (v) يُعلم - يُدرس

teach + (noun) اسم

ex.: - He teaches maths at Cairo Prep School.

teach + (obj) مفعول to + inf.

ex.: - He teaches me to play the piano.

2 The different meanings of the verb "rise"

لاحظ المعانى المختلفة للفعل (rise)

ex.: - The sun rises in the morning. تشرق (الشمس)

- The voice usually rises at the end of the Yes/No question. يعلو / يرتفع

- Ahmed rises at nine o'clock in the morning. ينهض (من الفراش)

3 die - dead - deadly

* die (v) يموت

ex.: - She died of a heart attack.

* dead (adj) ميت

ex.: - Crusoe found a dead fish and ate it.

* deadly (adj) مميت / قاتل

ex.: - Cancer is a deadly disease.

4

جميع الآلات الموسيقية تُسبق بـ the بعد الفعل play بمعنى يعزف.

ex.: - SB He learned to play the piano when he was 8.

5 What kind ... ? = What type ... ? ما نوع ... ؟

ex.: - SB What type of music do you like ?

6 diary – dairy

* **diary** مذكرة - مفكرة

ex.: - SB Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

* **dairy** معمل ألبان / خاص بمنتجات الألبان

ex.: - I went to the dairy to buy milk and cheese.

- Cheese is an important dairy product.

7 alone – lonely

* **alone** بمفرده

ex.: - His wife died and he lived alone.

* **lonely** وحيد - حزين

ex.: - I feel lonely. = I feel sad.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The land that is surrounded by water from all sides is called a / an ....
 a. valley b. island c. area d. mountain
2. A .... is a hole in the mountain.
 a. sea b. river c. cave d. hill
3. My uncle works as a / an .... on a big ship.
 a. sailor b. farmer c. architect d. carpenter
4. .... is a kind of music.
 a. Jazz b. Gas c. Metal d. Plastic

5. There was a really terrible .... and the ship sank.

a. sea b. river c. storm d. work

6. A .... is a place where there are a lot of thick trees and grass.

a. desert b. jungle c. hill d. mountain

7. WB I like ...., but it is difficult to open them!

a. coconuts b. beans c. apples d. carrots

8. You should respect other's ....

a. clothes b. opinions c. fights d. shoes

9. The .... is my favourite musical instrument.

a. hammer b. trumpet c. saw d. thermometer

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB He learned to .... the piano when he was five.

a. spend b. do c. make d. play

2. A / An .... is the person who asks questions during an interview.

a. customer b. interviewee c. interviewer d. waiter

3. When the car stopped, I walked .... the jungle for 3 hours.

a. through b. over c. during d. forward

4. I .... a room with my brother.

a. divide b. spend c. share d. walk

5. The opposite of .... is "far away".

a. towards b. nearby c. next d. forwards

6. The food is .... I can't eat it.

a. delicious b. good c. terrible d. tasty

7. "Robinson Crusoe" is a / an .... story by Daniel Defoe. It's exciting.

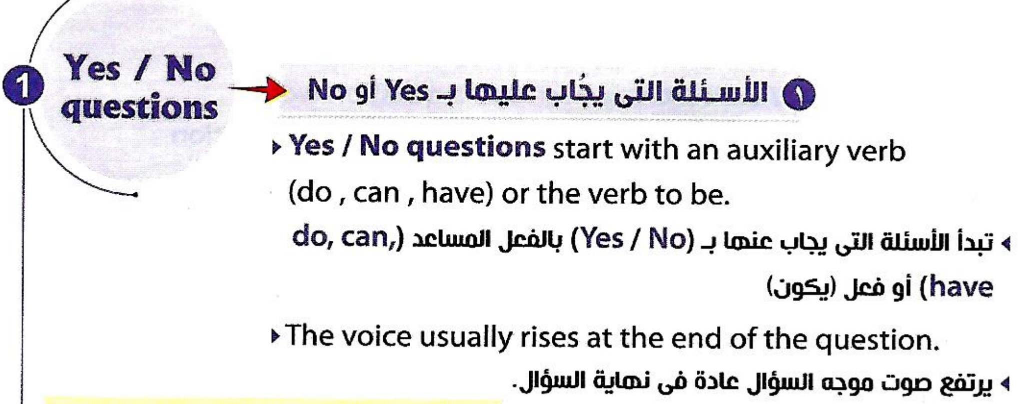
a. adventure b. comic c. action d. horror

8. It .... last night and I got wet.
   a. ran b. rained c. trained d. gained
9. Ahmed's .... was weak because he had the flu.
   a. sound b. cheek c. voice d. hair
10. Ammar Al-Sheraei was a famous .... He played lovely music.
   a. dentist b. interviewer c. musician d. singer
11. When something ...., it goes down into water.
   a. sinks b. floats c. swims d. dives

III Language

Questions الأسئلة

There are two types of questions : هناك نوعان من الأسئلة :



1 Yes / No questions → ١ الأسئلة التى يجَاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

- **Yes / No questions** start with an auxiliary verb (do , can , have) or the verb to be.
- تبدأ الأسئلة التى يجاب عنها بـ (Yes / No) بالفعل المساعد (do, can, have) أو فعل (يكون)
- The voice usually rises at the end of the question.
- يرتفع صوت موجه السؤال عادة فى نهاية السؤال.



- "V. to Be" (Am – Is – Are – Was – Were)
- "V. to Have" (Have – Has – Had)
- "V. to Do" (Do – Does – Did)
- Will
- Can
- .... etc. الخ

\+ subject الفاعل + verb الفعل + ... ?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهى الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

ex.: - Did you go to the park ?
Yes, I did. No, I didn't.
- Have you got a phone ?
Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
- Can you speak English ?
Yes, I can. No, I can't.
- Are you happy ?
Yes, I am. No, I am not.

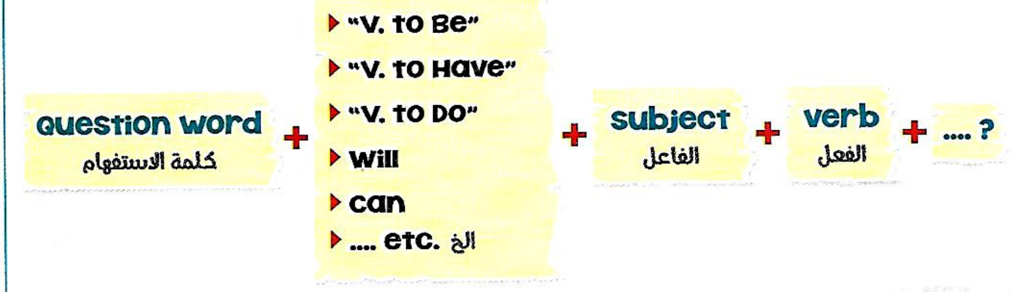
ملحوظة : يمكن إستخدام "V. to Be" كفعل رئيسى فى السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

ex.: - Are you happy about the result نتيجة of the match ?
Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

2 Wh-questions → ٢ الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام :

- **Wh-questions** start with a question word.
The voice usually falls at the end of the question.

- السؤال بكلمات استفهام يبدأ بكلمة استفهام و ينخفض عادة صوت موجه السؤال فى نهاية السؤال.



ex. - What type of music does he like ?
He likes pop.
- When did you go to the museum ?
I went to the museum four days ago.

لاحظ الآتى :

I , We ⇄ (تحول) you	do ← إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط بدون (s).
my, our ⇄ (تحول) your	does ← إذا كان الفعل فى المضارع البسيط وينتهى بـ (s) أو (es) أو (ies).
We are / I am ⇄ (تحول) are you	did ← إذا كان الفعل فى الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر.
We were / I was ⇄ (تحول) were you	

Question words

كلمات الاستفهام

Whose ...?	ملك من...؟	How many ...?	كم للعدد...؟
When ...?	متى...؟	How high ...?	كم للإرتفاع ...؟
What ...?	ما - ماذا ...؟	How deep ...?	كم للعمق ...؟
Who ...?	من (للفاعل العاقل) ...؟	How wide ...?	كم للعرض...؟
Whom ...?	من (للمفعول العاقل) ...؟	How far ...?	كم للبعد....؟
Why ...?	لماذا ...؟	How tall ...?	كم للطول...؟
Where ...?	أين ...؟	How heavy ...?	كم للوزن...؟
Which ...?	أيهما / أيهم ...؟	How long ...?	كم للمدة/للطول...؟
How ...?	كيف ...؟	How old ...?	كم للعمر...؟
How much ...?	كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟	How fast ...?	كم للسرعة...؟
How often ...?	كم مرة ...؟	Who ... with ...?	مع من ...؟

Examples :

- What is he doing now ? * He is reading a story.
- Who will you go to the club with ? * I will go to the club with Ali.
- When did you see Nadia (her) ? * I saw her last week.
- How does she go to school ? * She goes to school by bus.
- Why do you go to the cinema ? * I go to the cinema to see a film.
- How much did you pay for the watch ? * I paid 200 pounds for it.
- How often do they go to the circus ? * They go to the circus twice a month.
- Whose book is it ? * It is mine.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... you tall ? - Yes, I am.
   a. Is b. Am c. Are d. Do
2. .... your friend got a computer ?
   a. Has b. Have c. Is d. Does
3. .... your teacher like honey ?
   a. Does b. Do c. Has d. Have
4. .... there a cinema in your town ?
   a. Is b. Are c. Were d. Did
5. .... do lions eat ? - Meat.
   a. Where b. What time c. What d. Who
6. SB .... is it ? - It's quarter past ten.
   a. Where b. What time c. When d. Which
7. .... animal is bigger, a hippo or a whale ?
   a. Why b. When c. Which d. How many
8. .... you like swimming ? - No, I don't.
   a. Are b. Does c. Do d. Have
9. .... legs does a beetle have ?
   a. How many b. How much c. How long d. How often
10. .... your mother live in a big city ?
    a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB <u>Has</u> you got a blue pen ? (....................)
2. <u>How</u> colour do you like ? - Blue. (....................)
3. How <u>many</u> is the blue jacket ? - 150 L.E. (....................)
4. <u>Why</u> old are you ? - 12 years old. (....................)
5. <u>When</u> do you live ? - In Shoubra. (....................)
6. <u>What</u> is interested in gymnastics ? - Ayman. (....................)

IV Speaking corner

1 Asking about the type of music someone likes :

١. السؤال عن نوع الموسيقى التى يحبها شخص ما :

Questions	Answers
• What type of music do you like ? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها ؟	- I like jazz, but I don't like opera. أحب موسيقى الجاز ولكن لا أحب موسيقى الأوبرا.
• When did you learn to play the piano? متى تعلمت العزف على البيانو ؟	- When I was ten. عندما كنت فى سن العاشرة.

2 Asking and answering questions about activities and abilities :

٢. السؤال عن الأنشطة والقدرات :

Questions	Answers
• Crusoe was alone on the island. كان كروزو وحيدًا على الجزيرة. What could he do ? ماذا استطاع أن يفعل ؟ What couldn't he do ? ماذا لم يستطع أن يفعل ؟	- He could walk on the beach. استطاع ان يمشى على الشاطئ. - He couldn't sleep in a bed. لم يستطع النوم على سرير.

V Writing

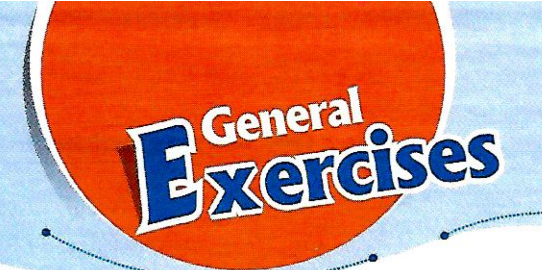


Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Robinson Crusoe»

1. Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story. ١. روبنسون كروزو قصة مغامرات.
2. Crusoe was a sailor. ٢. كان كروزو بحارًا.
3. One day there was a really terrible storm and his ship sank. ٣. فى أحد الأيام كانت هناك عاصفة شديدة جدًا وغرقت سفينته.
4. He was alone on the island. ٤. كان وحده على الجزيرة.
5. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him. ٥. كتب كروزو ما حدث له على الجزيرة فى يومياته.
6. He found a cave on the island. ٦. وجد كهف على تلك الجزيرة.



On Lessons 3 & 4

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Hi! Ali. What type of music do you like ?

Ali : Hi! Ahmed. My (1) .... music is pop.

Ahmed : (2) .... you like another type of music ?

Ali : No, I (3) .... I like pop but I don't like jazz.

Ahmed : Do you like listening (4) .... songs ?

Ali : Of course. And you ?

Ahmed : I prefer playing the piano.

Ali : The piano ! (5) .... taught you to play the piano ?

Ahmed : My dad !

Ali : That's fantastic !

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Jazz is a type of ....
   a. music   b. subject   c. material   d. metal
2. There are a lot of .... on this beach. It is dangerous to swim here.
   a. jungles   b. trees   c. rocks   d. sand
3. I can't recognise يتعرف على Ahmed's .... He has lived in Europe for many years.
   a. taste   b. sound   c. smell   d. voice
4. The opposite of "float" is "......................... ".
   a. sink   b. think   c. hold   d. hurry
5. Good students always write .... the most important points in the lesson.
   a. down   b. into   c. up   d. upon

6. WB Coconuts are large brown ....

a. glasses b. pots c. nuts d. cells

7. WB I didn't like this story but, I thought the writer was ....

a. happy b. clever c. alone d. terrible

8. .... there banks in this street ?

a. Was b. Is c. Are d. Does

9. .... are their future jobs ? - They will be doctors.

a. Why b. Who c. What d. When

10. .... spoke to his cousin yesterday ? - Sameh.

a. What b. Who c. When d. Why

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB He learned play the piano when he was ten. (..............................)
2. Did you eat pizza ? - Yes, I do. (..............................)
3. WB Crusoe can't sleep into a bed. (..............................)
4. Has your brother got a pencil case ? - Yes, he does. (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A trip to an island"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6


SB pages 9 & 10 WB pages 74 & 75



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

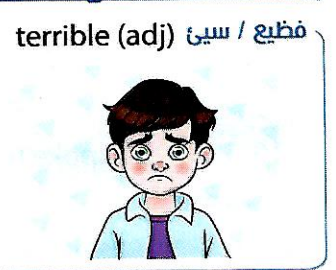
great / fantastic (adj) رائع



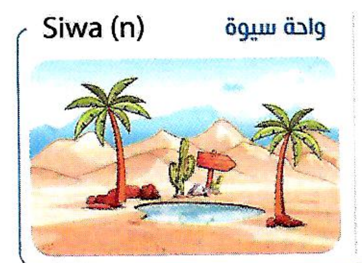
Ok (adv) على ما يرام / جيد



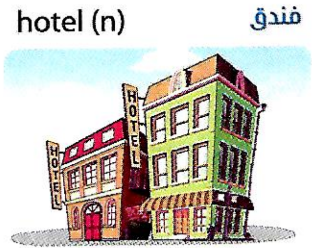
terrible (adj) فظيع / سيئ



Siwa (n) واحة سيوة



hotel (n) فندق



concert (n) حفلة موسيقية



stadium (n) ستاد رياضى



ticket (n) تذكرة



park (n) حديقة



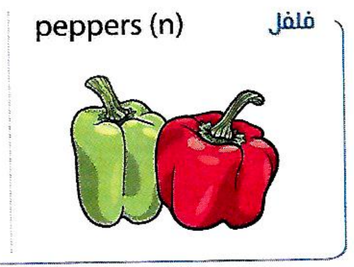
olives (n) زيتون



theatre (n) مسرح



peppers (n) فلفل



Key Vocabulary

feelings (n)	مشاعر	order (n)	ترتيب
hopes (n)	آمال	include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن
thoughts (n)	أفكار	emotion (n)	عاطفة / انفعال

Lesson 5

SB page 9 WB page 74

person (n)	شخص	writer (n)	كاتب
contrast (n)	تناقض	game (n)	لعبة
information (n)	معلومات	kind (n)	نوع
happen (ed) (v)	يحدث	really (adv)	حقًا

Lesson 6

SB page 10 WB page 75

writing tips (n)	نصائح / إرشادات للكتابة	baby brother (n)	أخ رضيع
full stop (.)	نقطة	maths homework (n)	واجب الرياضيات المنزلى
exclamation mark (!)	علامة التعجب		
interesting (adj)	رائع / شيق	respond (ed) (v)	يرد / يستجيب
surprising (adj)	مدهش	past tense (n)	زمن الماضى
windy (adj)	عاصف	try (ied) (v)	يحاول / يجرب
barbecue (n)	حفل شواء	plan (ned) (v), (n)	يخطط - خطة
journey (n)	رحلة	doodles (n)	شخبطة
tired (adj)	متعب	kitchen (n)	مطبخ
laptop (n)	كمبيوتر محمول	shop (n)	محل

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
say	يقول	said	said
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	woken up
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost
show	يبين / يوضح	showed	shown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
great / fantastic	رائع / عظيم	terrible	سيئ / فظيع
stop	يتوقف	continue	يستمر
loud	عال الصوت	quiet	هادئ
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

windy	When the wind blows, the weather is windy	عاصف

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

remember about	يتذكر (شىء) عن	have a barbecue	نقيم حفل شواء فى الهواء الطلق
do maths homework	يؤدى واجب مادة الرياضيات	take a selfie	يلتقط صوره بالكاميرا الأمامية للهاتف المحمول
give a reason for	يعطى سببًا لـ / يبرر	plan to	يخطط لـ
look around	يتجول	stay on the beach	يبقى/ يمكث على الشاطئ
go on holiday	يذهب فى أجازة		
stop working	يتوقف عن العمل		

II Listening and Reading

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 9



Narrator : one

Woman : Hi Lina. How was your weekend ?

Lina : Oh, it was terrible.

Woman : Oh dear, what happened ?

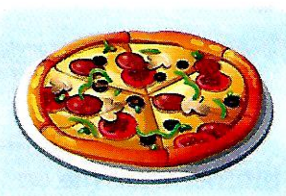
Lina : I watched a football match at the stadium(1). It was terrible because my team(2) lost(3) 5 - 2. Then I took a selfie(4) but I dropped my mobile phone and it broke.



Woman : Oh dear !

Narrator : two

[A man and a boy]



Man : Hi Hisham. How was your weekend ?

Hisham : It was great because I went to the bowling alley with my cousins. Then we went to a pizza restaurant. I had a pizza with olives(5) and pepper(6). The pizza was really good although it was expensive.

Narrator : three

[A woman and a girl]

Woman 2 : Hi Judy. How was your weekend ?

Judy : It was OK on Saturday, although I had lots of homework. But I went to the theatre(7) in the evening.



Check Vocabulary



(1) ستاد رياضى	(2) فريق	(3) خسر	(4) التقط صورة باستخدام الكاميرا الأمامية	(5) زيتون	(6) فلفل	(7) مسرح



Lesson 5 WB page 74

Narrator : 1

Judy : I went to my cousin's house last weekend. It was fantastic because we played all my favourite games!

Narrator : 2

Khaled : I read a book by my favourite writer last week. It was OK, although it was not her best book.

Narrator : 3

Marwa : My father drove us to the park on Saturday. It took an hour to go two kilometres ! It was terrible because there were so many cars.

Narrator : 4

Hany : We read an English book at school today. It was very good, although I didn't understand every word!



Reading on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dalia's diary
Sunday 13th August



Today was a terrible day(1)! My baby brother woke me up(2) at 5 am ! I am so tired(3) now. I went to the kitchen(4) for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed(5) because it was only 6:30 am !



Then I tried(6) to do my maths homework(7) but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working(8). Although we planned to have a barbecue(9) in the afternoon, it was very windy(10) . We could not have it ! I hope(11) tomorrow is a better day !

Check Vocabulary

(1) يوم سيئ	(2) أيقظ	(3) مُتعب	(4) ذهب إلى المطبخ	(5) مغلق	(6) حاول
(7) يعمل واجب الرياضيات	(8) توقف عن العمل	(9) حفل شواء	(10) عاصف	(11) يتمنى	

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 remember - remind

* remember — يتذكر (من تلقاء نفسه)

ex.: - What do you remember about your weekend ?

* remind (v) — يُذكر (شخص آخر بشئ ما)

ex.: - My mom reminded me of my homework.

2 terrible - terrific

* terrible = very bad — فظيع (سيئ)

ex.: - Toka had a terrible accident.

* terrific = wonderful — فظيع (رائع)

ex.: - Mr Ayman did a terrific job.

3 so

* so + صفة / ظرف = very — جدًا

ex.: - I was so tired yesterday.

* سبب / جملة so + (نتيجة) / جملة — لذلك (كلمة ربط)

ex.: - I was very tired, so I went to bed.

4 Try

* try + (to + inf) — يحاول (بكل جهده)

ex.: - I tried to do my maths homework.

* try + (inf. + ing) / (noun) — يجرب (لكى يرى ما سيحدث)

ex.: - Try studying in the early morning. It will be useful.

- Try fish for lunch. It is good for you.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I prefer watching matches on TV, but my brother prefers going to the .... to watch them.
   a. tower b. clinic c. stadium d. zoo
2. I enjoy having vegetables on my pizza, especially .... and olives.
   a. peppers b. papers c. oranges d. bananas
3. My favourite .... lost 5 : 2 in yesterday's match.
   a. group b. team c. lesson d. subject
4. I like watching Adel Imam's plays مسرحيات at the ....
   a. cinema b. zoo c. park d. theatre

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What .... of person was Robinson Crusoe ? - Clever.
   a. kind b. time c. age d. size
2. How was the weekend ? - It was .... great.
   a. a few b. a little c. really d. many
3. SB My little brother .... me up at 5 a.m.
   a. drove b. gave c. played d. woke
4. SB I went to the shop but it was ....
   a. open b. closed c. white d. heavy
5. SB My laptop stopped .... , so I lost all my work.
   a. living b. working c. dying d. trying
6. We planned to .... a barbecue in the afternoon.
   a. do b. have c. work d. open
7. We couldn't go out yesterday because it was ....
   a. funny b. good c. windy d. nice

III Speaking corner

1 Asking and responding to past events :

١. السؤال والرد على أحداث ماضية :

How was your weekend ? كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك ؟	It was great/fantastic ! كانت رائعة !	It was	(really / very) interesting. كانت (حقًا / جدًا) ممتعة.
	It was OK. كانت على ما يرام.	It was	(really / very) good. كانت (حقًا / جدًا) جيدة.
What was the (food) like ? كيف كان الطعام ؟	It was terrible ! كان سيئًا جدًا !	It was	(really) bad. كان (حقًا) سيئًا.

2 Remember !

٢. تذكر !

1. Because & Although

Because لأن

We use because to give a reason for something.

نستخدم (because) لإعطاء سبب أو مبرر لشيء ما.

ex.: - His ship sank because there was a terrible storm.

- It was great because I went to the bowling alley.

Although بالرغم من / ومع ذلك

We use although to express contrasted information.

نستخدم (although) للتعبير عن التناقض.

ex.: - Although I was very hungry, I didn't want to eat another dead fish !

- The pizza was really good although it was cheap.

2. Ordinary & strong adjectives : الصفات العادية والصفات القوية

Ordinary adjectives صفات ذو معنى عادى		Strong adjectives صفات ذو معنى قوى	
good	جيد	fantastic / wonderful	رائع
old	قديم	ancient	عتيق / قديم جدًا
small	صغير الحجم	tiny	ضئيل الحجم
tired	متعب	exhausted	منهك
bad	سيئ	terrible	فظيع / سيئ جدًا

لاحظ أن : الصفات القوية لا يمكن أن تسبق بـ (very) فى حين أنها يمكن أن تسبق بـ (really).

- It was very terrible. (X)
- It was really terrible. (√)



Writing

Writing tips

Writing a diary كتابة مدونة يومية

1. You can end a sentence with a full stop (.) or an exclamation mark (!) to show strong emotion.
يمكنك أن تنهى الجملة بنقطة (.) أو بعلامة تعجب (!) لتبين أو توضح مدى قوة العاطفة.
2. Use an exclamation mark (!) after interesting or surprising information.
استخدم علامة التعجب (!) بعد معلومات تدعو للدهشة أو الإثارة.
3. A capital letter follows both a full stop (.) and an exclamation mark (!)
بعد النقطة أو علامة التعجب، تبدأ الجملة بـ(حرف كبير).
4. Use the past tense (most of the time). استخدم زمن الماضى (معظم الوقت).
5. Use the 1st person (I or We). استخدم ضمائر المتكلم (أنا ونحن).
6. Write things in the order that they happened. اكتب الأشياء بترتيب حدوثها.
7. Talk about your feelings, hopes, thoughts and opinions.
تحدث عن مشاعرك، آمالك، أفكارك وآرائك.
8. Include pictures and doodles. ارفق صور و شخبطة.

Dalia's diary

Dalia's opinion of the terrible day.

Sunday 13th August

Today was a terrible day ! My baby brother woke me up at 5 a.m ! I am so tired now. I went to the kitchen for breakfast but we had no milk or bread. So mum asked me to go to the shop but it was closed because it was only 6:30 am !

Then I tried to do my maths homework but I lost all my work because my laptop stopped working. Although we planned to have a barbecue in the afternoon, it was very windy. We could not have it !

I hope tomorrow is a better day !

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Describe your day»

1. My day was a terrible day.
١. كان يومى يومًا سيئًا / فظيعًا.

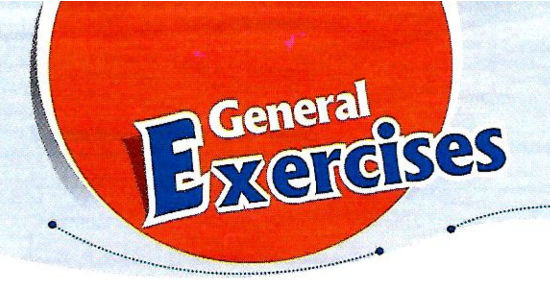
2. I had a very bad headache.
٢. كنت أعانى من صداع شديد.

3. The weather was windy and I couldn't go to work.
٣. كان الطقس عاصفًا ولم أستطع الذهاب إلى العمل.

4. My phone stopped working.
٤. توقف هاتفى عن العمل.

5. There was no milk or bread in the house.
٥. لم يكن هناك لبن أو خبز فى المنزل.

6. I hope tomorrow is a better day.
٦. أتمنى أن يكون غدًا يومًا أفضل.



On Lessons 5&6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Who drove you to the park ? ....
   a. My father b. My brother c. My uncle d. My mother
2. When did you go to the park ? - On ....
   a. Monday b. Sunday c. Saturday d. Friday
3. My father took .... to go two kilometres !
   a. three hours b. two hours c. five hours d. an hour
4. It was .... because there were so many cars.
   a. great b. fantastic c. terrible d. quiet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mona : Do you like classical music ?

Dina : Yes, I do. It's (1) ....

Mona : When did you (2) .... to a concert ?

Dina : I went to the concert last year.

Mona : Did you (3) .... a ticket for the concert ?

Dina : Yes, of course.

Mona : (4) .... went with you ?

Dina : My father and mother.

Mona : Did you enjoy it ?

Dina : Yes, I (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Crusoe was a .... on a ship.
   a. rider b. soldier c. sailor d. driver

2. As it was ...., we couldn't stay on the beach.
   a. funny b. windy c. holiday d. nice
3. .... music is a type of music used a long time ago.
   a. Traditional b. Recent c. Modern d. New
4. Mum loves .... Her cakes are delicious.
   a. swimming b. cooking c. travelling d. making
5. You have to get a .... for the concert.
   a. jacket b. racket c. ticket d. bucket
6. If you put a stone in water, it ....
   a. sinks b. floats c. dives d. drives
7. His trip in the desert was really .... He was very afraid.
   a. enjoyable b. terrible c. exciting d. wonderful
8. SB The pizza was really good .... it was expensive.
   a. although b. because c. so d. as
9. I .... to my uncle's farm last Friday.
   a. go b. went c. am going d. will go
10. We stayed at a hotel because we .... very tired.
   a. are b. were c. was d. 'll be

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tomorrow was very hot. (..................................)
2. When is your last party ? (..................................)
3. Could Crusoe sees the island ? (..................................)
4. I last go to the concert in 2010. (..................................)



Review on Unit 7

SB page 11 WB page 76

1. Vocabulary

aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	musician	موسيقار
sports centre	مركز رياضى	coconut	جوز الهند
funfair	الملاهى	sailor	بحار
planetarium	القبة السماوية	jungle	غابة كثيفة / أدغال
football stadium	ستاد كرة القدم	interview	مقابلة شخصية / يجرى مقابلة شخصية
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	interviewer	المحاور
nervous	متوتر / عصبى	voice	صوت (بشرى)
diary	مفكرة	sound	صوت (شىء)
shopping centre	مركز تسوق	musical instrument	آلة موسيقية

2. Language

Past time expressions : التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى :

last year - in the past - yesterday - this morning - in October - an hour ago - four years ago

ex.: - She helped her sister this morning.

ex.: - They built this house 3 years ago.

3. Speaking

Asking and responding to questions about past events :

السؤال والإجابة عن الأحداث الماضية

ex.: - How was your weekend ?

- It was really (terrible / very good / very bad).

4. Related paragraphs

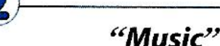
موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph 

"Your last weekend"

Last week, I spent a really nice weekend. I went to my friend's house and we played in the park. It was a lot of fun. I went to the stadium with my father. I watched a football match but my team lost. I took lots of selfies. After the match, I went to a restaurant to have pizza with olives and peppers. Next weekend, I will go to the museum or the funfair.

Model Paragraph 2



"Music"

Listening to music is my favourite hobby. There are many types of music. There are jazz music, rock music and pop music. I like pop music. I like playing the trumpet. My favourite musician is Marvin Allstar. I want to learn how to play the violin. My sister likes traditional music. I like the sounds of the trumpet and the flute. My father learned to play the piano. My mother likes classical music more than opera.

5. Writing Skill



Study

* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) A diary	- What a fantastic (day/weekend/music) !
(2) A fantastic day	- I went to (مكان) on (يوم).
(3) My weekend	- I met (شخص).
(4) Types of music	- We played (لعبة رياضية) in (مكان).
	- (فاعل) like / likes (فعل + ing / اسم شيء).
	- (فاعل) like / likes (نوع موسيقى) music best.
	- (فاعل) like / likes the sound of the (آله موسيقية).
	- (فاعل) learned to play the (آله موسيقية) when (فاعل) was (رقم).
	- I think (نوع موسيقى / لعبة رياضية) is great.



Try

* بعد دراسة التعبيرات السابقة تدرب على كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية
باستخدام التعبيرات الآتية :

Helpful words	Try to make a sentence
- weekend	What a fantastic weekend !
- park	....
- my friend	....
- piano	....
- jazz	....
- sports centre	....

Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic weekend"

....

....

....

....

....

....



كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية

من الأسئلة الهامة فى الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب فى

- Writing Skill فى نهاية كل وحدة.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها فى نهاية الكتاب.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية فى ملحق المعاصر.

Test on unit 7





A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Mum doesn't like ....
   a. watching sports b. playing chess
   c. eating pizza d. driving cars
2. Dad likes ....
   a. English b. science c. history d. French
3. Nadia is .... years old.
   a. 15 b. 50 c. 5 d. 51
4. Dad is always ....
   a. sad b. happy c. angry d. busy

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Toka : Hi Roqia ! How was your weekend ?
Roqia : Hi Toka ! It was (1) .... !
Toka : Terrible ! Why ?
Roqia : My baby brother woke me (2) .... at 4 a.m.
Toka : Oh ! (3) .... did you do after that ?
Roqia : I went to the kitchen for (4) ...., but there was no milk or bread.
Toka : Did you get milk and bread ?
Roqia : No, I found that the shop was (5) ....
Toka : I'm so sorry for you.
Roqia : Thanks.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day there was a really terrible storm and his ship sank. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people **there**. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

He arrived on the island four days ago. Today he walked along the beach again but he saw nobody and he thought he was alone. This afternoon, he found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice.

19th December

He found a **coconut** on the beach today, it was delicious. It rained last night and he was cold and wet, so he went to look for a cave. He wanted a warm place to sleep. He walked through a jungle and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20th December

He found a cave !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where did Crusoe arrive on 14th December ?

....

2. What kind of story is Robinson Crusoe ?

....

3. Why do you think Crusoe looked for a cave ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. "**Coconut**" is a kind of ....

a. liquid   b. food   c. subject   d. sport

5. The underlined pronoun "**there**" refers to the ....

a. city   b. country   c. island   d. town

6. There were some .... in the jungle.

a. books   b. rocks   c. vegetables   d. woods

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the Science .... , I saw an exhibition about reptiles الزواحف.

a. Factory   b. Museum   c. Company   d. Library

2. Never eat meat from a .... animal.

a. dead   b. dying   c. died   d. death

3. Wise people الحكماء make good ....
   a. shopping b. decisions c. instructions d. equipment
4. I like .... on the big wheel.
   a. driving b. reading c. riding d. climbing
5. We had a / an .... weekend. I broke my left arm.
   a. terrible b. fantastic c. interesting d. wonderful
6. I sat next to a boy .... Samir this morning.
   a. given b. driven c. ridden d. called
7. When you put a plastic ball in water, it ....
   a. floats b. thinks c. sinks d. thanks
8. I .... a football match two days ago.
   a. watching b. watched c. watch d. am watching
9. What .... you do last Sunday ? - I studied geography.
   a. did b. do c. are d. were
10. It was a terrible day .... my team lost 5 – 2.
    a. although b. because c. so d. however

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What day was today ? (....................................)
2. She listens to music 2 hours ago. (....................................)
3. I like jazz and I don't like opera. (....................................)
4. Have you got a new jacket ? - No, I don't. (....................................)

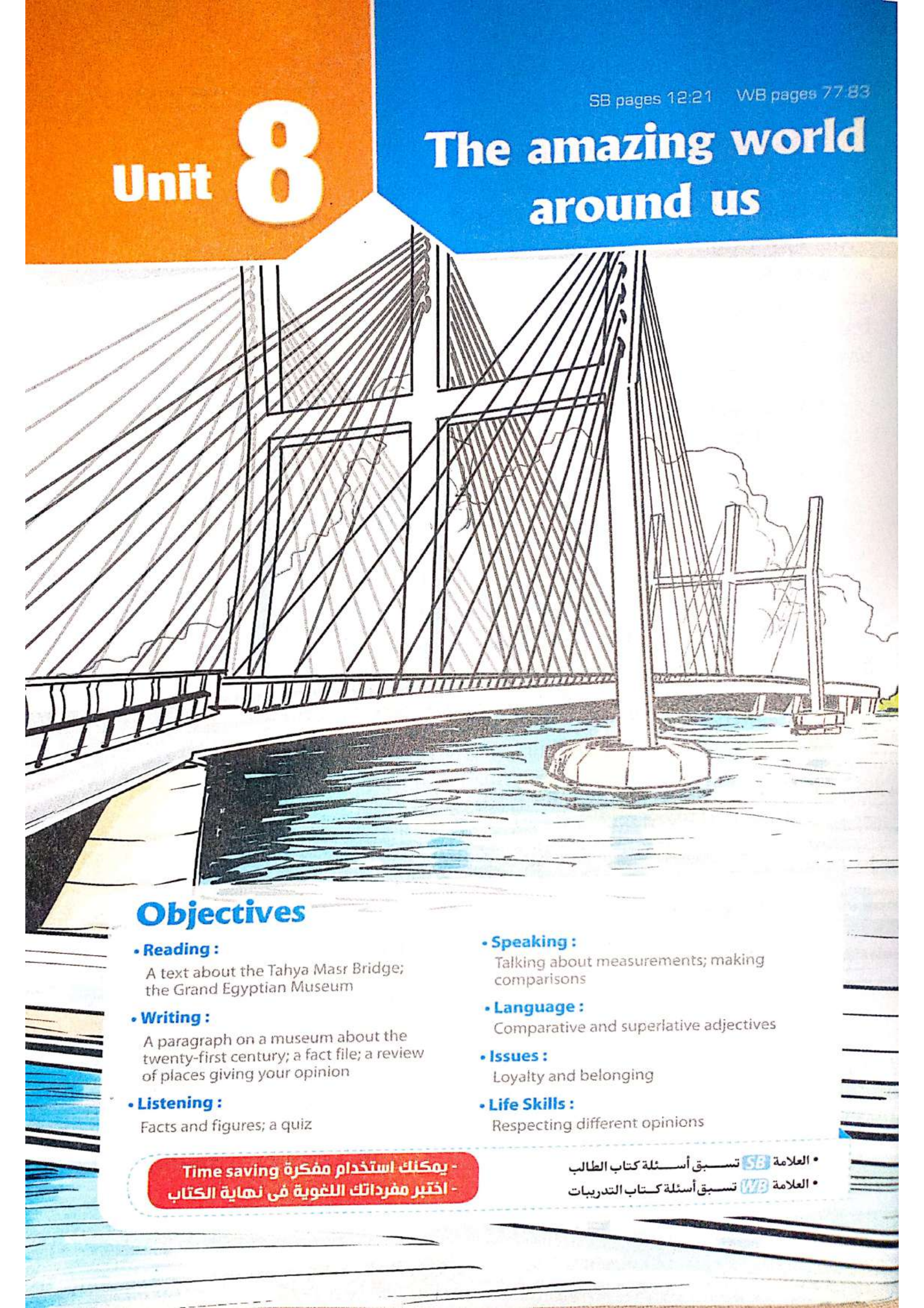
E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A terrible weekend you had"

....
....
....
....
....
....



SB pages 12:21 WB pages 77:83

Unit 8 The amazing world around us

Objectives

• Reading :
A text about the Tahya Masr Bridge; the Grand Egyptian Museum

• Writing :
A paragraph on a museum about the twenty-first century; a fact file; a review of places giving your opinion

• Listening :
Facts and figures; a quiz

• Speaking :
Talking about measurements; making comparisons

• Language :
Comparative and superlative adjectives

• Issues :
Loyalty and belonging

• Life Skills :
Respecting different opinions

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

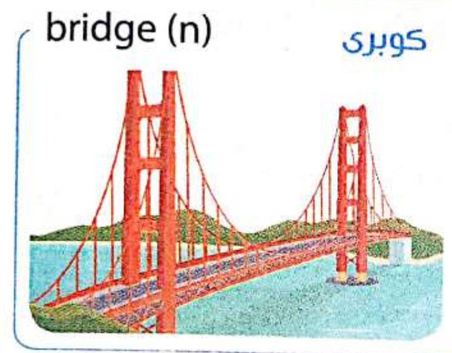


SB pages 12 : 15 WB pages 77 & 78



Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

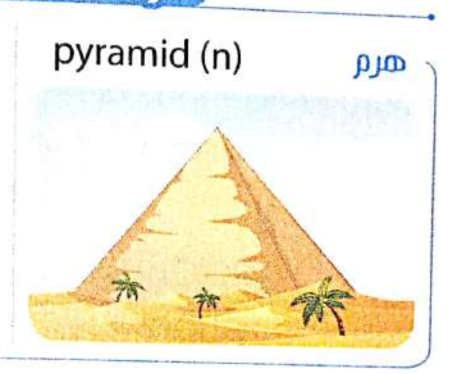
bridge (n) كوبرى



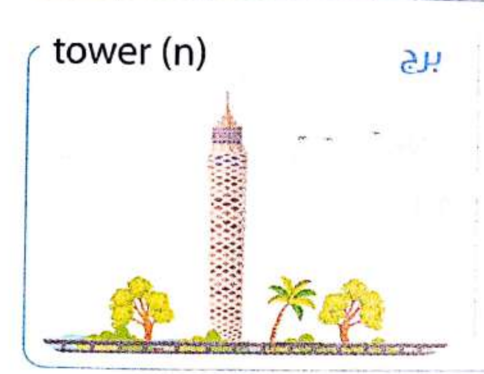
city (n) مدينة



pyramid (n) هرم



tower (n) برج



tunnel نفق



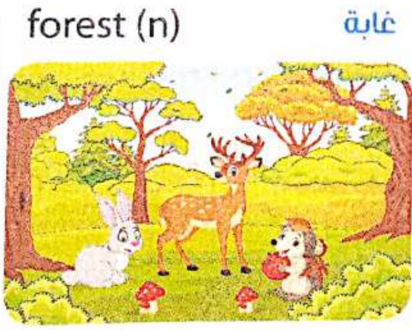
desert road (n) طريق صحراوى



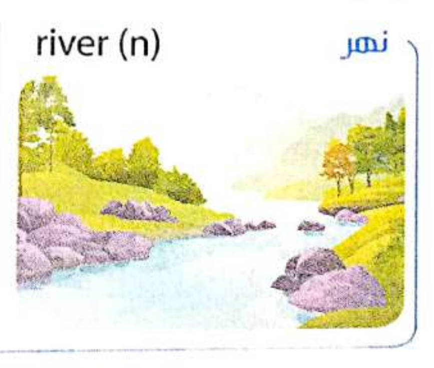
country (n) دولة



forest (n) غابة



river (n) نهر



The Al Hamra Tower (n) برج الحمراء

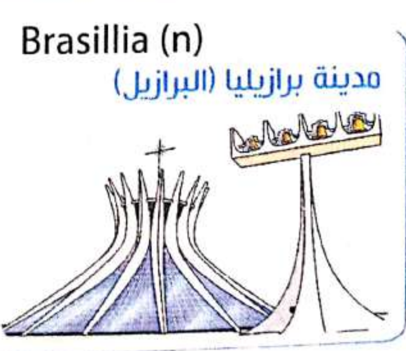




Bangkok (n) مدينة بانكوك



Brasillia (n) مدينة برازيليا (البرازيل)





Key Vocabulary

crowded (adj)	مزدحم	population (n)	تعداد السكان
the countryside (n)	الريف	measurement (n)	وحدة قياس / قياس
visitors (n)	زوار	building (n)	مبنى

Famous places

أماكن مشهورة

Luxor Temple	معبد الأقصر	Thailand (n)	دولة تايلاند
Tahya Masr Bridge	كوبرى تحيا مصر	The library of Alexandria	مكتبة الأسكندرية
Cairo - Alexandria desert road	طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى	The Gotthard tunnel (n)	نفق جوتهارد (فى سويسرا)
Lake Baikal	بحيرة بيكل (روسيا)	The Shanghai Tower	برج شنغهاى
Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower)	أبراج البيت (برج الساعة) (المملكة العربية السعودية)	Switzerland (n)	دولة سويسرا
		Mount Everest	جبل إڤرست
The Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة	Mount Kilimanjaro	جبل كلمنجارو
the pyramid of El Castillo	هرم كاستيلو	Qasr El-Nil Bridge	كوبرى قصر النيل
The Red Pyramid	الهرم الأحمر	The Leaning Tower of Pisa	برج بيزا المائل
The 6th October Bridge	كوبرى ٦ أكتوبر	The Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة

Lesson 1



SB pages 12 & 13 WB page 77

wide (adj)	واسع	hundred (n)	مائة
ground (n)	أرض	thousand (n)	ألف
Nile Banks (n)	ضفاف النيل	million	مليون
link (ed) (v)	يربط	facts (n)	حقائق
exact (adj)	دقيق - محدد	guess (ed) (v)	يخمن
research (ed) (v), (n)	يجرى بحثًا / بحث	daily (adj)	يومى

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

empty (adj)	فارغ	capital (n)	عاصمة
further (adj)	أبعد	correctly (adv)	بطريقة صحيحة
centre (n)	وسط	rules (n)	قوانين / قواعد
describe (d) (v)	يصف	tourists (n)	سياح
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير / مسابقة	traffic (n)	المرور

market (n)	سوق تجارى	across (adv)	عبر / خلال
compare (d) (v)	يقارن		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build	يبنى	built	built
hit	يضرب	hit	hit

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
wide	واسع	narrow	ضيق
crowded	مزدحم	empty	فارغ
modern	حديث	old / ancient	قديم
noisy	مزعج	quiet	هادئ
better	أفضل	worse	أسوأ
high	مرتفع	low	منخفض

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

bridge	something used for people and cars to cross a road or river	كوبرى
city	a large town	مدينة كبيرة
crowded	where there are many people	مزدحم
empty	without any people or things in it	فارغ
low	not far from the top to the bottom of something	منخفض
modern	relating to the present, not old	حديث
narrow	not far from one side of something to the other, not wide	ضيق
noisy	making a lot of noise, not quiet	مزعج
pyramid	a large building that is square at the bottom with four triangular sides forming a point at the top	هرم
quiet	without making much noise, not noisy	هادئ
tower	a tall, narrow building	برج
wide	far from one side of something to the other, not narrow	واسع
further	at a bigger distance, the comparative of far	ابعد



tall	more than usual height; not short	طويل
tunnel	something you can go through to travel under the sea or through a mountain	نفق

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

under the ground	تحت الأرض	crowded with	مزدحم بـ
make questions	يكوِّن أسئلة	make it noisier or quieter	يجعلها أكثر إزعاجًا أو أكثر هدوءًا
answer to	إجابة لـ		
further from	أبعد من	Which one is more modern ?	أيهما أكثر عصرية (حداثة) ؟
the centre of Cairo	وسط القاهرة		
(be) better	يكون أفضل حالاً	easy for	سهل لـ
(be) worse	يكون أسوء حالاً	go → over the Nile	يمر من فوق النيل
better for	أفضل لـ	go → under the sea	يمر من تحت البحر
more than	أكثر من	go → down that road	يسير في طريق
give an exact number	يعطي رقم دقيق	at the same time	في نفس الوقت





Listening

• on Lesson 1 SB page 13

1

Voice a : The Pyramid of El Castillo in Chichen Itza is 30 metres high.

Voice b : The Tahya Masr Bridge is about 540 metres long.

Voice c : More than 37,500,000 people live in Tokyo, Japan.

Voice d : The Leaning Tower of Pisa is just under 850 years old.

Voice e : The Gotthard tunnel in Switzerland is 2,300 metres under the ground.

Lesson 1 SB page 13



Narrator : 1

A : How long is the Cairo-Alexandria desert road ?

B : It's 220 kilometres long.

Narrator : 2

A : How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ?

B : It's 1,642 metres deep.

Narrator : 3

A : How high is Abraj Al-Bait Clock Tower in Saudi Arabia ?

B : It's 601 metres high.

Narrator : 4

A : How old is the Luxor Temple ?

B : It's just under 3,500 years old.

Narrator : 5

A : How many people live in Cairo ?

B : More than 20 million people.

Lesson 1 WB page 77

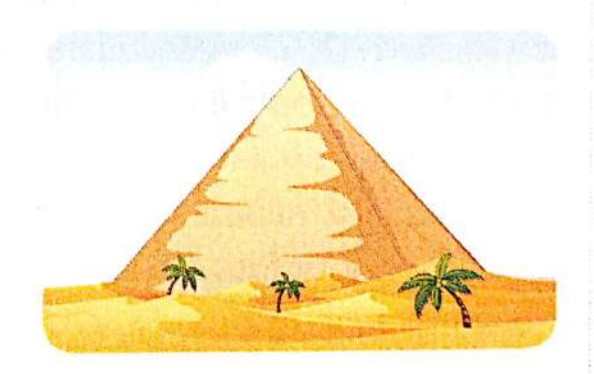


Voice 1 : forty -eight million.

Voice 2 : two hundred and eight-seven thousand.

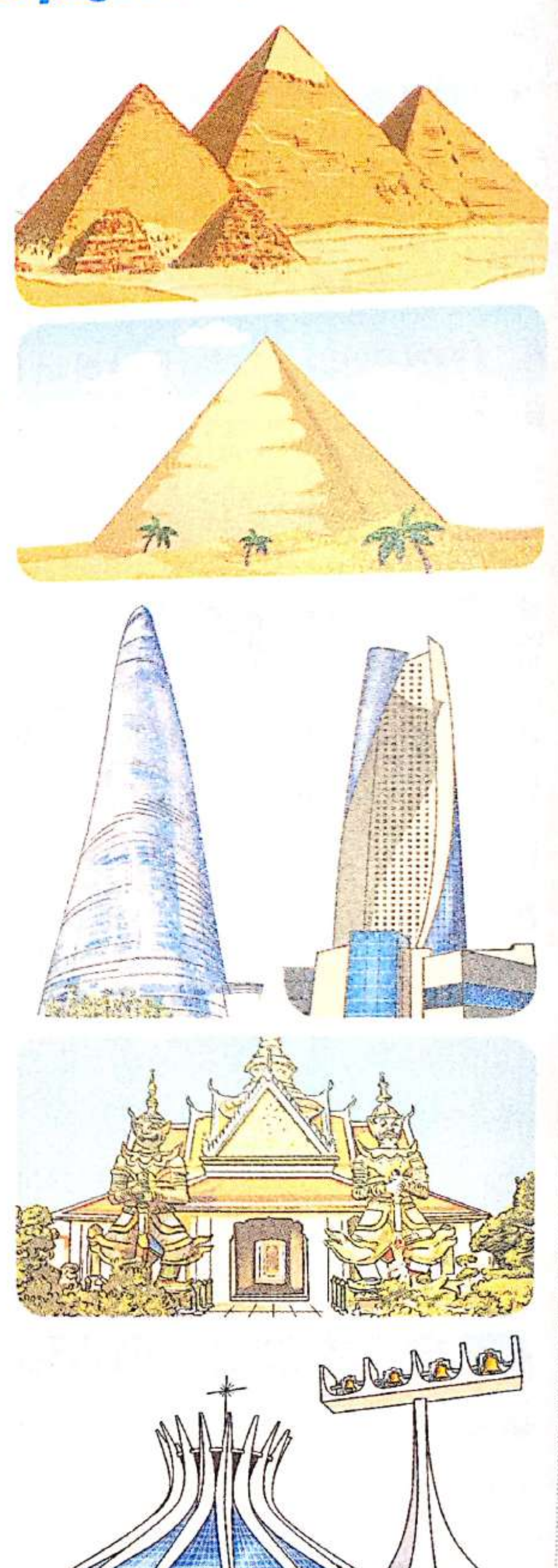
Voice 3 : two hundred and fifty two.

Voice 4 : six million, four hundred and twelve thousand.





Listening Lesson 2 page 15



How much do you know about pyramids ? Let's compare two pyramids in Egypt. The Great Pyramid[1] of Giza is 146 metres tall. It's taller than the Red Pyramid[2], which is 105 metres tall. But the Red Pyramid is further[3] away from the centre[4] of Cairo, so it's less crowded[5] with visitors. Because it's less crowded, it's also quieter.

Now let's compare[6] two very tall buildings. The Shanghai Tower[7] in China is 632 metres tall. The tower first opened in 2015. The Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait is 412.6 metres tall. The building first opened in 2011. So the Shanghai Tower is taller and more modern than the Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait.

Finally, we're going to compare two capital[8] cities. Bangkok became the capital of Thailand about 600 years ago, so it's much older than Brasilia. Brasilia is a modern city. The Brazilians built it in 1960. More people live in Bangkok than Brasilia. The population[9] of Bangkok is more than 10 million. The population of Brasilia is about four and a half million.

So, how did you do ? Did you get the answers correct ?

Check Vocabulary

الهرم الأكبر (1)	الهرم الأحمر (2)	أبعد (3)	وسط (4)	أقل ازدحامًا (5)
يقارن (6)	برج شنغهاى (7)	عاصمة (8)	تعداد السكان (9)	

General Notes on Reading & Listening

• لاحظ الجدول التالى :

	الصفة			الاسم	
How	deep	كم عمق	What	depth	ما عمق
	long	كم طول		length	ما طول
	old	كم عمر		age	ما عمر
	high / tall ... ?	كم طول		height .... ?	ما ارتفاع
	much	كم ثمن / كمية		price / quantity	ما سعر/كمية
	many	كم عدد		number	ما العدد
	wide	كم عرض		width	ما العرض

▶ **How + صفة .... ? = What + اسم .... ?** كم .... ؟

ex.: - SB How wide is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

= What width is Tahya Masr Bridge ?

ex.: - SB How old are the Pyramids ?

= What age are the Pyramids ?

▶ لاحظ : استخدام صفة غير مضاف إليها أى إضافات بعد التعبيرات التى تدل على المقاييس.

ex.: - SB It's 146 metres high.

- SB It's about 25,000 metres long.

▶ **amazing - amazed**

* **amazing (adj)** مُدهش (تصف الأشياء والمواقف)

ex.: - I've read an amazing story.

* **amazed (adj)** مُندهش (الأشخاص)

ex.: - I got amazed when I saw Mohamed Salah.

▶ ملحوظة : عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط تستخدم بعض التعبيرات التالية مثل :

more than أكثر من / just under أقل من / about ... حوالى

ex.: - Mr Ayman may be more than 40 years old.

- Mr Ashraf has got about 50 students in his class.

ملحوظة : بعض الاختصارات لوحدات القياس :

- metre = m
- kilogram = kg
- centimetre = cm
- kilometre = km

further (from)

أبعد من ...

ex.: - My house is further from the school than yours.

• لاحظ :

(far - further - furthest)

ex.: - Your house is far, but mine is further.

which + اسم + is صفة مقارنة (1) طرف المقارنة الأول or (2) طرف المقارنة الثانى ?

للسؤال عن المقارنة بين شيئين تستخدم التركيب السابق.

ex.: - Which animal is faster, a horse or a donkey ?

- Which thing is heavier, a book or a pencil ?

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The .... of Bangkok in Thailand is about 10 million people.
   a. pollution b. population c. weather d. transport
2. Egypt is a big .... in the North of Africa.
   a. country b. city c. island d. ocean
3. Cairo-Alexandria desert .... is 220 km long.
   a. river b. pavement c. road d. street
4. Metre, kilometre and centimetre are length ....
   a. bridges b. towers c. measurements d. tunnels
5. The underground goes through a long ....
   a. cave b. forest c. tunnel d. path
6. Qasr El-Nil is one of the oldest .... in Egypt.
   a. bridges b. towers c. pyramids d. tunnels
7. Bangkok is a very .... city. There are too many people there.
   a. empty b. crowded c. quiet d. calm



Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Al Hamra Tower in Kuwait was built in 2011, so it's a/an .... building.
   a. old b. ancient c. modern d. crowded
2. The opposite of "wide" is " .... ".
   a. exact b. narrow c. long d. small
3. SB The Great Pyramid is 146 metres ....
   a. wide b. high c. heavy d. long
4. Can you .... who is behind the door ? - I think she is Miss Bassant.
   a. miss b. press c. guess d. dress
5. Bangkok is the .... of Thailand.
   a. island b. river c. country d. capital
6. Cairo .... is one of the highest buildings in Egypt.
   a. Tower b. Pyramid c. Island d. Palace
7. The Egyptian Museum has a lot of .... today.
   a. engineers b. officers c. visitors d. thieves
8. WB The market is always very .... at this time.
   a. wide b. busy c. hot d. high
9. WB We need to buy some more water. This bottle is ....
   a. empty b. crowded c. noisy d. small

III Language

Comparative adjectives المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة

1 What's an adjective ? ما هى الصفة ؟

An adjective is a word that describes a noun and precedes it or it follows verb to be.

الصفة هى كلمة تصف الاسم وتسبقه أو تأتى بعد (verb to be)

ex. - He is a tall man.
- This mobile is expensive.

2 Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة



الصفات القصيرة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من مقطع واحد مثل :

fast / big / sad / happy ... etc.

1 تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة المقارنة :

adj صفة + er + than

fast → faster / old → older

ونضيف (than) بعد الصفة القصيرة.

2 يُضاف (r) فقط لنهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e) :

large → larger / close → closer

3 يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (er) لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger - thin → thinner
- hot → hotter - fit → fitter

4 الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (ier) :

- easy → easier
- happy → happier
- lazy → lazier
- healthy → healthier

ex. - An elephant is bigger than a camel.

- The city is noisier than the country.



الصفات الطويلة

هى الصفات التى تتكون من أكثر من مقطع مثل :

interesting / fantastic / beautiful / dangerous ... etc.

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than

- beautiful

- more/less beautiful than

أكثر / أقل جمالًا من

ex. - The dolphin is more enormous than the turtle.

- Maths is more difficult than English.

◀ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	الصفة	Comparative	الصفة عند المقارنة بين اثنين
bad	سيئ	worse	أسوأ
far	بعيد	farther further	أبعد أبعد
good	جيد	better	أفضل
late	متأخر	later latter	أكثر تأخرًا الآخر / الثانى
little	قليل الكمية	less	أقل
many much	كثير العدد كثير الكمية	more	أكثر

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Mount Everest is .... than Mount Kilimanjaro.
   a. high b. highest c. the highest d. higher
2. This book is .... than yours.
   a. more difficult b. most difficult c. as difficult d. difficult
3. SB Which bridge is ...., the 6th October Bridge or the Qasr El Nil Bridge ?
   a. long b. longest c. longer d. the longest
4. Suzan is .... than her cousin, Mona.
   a. more beautiful b. the beautiful c. most beautiful d. as beautiful
5. Today the weather is .... yesterday.
   a. colder than b. as cold than c. coldest d. as colder as
6. She is .... her sister.
   a. pretty b. as prettier as c. prettier than d. prettiest
7. My uncle is .... than my father.
   a. rich b. richer c. as rich d. not rich
8. WB The museum is usually .... on Saturday than on Sunday.
   a. crowded b. most crowded
   c. more crowded d. the most crowded



9. The post office is .... to my house than the park.
   a. near b. nearest c. as near d. nearer
10. Yesterday was warm, but today is ....
   a. warmer than b. warmer c. warmest d. the warmest

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The Nile River is longest than the Amazon. (..............................)
2. SB The Pyramids of Giza are easy for tourists to visit than the Red Pyramid. (..............................)
3. WB Adel is tall, but Rami is tallest. (..............................)
4. This car is very nice but that one is nicest. (..............................)

IV Speaking Corner

Talking about measurements.

الحديث عن القياسات.

Questions	Answers
• How long is the Cairo - Alexandria Desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الاسكندرية الصحراوى ؟	- It's about 220 kilometres long. يبلغ طوله حوالى ٢٢٠ كيلومتر.
• How old is Luxor Temple ? كم عمر معبد الأقصر ؟	- It's just under 3500 years old. أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.
• How deep is Lake Baikal in Russia ? كم يبلغ عمق بحيرة بيكال فى روسيا ؟	- It's 1,642 m deep under the water. يبلغ عمقها ١,٦٤٢ متر تحت الماء.
• How high is Abraj Al-Bait (Clock Tower) in Saudi Arabia ? كم يبلغ ارتفاع أبراج البيت (برج ساعة) فى المملكة العربية السعودية ؟	- It's about 601 metres long. يبلغ ارتفاعه ما يقرب من ٦٠١ متر.
• How many people live in Cairo ? كم عدد الناس الذين يعيشون بالقاهرة ؟	- More than 20 million people live in Cairo. أكثر من ٢٠ مليون إنسان يعيش بالقاهرة.

(Famous places) Monuments معالم أثرية

- Which Pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid ?
في اعتقادك أيهم أطول الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أم الهرم الأحمر ؟

- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller.
أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة أطول.

◀ لاحظ أننا نستخدم التعبيرات الآتية عند عدم التأكد من العدد أو الكمية بالضبط.

حوالى **about ...** أقل من **just under ...** أكثر من **more than ...**



Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«The amazing world around us»

1. Mount Everest is higher than Mount Kilimenjaro.
١. جبل إيفرست أعلى من جبل كيليمنجارو.

2. The Nile river is longer than the Amazon.
٢. نهر النيل أطول من الأمازون.

3. Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
٣. القاهرة أكثر ازدحامًا من أسوان.

4. Luxor Temple is just under 3500 years old.
٤. يبلغ عمر معبد الأقصر أقل من ٣٥٠٠ عامًا.

5. Bangkok city is older than Brasilia, the capital of Brazil.
٥. مدينة بنكوك أقدم من مدينة برازيليا عاصمة البرازيل.





On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ali : Yes, of (1) ....

Omar : How (2) .... is the Great Pyramid ?

Ali : It's 146 metres high.

Omar : How many people live in Tokyo in Japan ?

Ali : (3) .... 37,500,000 people.

Omar : (4) .... length is Lake Baikal in Russia ?

Ali : It's 220 kilometres long.

Omar : How old is the Luxor Temple ?

Ali : It's just under 3,500 years (5) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB The Great Pyramid of Giza is .... than the Red Pyramid.
   a. tall b. taller c. tallest d. the tallest
2. SB My friend lives .... to the school than me.
   a. nearer b. near c. nearest d. the nearest
3. The traffic is .... in a city than in the countryside.
   a. worse b. bad c. worst d. the worst
4. How .... is this hole ? – It's 20 metres.
   a. many b. deep c. long d. much
5. The .... in Cairo is very busy.
   a. traffic b. food c. drink d. pollution
6. The policeman asked the woman to .... the thief.
   a. give b. deliver c. prove d. describe

7. How .... people live in Cairo ? - More than 20 million people.
   a. long b. many c. much d. deep

8. There are many .... visiting the museum today.
   a. builders b. engineers c. tourists d. animals

9. The opposite of "better" is "....................".
   a. worse b. wide c. windy d. white

10. Which is .... the Nile or the Amazon ? - The Nile.
   a. taller b. older c. longer d. higher

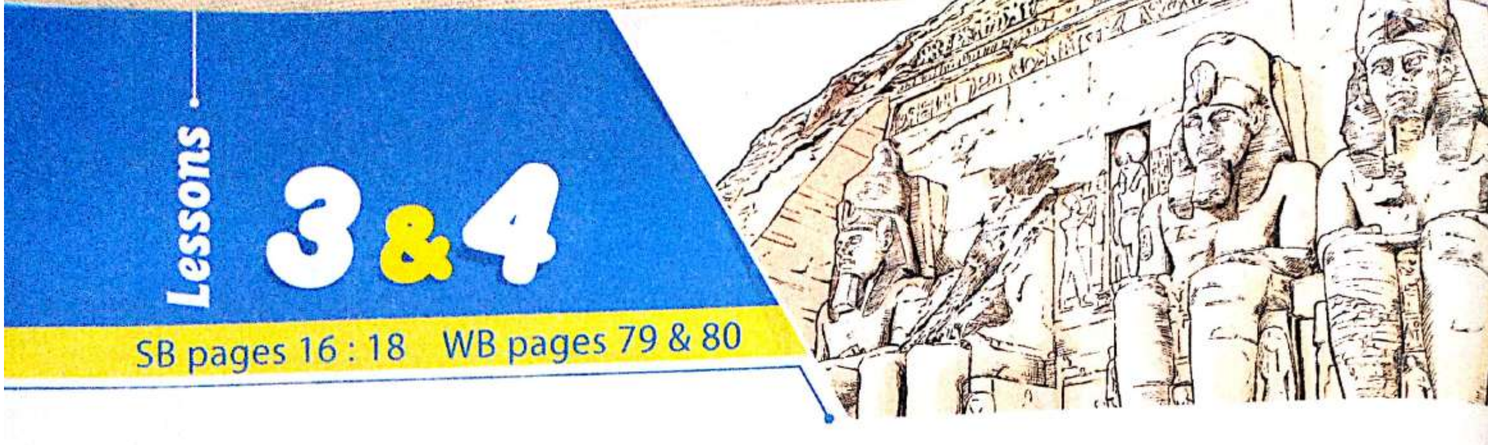
3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB A train is fast than a bus. (....................................)
2. He is taller then his brother. (....................................)
3. Which building is high, the Cairo Tower or the Great Pyramid ? (....................................)
4. She is beautiful than her cousin. (....................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The amazing world around us"

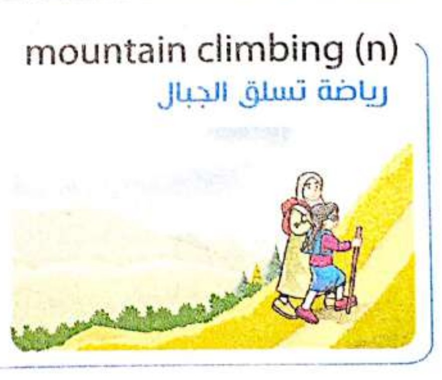
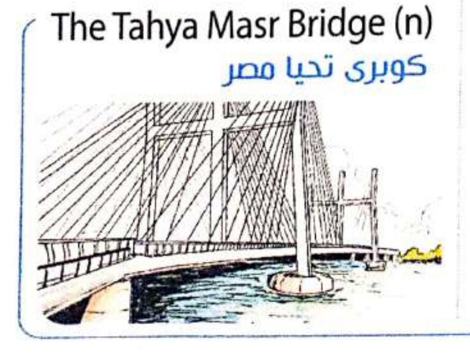
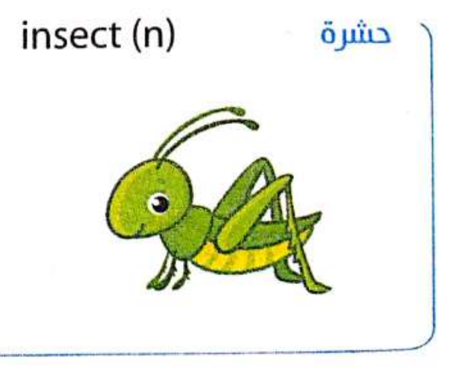
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

suspension bridge (n) كوبرى معلق 	sunset (n) غروب الشمس 	ice skating (n) تزحلق على الجليد 
skiing (n) التزحلق على الجليد 	view (n) منظر طبيعى / رؤية 	afraid (adj) خائف 
market (n) سوق 	sports (n) ألعاب رياضية 	mountain climbing (n) رياضة تسلق الجبال 
The Tahya Masr Bridge (n) كوبرى تحيا مصر 	tennis (n) لعبة التنس 	insect (n) حشرة 

Key Vocabulary

achievements (n)	إنجازات	opinion (n)	رأى
proud (adj)	فخور		

Lesson 3

SB pages 16 & 17 WB page 79

finally (adv)	أخيرًا	Nile's Warraq Island	جزيرة الوراق فى النيل
probably (adv)	من المحتمل	social studies (n)	الدراسات الاجتماعية
protect (ed) (v)	يحمى	popular (adj)	مشهور
river (n)	نهر	fast (adj)	سريع
glass floor (n)	أرضية زجاجية		

Lesson 4

SB page 18 WB page 80

Which .. ?	أى ؟ (للاختيار بين شيئين)	travels (n)	سفريات - رحلات
school subject (n)	مادة دراسية	right now (adv)	حالًا
famous building (n)	مبنى مشهور	politely (adv)	بطريقة مهذبة
holiday places (n)	أماكن لقضاء الأجازة	price (n)	سعر / ثمن
TV show (n)	عرض تليفزيونى	Dahab (n)	
way (n)	أسلوب / طريقة		مدينة دهب السياحية (فى جنوب سيناء)
funny (adj)	ممتع / مضحك		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	meant

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
cheap	رخيص (الثمن)	expensive	غالى (الثمن)
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
agree	يوافق	disagree	لا يوافق / يرفض
polite	مؤدب / مهذب	impolite	غير مؤدب / غير مهذب
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى

new	جديد	old	قديم
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى

Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

achievement	a result to be proud of	إنجاز
dangerous	able to cause harm; not safe	خطير
safe	not in a dangerous situation or position	آمن
sunset	the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day	غروب الشمس
suspension bridge	a long bridge that has thick metal wires to hold it up	كوبرى معلق
ugly	not nice to look at; not beautiful	قبيح

Important expressions & prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

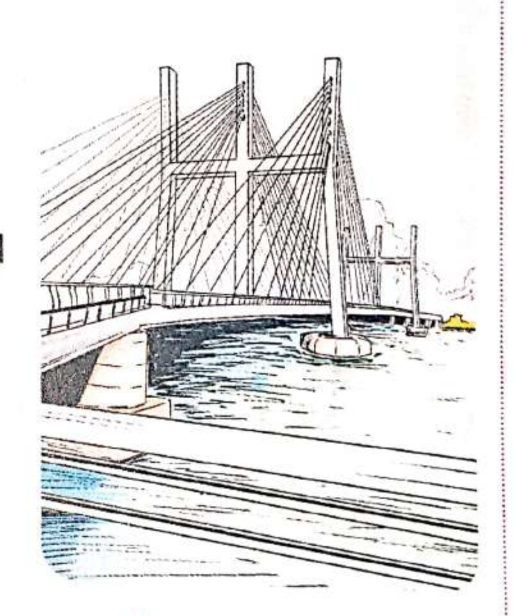
the best time to	أفضل وقت لـ	It's important to be polite	من المهم أن تكون مهذب
walk across	يمشى عبر	polite ways of disagreeing	أساليب مهذبة للاعتراض أو الرفض
be proud of	يكون فخور بـ		
view of the city	منظر /رؤية للمدينة	feel the same as you about that	أشعر مثلك تمامًا عن ذلك
in my opinion	فى رأيى		
show on TV	عرض فى التليفزيون	You are wrong !	أنت مخطئ
What's your opinion of .. ?	ما رأيك فى .. ؟	I don't have the same opinion.	ليس لدىَّ نفس الرأى.
Give your opinion.	اعطى رأيك.		
disagree with someone	لا يتفق مع شخص	No way !	مستحيل !
disagreeing politely	الاعتراض بطريقة مهذبة	I'm not sure about that	أنا غير متأكد من ذلك
live on the island	يعيش على الجزيرة	work in pairs	أعمل فى ثنائيات
think of / about	يفكر فى	in (رقم) minutes / hours / weeks.. etc	فى خلال (عدد) دقائق / ساعات / أسابيع.. الخ
I'm afraid that	أخشى أن / آسف على		
I don't agree	لا أوافق	It's a good idea !	إنها فكرة جيدة !
look like	يشبه	the same size as	نفس الحجم مثل

II Reading and Listening

Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 16

The Tahya Masr Bridge

The world's widest(1) suspension bridge(2) opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 m wide and 540 m long.



More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016. They finished it in 32 months. The bridge crosses(3) the Nile's Warraq Island(4). More than 100,000 people live on the island.

Many people enjoy walking across(5) the bridge. It has a glass floor,(6) so you can see the river under your feet ! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset,(7) for a beautiful view(8) of the city.

Check Vocabulary

(1) الأكثر اتساعًا	(2) كوبرى معلق	(3) يعبر	(4) جزيرة	(5) تمشية عبر	(6) أرضية زجاجية	(7) غروب الشمس	(8) منظر طبيعى



on Lesson 3 SB page 16



Voice : In front of us, you can see the world's widest suspension bridge ! It opened in Cairo in May 2019. It is 67.36 metres wide and 540 metres long. More than 4,000 people helped to build it. They started building it in 2016 and they finally finished it 32 months later. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. More than 100,000 people live on the island. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. It has a glass floor, so you can see the river under your feet ! The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset, for a beautiful view of the city.



Lesson 4 SB page 18

2

Girl 1 : Which subject[1] do you think is more difficult, English or science ?

Girl 2 : In my opinion[2], science is the most difficult[3] of all.

Boy 1 : I think Dahab has the most beautiful beach in Egypt. Do you ?

Boy 2 : I agree. It's also the least crowded[4].

Girl 3 : What's your opinion of ice skating[5] ? Do you agree that it's more dangerous than mountain climbing ?

Girl 4 : I'm afraid I don't agree.

Boy 3 : What do you think about the new TV show[6] ?

Boy 4 : I think it's the funniest show on TV right now.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مادة دراسية	(2) رأى	(3) صعب	(4) مزدحم	(5) التزحلق على الجليد	(6) عرض تليفزيونى



General Notes on Reading and Listening

▶ enjoy + (inf. + ing) / noun.
يستمتع

ex.: - People enjoy walking across the bridge.
- I enjoyed my holiday in Alexandria.

▶ cross – across

* cross (v) — يعبر / يمر عبر

ex.: - The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island.

* across (adv) — عبر

ex.: - It's the best time to walk across the bridge.

▶ It takes / took + (وقت) + to + inf.
يستغرق (وقت)

ex.: - It took five years to build the bridge.
- It takes me half an hour to go home from school.

▶ **proud of - proud to** فخور بـ

* proud of + (inf. + ing) أو (noun)

ex.:- He is proud of his uncle.
- They are proud of being Egyptian teachers.

* proud to + inf.

ex.:- He is proud to be Egyptian.

▶ **busy = crowded** مزدحم

- busy day = a day full of work ... etc.

ex.:- I had a busy day yesterday.

- busy room = a room full of people ... etc.

ex.:- The room is very busy. I can't breathe. يتنفس

▶ **afraid**

* I'm afraid .. = I'm sorry .... أنا آسف / أخشى أن

ex.:- **A :** Can you lend me your bike, please ?
B : I'm afraid, I can't. I need it.

* afraid of = frightened of خائف من

ex.:- Rahma is afraid of dogs.

▶ **way**

* way طريق

ex.:- On my way to school, I met Mr Ali .

* way طريقة - أسلوب

ex.:- I don't like his way of thinking.

* No way مستحيل (تعبير بالرفض)

ex.:- **A** : Can you ride a bike ?
B : What ? No way !

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Tahya Masr Bridge is the world's widest .... bridge.
   a. information b. suspension c. evaporation d. condensation

2. I enjoy the view of the Nile at the end of the day at ....

a. sunrise b. sunset c. suncream d. sunshine

3. There is a beautiful .... of the city from Cairo Tower.

a. review b. revision c. view d. preview

4. SB Mountain .... is the most dangerous sport at all.

a. delivery b. climbing c. weighing d. skating

5. It's important to be proud of your country's ....

a. sunrises b. suspensions c. achievements d. sunsets

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of "beautiful" is "....................".

a. important b. dangerous c. popular d. ugly

2. Most modern cars are .... They are not cheap.

a. narrow b. expensive c. empty d. ugly

3. Tahya Masr Bridge is 67,36 metres ....

a. wide b. high c. old d. heavy

4. Many people enjoy walking .... the bridge in the evening.

a. cross b. across c. between d. next

5. SB What do you .... about the new TV show ?

a. thank b. sing c. sink d. think

6. I'm proud .... my father. He does his best to make us happy.

a. as b. from c. to d. of

7. The workers and engineers finished the project .... 32 months.

a. of b. in c. at d. from

8. I disagree .... you. English is the most important subject.

a. of b. at c. to d. with

9. WB What is your .... of doing sport every week ?

a. agree b. best c. opinion d. think

III Language

Superlative adjectives المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين (صيغة التفضيل)



1 Short adjectives
الصفات القصيرة

• تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

١ يُضاف (the... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :
- fast → the fastest
- old → the oldest

٢ يُضاف (the ... + st) إلى الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ (e):
- large → the largest
- close → the closest

٣ يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف (the... + est) إلى الصفة القصيرة :
- big → the biggest
- thin → the thinnest
- hot → the hottest
- fit → the fittest

٤ الصفات المنتهية بحرف (y) تتحول (y) إلى (the... + iest) :
- easy → the easiest
- happy → the happiest
- lazy → the laziest
- healthy → the healthiest

ex. - This bridge is the longest one.
- Heba is the oldest student in her class.



2 Long adjectives
الصفات الطويلة

• تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

- the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة

- the most/the least beautiful
الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا

- the most/the least dangerous
الأكثر / الأقل خطورة

ex. - The whale is the most enormous animal.
- I think maths is the most difficult subject.
- This T-shirt is the least expensive one in the shop.



Irregular Comparative and Superlative Forms

صيغ المقارنة و التفضيل غير المنتظمة

◀ هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين أو المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين :



① Adj.		② Comparative		③ Superlative	
bad	سيئ	worse	أسوأ	the worst	الأسوأ
far	بعيد	farther	أبعد	the farthest	الأبعد
		further	أبعد	the furthest	الأبعد
good	جيد	better	أفضل	the best	الأفضل
late	متأخر	later	أكثر تأخرًا	the latest	الأكثر تأخرًا
		latter	الآخر / الثانى	the last	الأخير
little	قليل (الكمية)	less	أقل	the least	الأقل
many	كثير (العدد)	more	أكثر	the most	الأكثر
much	كثير (الكمية)				

A text with the superlative form (WB page 79)

You probably know that whales are the biggest animals in the world, but did you know that they are also the noisiest ? A whale[1] can hear another whale 160 km away. Did you know that the fastest animal in the world is a bird ? It can fly to more than 300 km/h. Insects[2] are the most dangerous animals in the world. They make more people ill than any other animal. Finally, the smallest land animal is the Etruscan shrew[3]. It looks like[4] a mouse and is the same size[5] as a bee[6] !

Check Vocabulary

(1) حوت	(2) حشرات	(3) ذبابة الاتروسكان (حيوان يشبه الفأر)	(4) يشبه	(5) نفس الحجم	(6) نحلة

ملاحظات عامة على صفات التفضيل

① لاحظ استخدام صفة التفضيل بدون (**the**) بعد الأعداد الترتيبية

(first/second/third/fourth ... etc.)

ex. - Cairo is the first largest city in Africa.

② لا تستخدم (the) قبل التفضيل عندما يسبقها ('s) الملكية أو صفة ملكية :

- my - his - her - your - our - their - its - ..... 's

ex.
- Naguib Mahfouz is Egypt's best novelist.
- Is Ahmed your youngest brother ?

③ لاحظ استخدام حروف الجر (in - of) بعد صفات التفضيل :

ex.

(أ) تستخدم (in) غالبًا قبل (المكان/الفريق) :

- He is the best player in the team.
- Everest is the highest mountain in the world.

(ب) تستخدم (of) غالبًا قبل (الأشخاص) :

- Sama is the cleverest of her sisters.

(جـ) يُفضل استخدام (of) قبل السنوات :

- The death of my uncle is the worst event of 2016.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB The world's .... suspension bridge opened in Cairo.
   a. widest b. wide c. wider d. the widest
2. SB Some people think that maths is .... subject of all.
   a. difficult b. more difficult
   c. most difficult d. the most difficult
3. SB On Saturdays, the market is .... than on Fridays.
   a. quieter b. quiet c. quietest d. the quietest
4. All these houses are nice but ours is ....
   a. nicer than b. nicest c. the nicest d. the nicer
5. That pen is .... of all.
   a. the better b. the best c. more good d. most good
6. This is .... film I've ever seen.
   a. boring b. as boring c. more boring d. the most boring
7. WB Whales are .... animals in the world.
   a. big b. bigger c. the biggest d. biggest
8. What is the .... town in your country ?
   a. largest b. larger c. more large d. the most large

9. A chair is .... comfortable than a sofa.
   a. least b. little c. the least d. less

10. Which do you think is .... city in the world ?
   a. exciting b. more exciting
   c. most exciting d. the most exciting

11. Climbing mountains is the .... dangerous sport in the world.
   a. little b. less c. most d. more

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tokyo is the busier city in the world. (.................................)
2. One of the more beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance. (.................................)
3. WB What is the better place to play tennis near here ? (.................................)
4. The blue car is most expensive than the red car. (.................................)

IV Speaking corner

1 Talking about comparatives & superlatives :

الحديث عن المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة والتفضيل (المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين) :

Stimulus	Response
• Which Pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ? أى هرم أطول، الهرم الأكبر أم الهرم الأحمر ؟	- I think the Great Pyramid is taller. أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر أطول.
• Compare Bangkok, the capital of Thailand with Brasilia, the capital of Brazil. Which city is older ? قارن بين مدينة بانكوك (عاصمة تايلاند) ومدينة برازيليا (عاصمة البرازيل) أيهما أقدم ؟	- I think Bangkok is older. أعتقد أن مدينة بانكوك هى الأقدم.
• Which subject do you think is the most difficult English, science or Arabic ? أى المواد الدراسية تعتقد أن تكون الأكثر صعوبة اللغة الإنجليزية أم العلوم أم اللغة العربية ؟	- In my opinion, science is the most difficult of all. فى رأيى، مادة العلوم هى أكثر المواد صعوبة على الإطلاق.

2 Giving opinions; agreeing and disagreeing :

إعطاء الآراء بالموافقة وعدم الموافقة :

Asking for opinions
السؤال عن الرأى

- What is your opinion of / about .... ? ما رأيك فى ..... ؟
- What do you think of / about .... ? ماذا تعتقد فى / ما رأيك فى ..... ؟
- Do you agree that .... ? هل توافق أن ..... ؟

Giving opinions
إعطاء الآراء

- I think / believe .... أنا أعتقد .....
- In my opinion, ... فى رأيى .....

Agreeing with someone
الموافقة على الرأى مع شخص ما

- I agree. أوافق.
- I think so. أعتقد ذلك.
- That's what I think. هذا ما أعتقد.

Disagreeing with someone
عدم الموافقة على الرأى مع شخص ما

- I disagree. لا أوافق.
- I don't agree. لا أوافق.
- I'm afraid / I'm sorry, but .... أخشى/يؤسفنى أن ولكن ...
- I don't have the same opinion. ليس لدى نفس الرأى.
- I don't feel the same as you about that. لا أشعر مثلك تمامًا بشأن ذلك.
- I'm not sure about that. لست متأكدًا بشأن ذلك.
- You are wrong ! أنت مخطئ!
- What ? No way ! ماذا ؟ هذا مستحيل!

3 Discussing your country's achievements : مناقشة إنجازات بلدك :

- How do you feel about your country's achievements ? كيف تشعر تجاه إنجازات بلدك ؟

- I feel very proud. اشعر بالفخر الشديد
- It makes me happy. يجعلنى أشعر بالسعادة.



- Do you want people from other countries to like and respect your country ?
هل تريد أشخاص من دول أخرى تحب وتحترم بلدك ؟
  - Of course / Yes, I do.
  نعم بالطبع.
- What other Egyptian achievements are you proud of ?
ما هى الإنجازات المصرية الأخرى التى تكون فخورًا بها ؟
  - I think the Administrative Capital and Galala City projects.
  اعتقد مشروع العاصمة الإدارية ومشروع مدينة الجلالة.



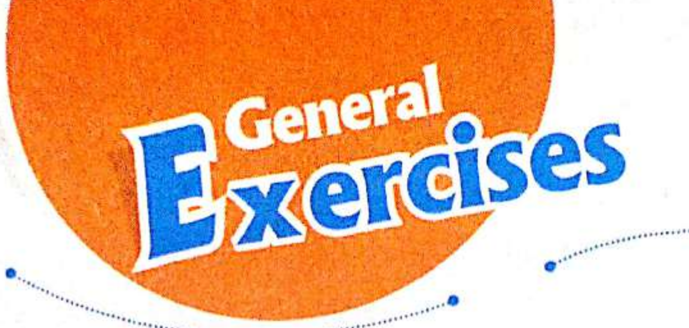
Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«The Tahya Masr Bridge»

1. It's the world's widest suspension bridge. ١. هو أكبر كوبرى معلق فى العالم.
2. It opened in Cairo in May 2019. ٢. تم افتتاحه فى القاهرة فى مايو ٢٠١٩.
3. They finished it in 32 months. ٣. تم الانتهاء من بناءه فى ٣٢ شهرًا.
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq Island. ٤. يعبر الكوبرى فوق جزيرة الوراق.
5. Many people enjoy walking across the bridge. ٥. يستمتع كثير من الناس بالسير عبر الكوبرى.
6. It has a glass floor. ٦. هناك أرضية زجاجية لهذا الكوبرى.
7. You can see a beautiful view of the city. ٧. يمكنك أن ترى منظر جذاب للمدينة.
8. The best time to cross the bridge is at sunset. ٨. أفضل وقت لعبور الكوبرى عند غروب الشمس.



On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Tahya Masr bridge is the world's .... bridge.
   a. highest b. longest c. widest d. biggest
2. It opened in .... 2019.
   a. May b. January c. March d. April
3. It's .... m wide.
   a. 68.36 b. 67.30 c. 67.36 d. 68.30
4. The bridge crosses the Nile's Warraq ....
   a. City b. Oasis c. Island d. Lake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed is .... intelligent than Samy.
   a. as b. most c. more d. least
2. This is the .... company in the world.
   a. more big b. biggest c. bigger d. big
3. Are you proud .... be Egyptian ?
   a. of b. at c. to d. with
4. The bus was .... I didn't find a place to stand.
   a. deep b. heavy c. crowded d. fast
5. Many people enjoy walking on the glass .... of Tahya Masr Bridge.
   a. flower b. flour c. floor d. fire
6. SB It's important to be polite when you .... your opinion.
   a. make b. take c. give d. ask
7. SB Mountain climbing is the most .... sport. Many people fall and die.
   a. beautiful b. safe c. cheap d. dangerous

8. The opposite of "quiet" is "..................".
   a. noisy b. happy c. funny d. angry

9. My young brother looks .... my dad. They are the same.
   a. like b. angry c. some d. same

10. WB What's your .... of doing a sport every week ?
   a. dream b. thought c. opinion d. think

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

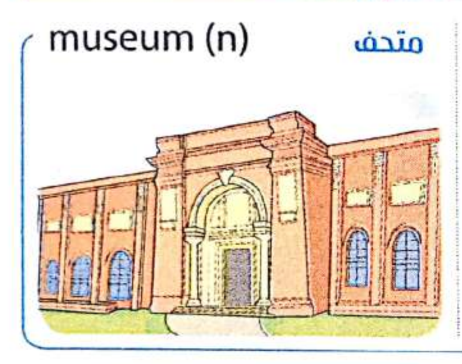
1. SB How much people helped to build the bridge ? (..................)
2. Salma is the more active girl. (..................)
3. He is the good friend of mine. (..................)
4. SB How long is it ? It's 67.36 metres wide. (..................)
5. WB What's the more difficult subject at school ? (..................)
6. How age is Basem ? (..................)
7. Rahma is the most polite girl I've never met. (..................)





Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

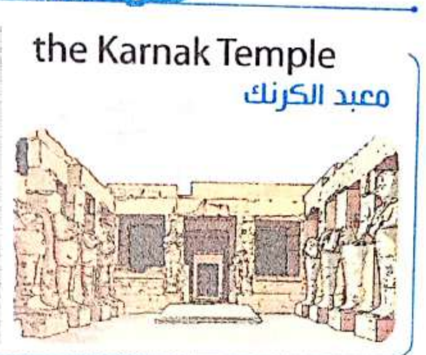
museum (n) متحف



treasure (n) كنز



the Karnak Temple
معبد الكرنك



The Grand Egyptian Museum
المتحف المصرى الكبير (GEM)



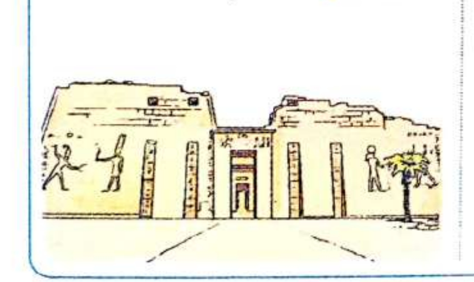
The Valley of the Kings
وادى الملوك



Hypostyle Hall
قاعة هيبوستيل



Habu Temple معبد حابو



Ramses II رمسيس الثانى



display (v), (n) عرض - معرض



entrance (n) مدخل



motorbike (n) دراجة بخارية



Rosetta Stone حجر رشيد





Key Vocabulary

valuable (adj)	غالى / ذو قيمة	column (n)	عمود
competition (n)	مسابقة / منافسة	design (ed) (v) , (n)	يصمم / تصميم
public (adj)	عام	fountain (n)	نافورة
guidebook (n)	كتاب ارشادى	hieroglyphics (n)	اللغة الهيروغليفية
collection (n)	مجموعة		

Lesson 5

SB page 19 WB page 81

however (adv)	ومع ذلك	welcome (d) (v)	يرحب
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	city centre (n)	وسط المدينة
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	objects (n)	أشياء
plants (n)	نباتات	part (n)	جزء
statue (n)	تمثال	move (d) (v)	ينقل / ينتقل
main (adj)	أساسى - رئيسى	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	يخطط / خطة
square (n)	مربع (الشكل)	Europe (n)	قارة أوروبا
allow (ed) (v)	يسمح - يدع	glass room (n)	غرفة زجاجية
article (n)	مقال	cover (ed) (v)	يغطى
space (n)	مساحة / فراغ	language (n)	لغة

Lesson 6

SB page 20 WB page 82

website review (n)	موقع تحليل ونقد	during (prep)	أثناء
wonderful (adj)	رائع	prefer (red) (v)	يفضل
stone (adj) (n)	حجرى - حجر	expressions (n)	تعبيرات
holiday (n)	أجازة	hotel (n)	فندق
sunny (adj)	مشمس	Al Azhar Park (n)	حديقة الأزهر
parks (n)	حدائق	café (n)	مقهى
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	later (adv)	لاحقًا
writer (n)	كاتب		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
write	يكتب	wrote	written
teach	يُعلم / يُدرس	taught	taught
put	يضع	put	put
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
spend	يقضى	spent	spent
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
further	أبعد	nearer	أقرب
different	مختلف	similar	متشابه
famous	مشهور	unknown	غير معروف
top	قمة	bottom	قاع
stronger	أقوى	weaker	أضعف
near	قريب	far	بعيد

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

column	a tall structure that holds up part of a building	عمود
competition	an event, often followed by a prize, in which people try to be the best at something	مسابقة / منافسة
entrance	the way into a building, such as a door or gate	مدخل
museum	a building to keep and display important objects from the past	متحف
treasure	a quantity of valuable metals, jewels, ... etc.	كنز

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

one of the ..	واحد من ..	special about	مميز فى
refer to	يشير إلى	in the twenty-first century	فى القرن الواحد وعشرين
further from	ابعد من	have a wonderful holiday	يقضى أجازة رائعة



the quietest time	الوقت الأكثر هدوءًا	5,000 - square - metre room	حجرة مساحتها ٥٠٠٠ متر مربع
get busier	يزداد ازدحامًا / ينشغل أكثر	similar to	مشابه لـ
more crowded than	أكثر ازدحامًا من	reason for	سبب لـ
on display	معروض / للعرض	for longer	لفترة أطول
space for	مساحة لـ	my favourite part	جزئى المفضل
(be) able to + (inf.)	قادر على	the main idea of	الفكرة الرئيسية لـ
look after	يعتنى بـ	show opinion	يعرض رأى
a collection of	مجموعة من	for the first time	لأول مرة
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	part of	جزء من
allow to + inf.	يسمح بـ	spend a lot of time	يقضى وقتًا طويلًا
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	It is expected to ...	من المتوقع أن ...
during the day	اثناء اليوم		

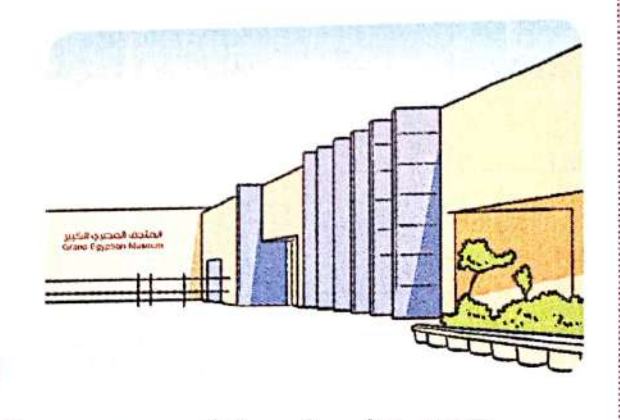


II Reading and Listening

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

The Grand Egyptian Museum



1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable(1) treasures(2) on display(3). However, the museum did not have space(4) for 100,000 other objects(5). In 2002, there was a competition(6) to design(7) a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

Check Vocabulary

(1) ذو قيمة	(2) كنوز	(3) عرض	(4) فراغ / مساحة	(5) أشياء	(6) مسابقة	(7) يصمم

2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed[8] its first visitors[9] in 2019. It is further from the city centre[10] than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the Pyramids at Giza. It has more space for valuable objects, more people can see them and it is able to look after[11] the objects really well.
3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance[12], with its big plants[13] and statues[14]. The biggest statue is that of Ramses II, which is 12-metres high.
4. Moving these objects from the old museum in Tahrir to the Grand Egyptian Museum is not easy. It is expected to take many years of hard work.

Check Vocabulary

يرحب (8)	زائرين (9)	وسط المدينة (10)	يعتنى بـ (11)	مدخل (12)	نباتات (13)	تماثيل (14)

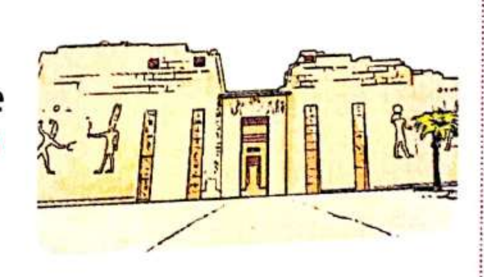
on Lesson 6 SB page 20



- We had a wonderful holiday[1] in Egypt. These are my opinions about three of the most interesting places. The Valley of the Kings[2] in Luxor is one of the most popular places[3] for tourists[4] to visit. We went early because that is the quietest time. My brother said, "This is fantastic[5]!" I am sure it gets busier[6] later on during[7] the day.



- The biggest place we went to was the Karnak Temple[8]. My favourite part was the Hypostyle Hall[9], a 5,000-square- metre "room" with 134 stone[10] columns. I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings.



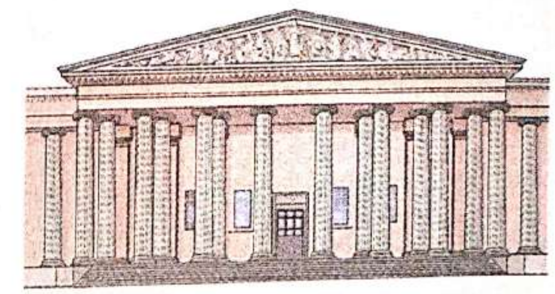
- In my opinion, the best and quietest place we visited was Habu Temple[11]. It has columns[12] similar to[13] those at Karnak, but because it is less crowded, you can study them for longer.

Check Vocabulary

قضينا إجازة رائعة (1)	وادى الملوك (2)	أماكن مشهورة (3)	سياح (4)	رائع (5)	يزداد ازدحامًا (6)	
أثناء / خلال (7)	معبد الكرنك (8)	قاعة / بهو (9)	حجر (10)	معبد حابو (11)	أعمدة (12)	مشابه لـ (13)

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

The British Museum



- The British Museum(1) in London is the oldest public(2) museum in the world. It opened in 1759 and now has more than 13 million objects. About six million visitors go there every year.
- The museum has the biggest collection(3) of Egyptian objects outside Egypt. One of its most important objects is the Rosetta Stone(4). This arrived at the museum in 1802. The writing on the stone is in three different languages. This allowed(5) people to understand ancient Egyptian hieroglyphics(6) for the first time.
- In my opinion, the most beautiful part of the museum is the Great Court(7). Its big glass room makes it the largest covered square in Europe. It opened in 2000 so it is also the most modern part of the museum.

Check Vocabulary

المتحف البريطانى (1)	عام (2)	مجموعة (3)	حجر الرشيد (4)	سمح (5)	اللغة الهيروغليفية (6)	الساحة الكبيرة (7)

on Lesson 6 WB page 82



Al Azhar Park(1) is the largest and most beautiful park in Cairo. It is much larger than the small park near my house. That park has a few trees and plants and I enjoy going there after school. You can spend an hour or two in that park, but you can spend a lot of time at Al Azhar Park. The trees there are taller and it has more plants. It also has fountains(2), a lake and cafés(3), too. I like going there because there is space(4) for all our family to have a big picnic(5) at the weekends! My sister always says, I love it here.

Check Vocabulary

حديقة الأزهر (1)	نافورة (2)	مقاهى (3)	مساحة (4)	نزهة فى الهواء الطلق (5)

Videoscript on Lesson 6 SB page 20

Do you know about the seven wonders of the ancient world ?
People thought that they were the most fantastic buildings in the world. Many of them were in or near Egypt.
For many centuries, this Lighthouse of Alexandria was the tallest building ever made.
The sea was dangerous for boats because there were a lot of rocks near Alexandria. The lighthouse warned(1) boats about the rocks. This was a very important invention.
We use similar technology today. We still use lighthouses to warn boats about rocks. Boats are safer now thanks to the work of the ancient Egyptians.
The Hanging Gardens of Babylon(2) were probably in modern day Iraq.
These were beautiful gardens around a huge palace(3).
The Statue of Zeus was in ancient Greece. This was believed to be the biggest statue in the world. Another wonder of the world was the Colossus of Rhodes. This was another big statue in ancient Greece.
The Ancient Greeks also built the Temple of Artemis... and the Tomb of Mausolus.
Time and earthquakes(4) destroyed most of these wonders of the world.
After an earthquake in Alexandria, they built Fort Qaitbay at the same place as the Lighthouse of Alexandria and used many stones from the same building.
Today, only the Great Pyramid of Giza remains(5). Experts believe that this was the first ancient wonder because it is older than the others.
Every year, millions of people come to see the Pyramids of Egypt. They are some of the most visited tourist attractions(6) anywhere.
For many people, the Great Pyramid of Giza is also a wonder of the modern world.
Which building do you like the best ? Why ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) حذر | (2) حدائق بابل المعلقة | (3) قصر | (4) زلازل | (5) يظل/يمكث | (6) مناطق جذب



General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 on display = on show معروض

ex.: - Many statues are on display in the museum.

2 however = but ومع ذلك / ولكن (تعبر عن التناقض)

ex.: - He is clever. However, he doesn't get high marks.

3 space

* space فراغ / مساحة (اسم لا يُعد)
  - There is no space for me here. The room is crowded مزدحمة.
* space الفضاء
  - My little brother dreams of travelling into space.

4 design

* design (v) يصمم - يخطط
  - My elder brother designed a machine for making coffee.
* design (n) تصميم
  - There are about 1,557 designs from different countries.

5 similar to / the same as

* similar to مشابه لـ (لكن يوجد بعض الاختلاف البسيط)
  - Salma is similar to her mother.
* the same (as) نفسه / متشابه (لدرجة التطابق)
  - They are twins. They are the same.
  - Hoda is the same as Nouran.

6 reason

* reason (for) + [inf. + ing] / noun سبب لـ
  - What's the reason for your coming late ?
* reason why + فاعل + فعل ... سبب لـ
  - Tell me the reason why you have come late.



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Toka wants to take part in the school .... for the talented musicians.
   a. award   b. competition   c. museum   d. treasure
2. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most .... treasures on display.
   a. valuable   b. cheap   c. inexpensive   d. ordinary
3. One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the ....
   a. enter   b. entrance   c. entry   d. enters
4. In 2002, there was a competition to .... a bigger and more modern museum.
   a. design   b. deliver   c. destroy   d. plant
5. The Egyptian Museum contains valuable ....
   a. pleasure   b. treasures   c. measures   d. awards
6. The temple is full of .... that carry its roof. They are made of stone.
   a. walls   b. columns   c. trees   d. gardens
7. Museums help us to .... our historical objects for other people.
   a. play   b. apply   c. display   d. pay

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

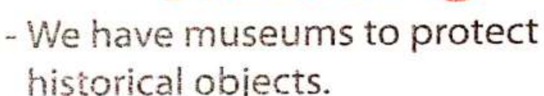
1. The old museum didn't have .... for 100,000 ancient objects.
   a. spice   b. space   c. trace   d. race
2. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) .... its first visitors in 2019.
   a. came   b. left   c. hit   d. welcomed

3. What is the .... for your coming late ?
   a. season b. reason c. cause d. expression
4. A .... is a period of a hundred years.
   a. year b. decade c. century d. week
5. SB You can .... a lot of time at Al Azhar Park.
   a. set b. spend c. stand d. shop
6. These two bags are the ....
   a. similar b. same c. different d. equal
7. My mother doesn't .... me to play in the street.
   a. collect b. get c. contain d. allow
8. Football is .... with all the Egyptians.
   a. popular b. famous c. known d. unknown

IV Speaking corner

Asking and answering questions about museums :

السؤال عن المتاحف والإجابة عليها :

Questions	Answers
• Why do we have museums ? لماذا لدينا متاحف ؟	 - We have museums to protect historical objects. لدينا متاحف لكى نحمى الأشياء التاريخية.
• Who is your favourite historical character ? من هى شخصيتك التاريخية المفضلة ؟	- My favourite historical character is Ramses II. شخصيتى التاريخية المفضلة هو رمسيس الثانى
• What objects are in the museum ? ما هى الأشياء الموجودة فى المتحف ؟	- Statues and valuable treasures. التماثيل والكنوز القيمة.
• What do you think about the Karnak Temple ? ما رأيك فى معبد الكرنك ؟	- I think it was more crowded than the Valley of the Kings. أعتقد أنه أكثر إزدحامًا من وادى الملوك.
• When should we go to the museum ? متى يجب علينا أن نذهب إلى المتحف ؟	- We should go there early because that is the quietest time. علينا أن نذهب إلى هناك مبكرًا لأنه أكثر الأوقات هدوءًا.

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«A wonderful holiday in Egypt»

1. Egypt has a long and ancient history. ١. مصر لديها تاريخ طويل وقديم.

2. I went to Egypt to spend my holiday. ٢. ذهبت إلى مصر لقضاء عطلتى.

3. My family and I went to the Egyptian museum. ٣. أنا وعائلتى ذهبنا إلى المتحف المصرى.

4. We saw statues and treasures. ٤. لقد رأينا التماثيل والكنوز.

5. We went to Luxor and visited The Valley of the Kings. ٥. ذهبنا إلى الأقصر وقمنا بزيارة وادى الملوك.

6. The Karnak Temple was really crowded. ٦. معبد الكرنك كان مزدحمًا بالفعل.

7. Habu Temple has many columns. ٧. معبد هابو لديه الكثير من الأعمدة.

8. It was a great holiday. ٨. لقد كانت أجازة رائعة.

سؤال

كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية

من الأسئلة الهامة فى الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب فى

- Writing Skill فى نهاية كل وحدة.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها فى نهاية الكتاب.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية فى ملحق المعاصر.



General Exercises

On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. The Valley of the .... is in Luxor.
   a. Queens b. Kings c. Pupils d. People
2. It is one of the most popular places for .... to visit.
   a. tourists b. farmers c. engineers d. architects
3. We went early because that is the .... time.
   a. busiest b. quietest c. cleanest d. best
4. It gets busier later on during the ....
   a. evening b. afternoon c. morning d. day

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB What do you know .... the Grand Egyptian Museum ?
   a. on b. at c. of d. about
2. This is a / an .... film. It tells us about the life of Alexander the Great.
   a. romantic b. action c. historical d. adventure
3. The Valley of the Kings is one of the most .... places for tourists to visit.
   a. dangerous b. expensive c. popular d. crowded
4. "Empty" is the opposite of " .... " .
   a. dangerous b. crowded c. beautiful d. modern
5. This lesson is the .... one.
   a. difficult b. most difficult c. more difficult d. as difficult
6. This problem is easy. It's the .... one I've ever solved.
   a. easiest b. easier c. more easy d. the most easy
7. This car park is 10 metres under the ground. It's very ....
   a. high b. long c. deep d. tall

8. In my opinion, history is the most interesting ....
   a. colour b. country c. park d. subject

9. SB My uncle is the .... person in my family. No one is older than him.
   a. youngest b. tallest c. oldest d. deepest

10. The police try to .... people from thieves and criminals.
   a. protect b. destroy c. hide d. refuse

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB The Karnak Temple is most crowded than the Valley of the Kings. (....................................)
2. We went early because that is the quieter time. (....................................)
3. Luxor is the better place to visit in winter. (....................................)
4. WB Trains are fast than cars. (....................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"The Grand Egyptian museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Review on Unit 8

SB page 21 WB page 83

1. Vocabulary

bridge	كوبرى	opinion	رأى
tunnel	نفق	view	منظر
desert road	طريق صحراوى	agree	يوافق
crowded	مزدحم	disagree	يرفض
population	تعداد السكان	treasure	كنز
measurement	وحدة قياس / قياس	entrance	مدخل
tourists	سياح	valuable	قيم
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	column	عمود
sunset	غروب الشمس	historical	تاريخى
mountain climbing	تسلق الجبال	objects	أشياء
achievements	انجازات	statue	تمثال
proud	فخور	sunny	مشمس

2. Language

Comparative and superlative forms : صيغ المقارنة والتفضيل :

	Comparative المقارنة بين اثنين	Superlative المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين
Short adjectives	- She is taller than her mother. - He is shorter than his brother.	- He is the tallest person in the family. - She is the shortest of all.
Long adjectives	- Maths is more difficult than English. - Football is less dangerous than mountain climbing.	- The lion is the most dangerous animal. - Ali is the least intelligent person.

3. Speaking

Asking for opinions

- What's your opinion about ... ?
- What do you think about ... ?

Giving opinions

- I think ...
- I believe ...
- In my opinion, ...

السؤال عن الرأى

ما رأيك فى .....

ماذا تعتقد فى ..... ؟

إعطاء الرأى

أعتقد ....

أعتقد ....

فى رأيى، ....

4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

"An old building in Egypt"

The Egyptian Museum is the oldest museum in Cairo. It opened in 1835. There were many of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum because there was no space in the museum for 100,000 other objects. The competition had many designs from more than 80 different countries. The new museum welcomed its first visitors in 2019. The most beautiful part of the museum is the entrance with its statues.

5. Writing Skill



* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) The Tahya Masr Bridge (2) Famous places in Egypt	- I had a wonderful holiday in (اسم بلد). - (اسم مكان سياحى) is in (اسم بلد). - Some people think, (اسم مكان سياحى) is the most beautiful place.

(3) Interesting places in Egypt (4) A wonderful holiday (5) The Grand Egyptian museum.	- In my opinion, (اسم مكان سياحى) is the best place in Egypt. - (اسم مكان سياحى) is one of the most popular places for tourists to visit. - I like (اسم مكان سياحى) because it has (شىء فى المكان). - (اسم مكان سياحى) took many years to be built.



Try

* استخدم التعبيرات السابقة لتكون جملة على كل كلمة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- Tahya Masr Bridge	I like the Tahya Masr Bridge because it has a glass floor.
- The Karnak Temple	....
- The Valley of the Kings	....
- Alexandria Library	....
- Holiday	....

Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Famous places in Egypt".

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test on unit 8



تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Where is the world's widest bridge ?
   a. In Cairo b. In London c. In Tokyo d. In New York
2. What do people enjoy doing across the bridge ?
   a. Running b. Taking photos c. Walking d. Swimming
3. When did the world's widest bridge open ? - In ....
   a. 2009 b. 2000 c. 1909 d. 2019
4. What can you see under your feet on that bridge ?
   a. Glass b. The river c. People d. Cairo

B. Language Function

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Osama : Hi ! Ahmed.
Ahmed : Hi ! Osama. Where did you go yesterday ?
Osama : I went to enjoy (1) .... across Tahya Masr Bridge.
Ahmed : Oh really. How (2) .... did it take to finish it ?
Osama : It took 32 months to finish.
Ahmed : Do you know that it's the world's (3) .... suspension Bridge ?
Osama : Yes, of (4) ....
Ahmed : What is the best (5) .... to cross the bridge ?
Osama : At sunset !
Ahmed : What a beautiful view !

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The oldest museum in Cairo opened in 1835. There were more than 160,000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures on display. However, the museum did not have space for 100,000 other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had 1,557 designs from more than 80 different countries.

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) welcomed its first visitors in 2019. It is further from the city centre than the old museum, but only two kilometres from the pyramids at Giza. It has more space for **valuable** objects, more people can see **them** and it is able to look after the objects really well.

One of the most beautiful parts of the museum is the entrance, with its big plants and statues. The biggest statue is the 12-metre statue of Ramses II.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?

....

3. Why do you think they built the Grand Egyptian Museum ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**valuable**" means ....

a. harmful b. expensive c. cheap d. unimportant

5. The old museum is .... than GEM.

a. bigger b. smaller
c. more valuable d. not older than

6. The old museum is .... the city centre.

a. near b. far from c. not in d. away from

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The centre of Cairo is very .... There are a lot of people and cars.

a. narrow b. quiet c. crowded d. empty

2. SB The Tahya Masr Bridge is the widest .... bridge in the world.

a. suspected b. suspension c. supported d. dangerous

3. It's a/an .... scene to have all this rubbish in the street.
   a. cheerful b. exciting c. wonderful d. ugly
4. I enjoy walking across the Qasr El Nil ....
   a. Bridge b. Pyramid c. Citadel d. Tower
5. You can put all these books on the desk. There's enough ....
   a. wood b. currency c. space d. centre
6. The museum has a lot of valuable ....
   a. numbers b. competitions c. pyramids d. treasures
7. The bridge was built on stone .... to stay strong.
   a. shows b. valleys c. columns d. lines
8. Toka is .... than Rokaya.
   a. quiet b. quieter c. quietest d. more quiet
9. I think Siwa is the .... place in Egypt.
   a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
10. WB I like going to Al Azhar Park .... there is a space for all my family there.
   a. so b. because c. but d. to

5 Read and correct the underlined word :

1. SB The Nile is long river in the world. (....................)
2. I think Cairo has more population in Egypt. (....................)
3. My brother is good at English than social studies. (....................)
4. Who is tallest, Nabil or your brother ? (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

يجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Tahya Masr Bridge"

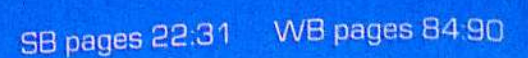
....

....

....

....

....





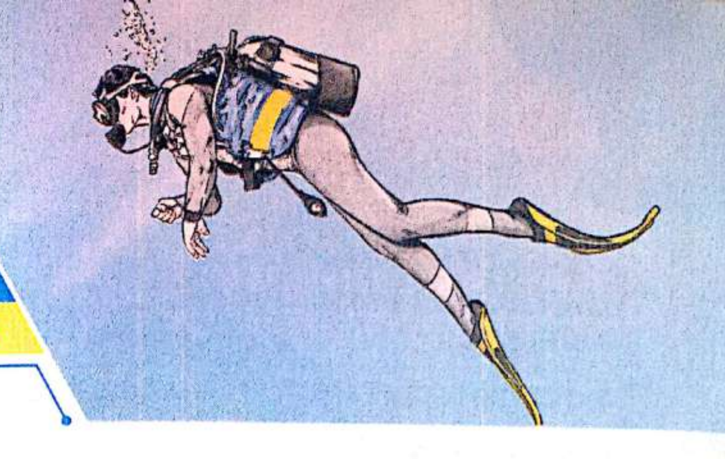
Adventure !

Objectives

- **Reading :**
  Holiday plans; a postcard; Around the World in 80 Days
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about an adventure sport; an email planning a trip
- **Listening :**
  Discussing adventure sports; a game; a presentation about a trip to the desert; a conversation about choosing activities
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing activities and travel plans; describing the weather
- **Language :**
  going to for plans; reflexive pronouns
- **Life Skills :**
  Negotiating; respect the opinions of others

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25 WB pages 84 & 85



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

diving (n) الغطس



mountain biking (n) رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال



sailing (n) رياضة الإبحار



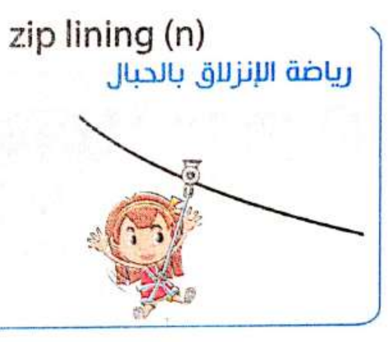
kayaking (n) رياضة التجديف بالزورق



rock climbing(n) رياضة تسلق الصخور



zip lining (n) رياضة الإنزلاق بالحبال



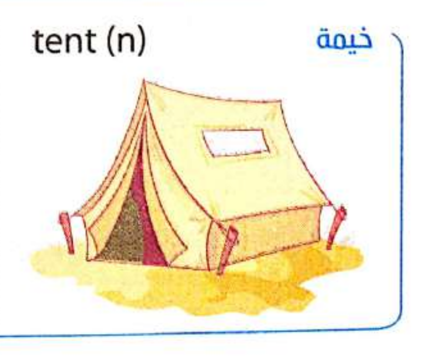
trekking (n) الإرتحال/التجوال (رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة)



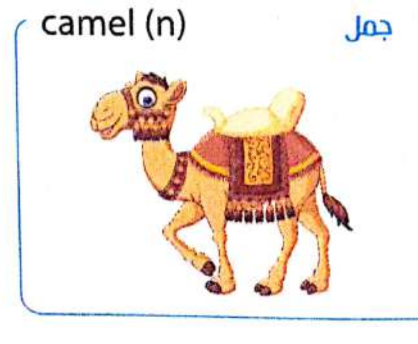
windsurfing (n) رياضة ركوب الأمواج



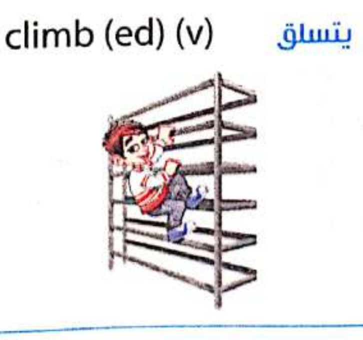
tent (n) خيمة



camel (n) جمل



climb (ed) (v) يتسلق



carry (ied) (v) يحمل



Key Vocabulary

water sport (n)	رياضة مائية	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	يخطط / خطة
mountain sport (n)	رياضة جبلية	negotiate (d) (v)	يتفاوض
adventure (n)	مغامرة	negotiation (n)	تفاوض
argument (n)	جدال	experience (n)	تجربة - خبرة

Famous places أماكن مشهورة

Mount Catherine	جبل سانت كاترين	Serabit el Khadem	منطقة سرابيط الخادم
Sinai	سيناء	Ein Kidd	منطقة عين كيد
Dahab	مدينة دهب	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Ras Shetan	منطقة رأس شيطان		

Lesson 1

SB pages 22&23 WB page 84

activities (n)	أنشطة	scary (adj)	مخيف
article (n)	مقال	try (ied) (v)	يجرب / يحاول
wind (n)	رياح	bit (n), (adj)	قليلًا

Lesson 2

SB pages 24&25 WB page 85

nearly (adv)	تقريبًا / حوالى	carefully (adv)	بعناية
journey (n)	رحلة طويلة	ideas (n)	أفكار
Bedouin (n), (adj)	بدو / بدوى	skills (n)	مهارات
guide (n)	مرشد	equipment (n)	معدات
decide (d) (v)	يقرر	arrive (d) (v)	يصل
way (n)	طريق	dates (n)	تواريخ
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
say	يقول	said	said
think	يعتقد	thought	thought
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
leave	يغادر / يرحل	left	left
find	يجد	found	found
get	يحصل على	got	got
win	يفوز	won	won

lose	يخسر / يفقد	lost	lost
sing	يغنى	sang	sung

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى
leave	يغادر	arrive	يصل
carefully	بحرص / بعناية	carelessly	بإهمال

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

diving	a sport where a swimmer goes deep under water to look at fish, sea animals..., etc.	رياضة الغطس
kayaking	a sport or hobby where one or two people travel in a narrow boat	رياضة التجديف بالزورق
mountain biking	a sport where someone rides a bike not on roads	رياضة ركوب الدراجات على الجبال
rock climbing	a sport where someone climbs up rocks	رياضة تسلق الصخور
sailing	a sport where someone sails a boat or a yacht	رياضة الإبحار
tent	something you sleep in when you go camping	خيمة
guide	a person who shows a place to tourists	مرشد
trekking	a sport where someone walks, usually for long distances in the mountains or the countryside with difficulty	(الإرتحال أو التجوال) رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام (ذات ظروف صعبة)
windsurfing	a sport where someone travels on water while standing on a board with a sail	ركوب الأمواج (التزحلق على الماء)
journey	a long trip from one place to another.	رحلة طويلة
adventure	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens	مغامرة
zip lining	a sport where someone slides along a metal wire between two high points	رياضة الإنزلاق بالحبال
wind	is the movement of air	رياح



Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

look scary	يبدو مخيفًا	go windsurfing	يمارس رياضة ركوب الأمواج
look fun	يبدو ممتعًا	try rock climbing	يجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور
so much to do	كثيرًا لنفعله	across Sinai	عبر سيناء
look at	ينظر إلى	across the desert	عبر الصحراء
arrive at	يصل إلى (مكان صغير)	stay with	يقيم مع
arrive on	يصل فى (تاريخ)	help me find the way	يساعدنى فى إيجاد الطريق
travel from	يسافر من (مكان)	take me 43 days	يستغرق منى ثلاثة وأربعون يومًا
leave on	يغادر فى (تاريخ)	get the best ideas	يحصل على أفضل الأفكار
plan for the future	يخطط للمستقبل	see you then	أراك فى ذلك الوقت
do anything scary	يفعل أى شىء مخيف	cook a meal	يطهو وجبة
come home on	يعود إلى المنزل فى (تاريخ)	there is no time !	لا يوجد وقت كاف
travel home by	يسافر إلى وطنه بواسطة	sleep in a tent	ينام فى خيمة
that's right !	هذا صحيح	the best place to shop	أفضل مكان للتسوق
I'd love to ...	أود أن ...	sleep by a pool	ينام بجانب حمام سباحة
wake up in a tent	يستيقظ فى خيمة		

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

go	diving	يذهب للغوص	kayaking	يذهب للتجديف بالزورق
	windsurfing	يذهب لركوب الأمواج	mountain biking	يذهب لركوب الدراجات على الجبال
	sailing	يذهب للإبحار		
	rock climbing	يذهب للتسلق على الصخور	zip lining	يذهب للإنزلاق بالحبال
	camping	يخيم (يعسكر)	trekking	يذهب لرحلة طويلة
	mountain climbing	يذهب لتسلق الجبال	down the river	ينزل قاع النهر
	to the mountain	يذهب للجبل	on a boat trip	يذهب فى رحلة بالقارب
	to the beach	يذهب للشاطئ		

لاحظ : أن الفعل (go) يتبعه الأنشطة المنتهية بـ(ing)

How to write the date

We write	We say
1st March	the first of March
30th March	the thirtieth of March

Ordinal Numbers

1st	first	12th	twelfth	23rd	twenty-third
2nd	second	13th	thirteenth	24th	twenty-fourth
3rd	third	14th	fourteenth	25th	twenty-fifth
4th	fourth	15th	fifteenth	26th	twenty-sixth
5th	fifth	16th	sixteenth	27th	twenty-seventh
6th	sixth	17th	seventeenth	28th	twenty-eighth
7th	seventh	18th	eighteenth	29th	twenty-ninth
8th	eighth	19th	nineteenth	30th	thirtieth
9th	ninth	20th	twentieth	31st	thirty-first
10th	tenth	21st	twenty-first		
11th	eleventh	22nd	twenty-second		

II Reading and listening

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

1 **Imad** : What are you looking at, Hassan ?

Hassan : Hi Imad. It's an article[1] about adventure sports[2] in Egypt.

Imad : Oh yes! Last year, I went diving[3] in the Red Sea. It was amazing[4]!

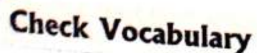
Hassan : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing[5], too.

Imad : What about rock climbing[6] ?

Hassan : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit dangerous[7], but I like trekking in the mountains.







Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال · (2) رياضات المغامرة · (3) غطس · (4) مدهش · (5) رياضة ركوب الأمواج · (6) تسلق الصخور · (7) خطير قليلًا



Imad : Me, too! I like the mountains. I'm going to visit Sinai with my family in the holidays.

Hassan : Are you going to try mountain biking[8], Imad ?

Imad : No, I'm not going to do anything scary[9]. It is very difficult to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hassan : I think you're right. Zip lining[10] looks scary, too.

Imad : I think it looks fun! I'm going to try it one day!

Hassan : Really ? No way[11] !

Check Vocabulary

(8) رياضة دراجات الجبال	(9) مخيف	(10) الانزلاق بالحبال	(11) مستحيل

on Lesson 1 SB page 23

2 **Mustafa** : I'm going to go to the mountains.

Hazem : Ok. Are you going to go trekking ?

Mustafa : No, I'm not.

Hazem : Are you going to go rock climbing ?

Mustafa : Yes, I am!

Hazem : Your bag is ... D.



Mustafa : That's right.

Hazem : My turn. I'm going to the beach.

Mustafa : Are you going to go kayaking ?

Hazem : No, I'm not.

Mustafa : Are you going to go diving ?

Hazem : Yes, I am.

Mustafa : Your bag is ... B.





on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Hi Eman!

I'm in Dahab with my family. There's so much to do here! This afternoon, we're going to go trekking[1] in the mountains[2]. I'm not going to try rock climbing. It's too scary !

Tomorrow, we're going to try windsurfing[3] in the morning and in the afternoon, we're going to go diving! We're not going to go kayaking[4]. There is no time!

Love, Reem

Check Vocabulary

(1) يذهب فى رحلة صعبة غالبًا سيرًا على الأقدام	(2) جبال	(3) رياضة ركوب الأمواج	(4) يمارس رياضة التجديف بالزوارق

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

My Trekking Adventure

By Ahmed

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai[1]. It's going to be a big adventure[2] ! I'm going to travel nearly[3] 500 kilometres through mountains[4] from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent[5] and stay with Bedouin families[6]. I'm going to have a guide[7] to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.

Serabit El Khadem
Ras Shetan
St Catherine
Mount Catherine
Ein Kidd

Check Vocabulary

(1) عبر سيناء	(2) مغامرة	(3) تقريبًا	(4) خلال الجبال	(5) خيمة	(6) عائلات بدوية	(7) مرشد

Here's my plan :

3rd March

leave Ras Shetan

14th March

arrive at Ein kidd

30th March

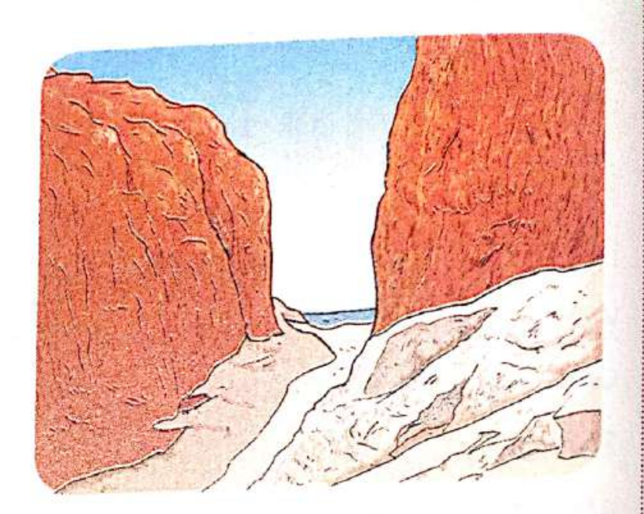
arrive at St Catherine

1st April

climb Mount Catherine

15th April

arrive at Serabit el Khadem





on Lesson 2 SB page 25

1 Voice :

The first of April.
The second of May.
The third of August.
The fourteenth of September.
The twenty first of December.
The thirtieth of January.

on Lesson 2 SB page 25

2 Mariam : Next year, I'm going to go sailing down the Nile with my family.
We're going to travel from Aswan to Luxor. We're going to leave Aswan on 28th December, we're going to arrive in Luxor on 4th January.

• on Lesson 2 WB page 85

3 Listen and write the dates :

Girl : This summer, I'm going on holiday with my family. On 25th July, we're going to drive to the Red Sea. On 30th July, we're going to go on a boat trip. On 3rd August, my cousins are going to visit us. On 6th August, we're going to have a picnic. We're coming home on the tenth. See you then!

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 * in + month / year
فى (شهر - سنة)

ex.: His journey is going to start in April.

* on + date
فى (تاريخ)

ex.: He is going to visit Ras Shetan on 14th March.

* on + days of the week
فى (يوم من أيام الأسبوع)

ex.: We don't go to school on Friday.

2 Compound nouns
الأسماء المركبة

هى عبارة عن اسم مكون من كلمتين أو أكثر مثل :

* school library مكتبة مدرسية
* football match مباراة كرة قدم
* shoe shop محل أحذية
* water sport رياضة مائية
* team sport رياضة جماعية
* mountain sport رياضة جبلية

3 scary - scared

* scary = frightening
مُخيف - مرعب

ex.: - Mountain biking looks scary.

* scared = afraid = frightened
خائف - مرعوب

ex.: - Basem was scared when he saw the snake.

4 • لاحظ الأفعال الآتية واستخدامها مع الرياضات والأنشطة المختلفة.

play	football basketball tennis volleyball squash
do	karate boxing judo
go	swimming windsurfing diving trekking

5 **help + مفعول به + المصدر / to + المصدر** يساعد

ex.: I'm going to have a guide to help me find / to find the way.

6 **arrive in / arrive at**

- arrive in + (يصل إلى مكان كبير (بشكل عام
- She arrived in Cairo at 7 p.m.
- arrive at + (يصل إلى مكان صغير (مكان محدد
- He arrived at school late.

7 **It is + صفة + (to + inf.)**

ex.: It's important to eat fresh vegetables.

8 **negotiate / negotiation**

* **negotiate (v)** يتفاوض

ex.: - Mr Helmy is good at negotiating.

* **negotiation (n)** تفاوض

ex.: - Negotiation needs a good skill مهارة.

9 **equipment** معدات - أجهزة

اسم لا يُعد (تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد وليس لها جمع)

ex.: - This equipment is so useful.

10 **plan**

* **plan (v) + (to + inf.)** يخطط

ex.: - He has planned to travel to Alexandria.

* **plan (n)** خطة

ex.: - My plan for the weekend is to go on a picnic in the countryside.



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Many tourists like to go .... when they go on a journey on the Red Sea.
   a. windsurfing b. diving c. driving d. trekking
2. Rock .... is one of the most dangerous sports.
   a. gardening b. forming c. climbing d. riding
3. When we go camping, we sleep in a ....
   a. castle b. hotel c. tent d. hut
4. It's important to .... with other people when you need to decide something important.
   a. negotiate b. play c. call d. climb
5. SB In Dahab, we're going to go .... in the mountains.
   a. diving b. trekking c. windsurfing d. kayaking
6. WB All you need to go ....is a boat and some wind.
   a. sailing b. trekking c. diving d. zip lining
7. WB I love .... because I'm good at swimming under water.
   a. zip lining b. diving c. kayaking d. windsurfing
8. WB I don't want to have a / an .... on holiday, I want to sleep by a pool !
   a. desert b. journey c. guide d. adventure

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Rock climbing is a / an .... sport.
   a. water b. safe c. easy d. dangerous
2. Imad .... diving last year.
   a. made b. went c. gave d. took
3. Hassan would like to .... mountain biking. He has never practised it before.
   a. make b. try c. achieve d. take



4. The journey to Ras Shetan .... twenty days in the desert of Sinai.
   a. makes   b. gives   c. takes   d. spends

5. Diving is a .... sport.
   a. desert   b. mountain   c. water   d. jungle

6. I don't like .... films because they make me feel frightened.
   a. comedy   b. scary   c. family   d. happy

7. SB In the desert, we need a/an .... to help us find the way and a camel to carry food and water.
   a. farmer   b. guide   c. engineer   d. pilot

8. When you go rock climbing, you need some .... to take with you.
   a. excitement   b. equipment   c. comparison   d. information

9. .... are people who live in the desert.
   a. Bedouins   b. Runners   c. Beginners   d. Villagers

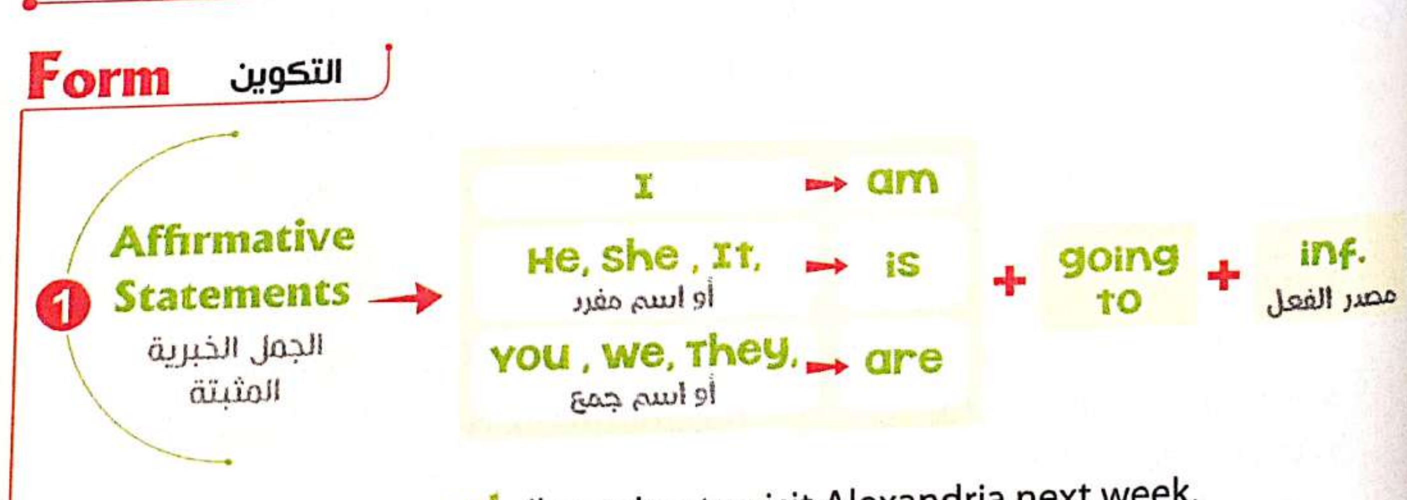
10. He was born on the 1st of March. This means the .... of March.
   a. first   b. fifth   c. fourth   d. fifteenth

11. A .... is the best animal that can live and travel in the desert.
   a. horse   b. donkey   c. cow   d. camel

III Language

Future with "going to" : (be) going to المستقبل باستخدام

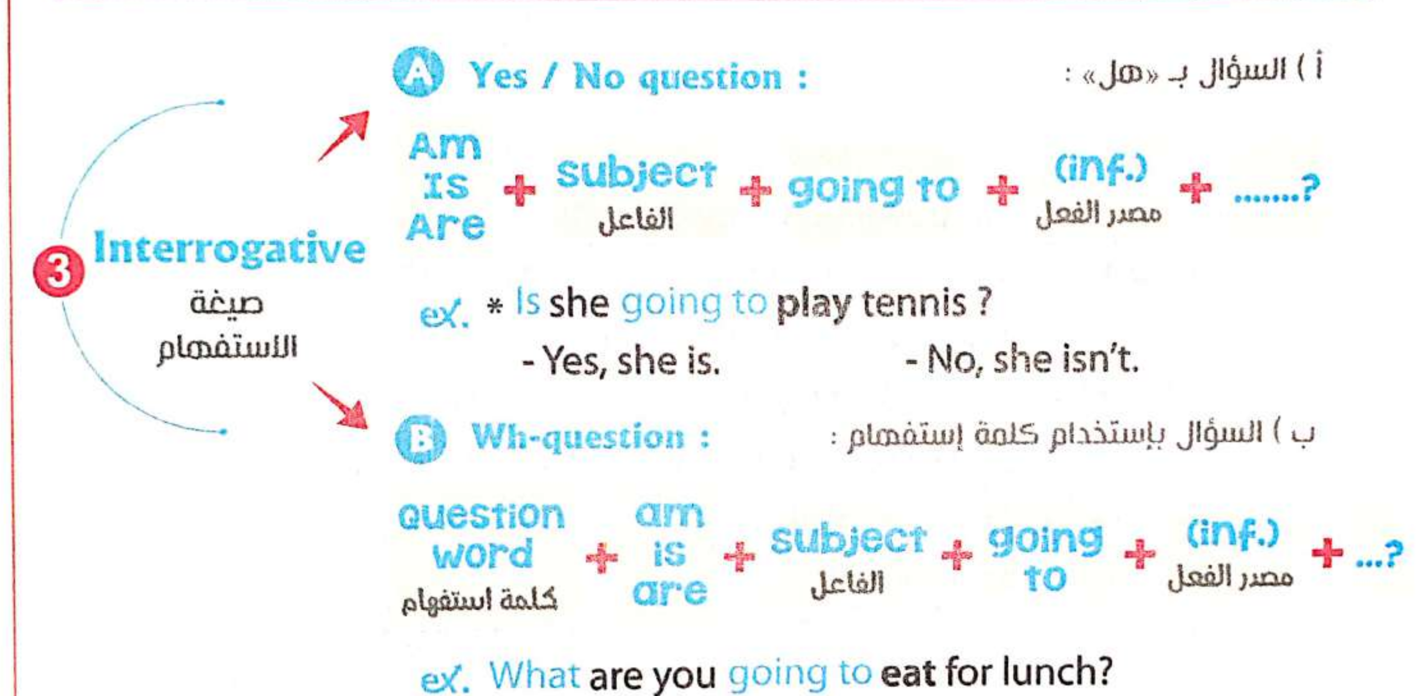
Form التكوين



ex. I'm going to visit Alexandria next week.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية → Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex. - They are not going to **visit** Alexandria.
- He is not going to **eat** fish.



Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1 Plans & intentions : (١) عند التخطيط المسبق أو النية لعمل شئ ما:

ex. - He is going to **spend** a week in Alexandria.
- I'm going to **visit** Ali tomorrow.

- لاحظ أن التخطيط المسبق أو النية تأتى مع كلمات مثل:

intend ينوى / plan يخطط / make a decision يتخذ قرار

ex. - We're going to **fly** to London next week. We've decided that.

2 Prediction with evidence : (٢) التنبؤ بالمستقبل مع وجود دليل على ذلك :

ex. - Look at those dark clouds ! It's going to **rain**.

هنا دليل قوى على أن السماء ستمطر (السحب سوداء)

3 Actions which are about to happen. (٣) أحداث على وشك الوقوع.

ex. - Watch out ! Your car is going to **crash**.



Exercises on Structures

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Is Reem going to .... trekking this afternoon ?
   a. going b. goes c. went d. go
2. I .... not going to try rock climbing. It's very dangerous !
   a. is b. am c. are d. isn't
3. SB Tomorrow, we're .... to try windsurfing in the morning.
   a. goes b. going c. went d. go
4. Are you .... travel home by bus after school ?
   a. will go b. going to c. go d. go to
5. We .... trekking, it's our intention.
   a. are going b. are going to go c. will go d. would go
6. Sama .... take the train to Aswan next week. She has her ticket.
   a. going to b. will c. is going to d. won't
7. The sky is full of clouds. It ....
   a. will rain b. rains c. is going to rain d. won't rain
8. Lamees is going to .... the game.
   a. wins b. win c. winning d. won
9. I can't ride a motorbike very well. I .... !
   a. crash b. crashed
   c. am going to crash d. going to crash
10. WB Who .... cook your meal this evening ?
    a. going to b. is going to c. will go d. would go

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I <u>don't</u> going to travel this week. (....................)
2. <u>Will</u> you going to visit your grandmother ? (....................)
3. SB He is going to <u>slept</u> in a tent. (....................)
4. I bought some paint and a brush. I <u>going to</u> paint my room tomorrow. (....................)

IV Speaking corner

Discussing activities and travel plans

مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر

Questions	Answers
• What are you going to do this weekend ? ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	I am going to visit Sinai. سأزور سيناء.
• Are you going to try rock climbing ? هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

1. I am going to go trekking across Sinai. ١. سأقوم برحلة سيرًا على الأقدام عبر سيناء.
2. It's going to be a big adventure. ٢. ستكون مغامرة كبيرة.
3. I am going to try zip lining. ٣. سوف أجرب رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال.
4. It looks fun. ٤. إنها تبدو ممتعة / شيقة.
5. It's too scary. ٥. إنه مخيف جدًا.
6. I am going to go windsurfing / diving. ٦. سوف أمارس رياضة ركوب الأمواج / الغطس.
7. I am going to have a guide to help me find the way. ٧. سيكون لدى مرشد ليساعدنى أن أجد الطريق.



On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Where is Eman ?
   a. In Dahab b. In Aswan c. In Ras Mohamed d. In Cairo
2. Who is Eman going with ?
   a. With her father b. With her friends
   c. With her family d. With a cousin
3. What's Eman going to Try ? - ....
   a. Mountain climbing b. Rock climbing
   c. Cycling d. Zip lining
4. When are they going to go trekking ?
   a. This afternoon b. This morning
   c. This evening d. This night

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sameh : Hello Ramzy. Where are you going ?
Ramzy : To the (1) ....
Sameh : Are you going to go trekking on the mountains ?
Ramzy : (2) .... , I'm not.
Sameh : So, (3) .... are you going to do ?
Ramzy : I'm going to go rock climbing. What about you ?
Sameh : I'm going to the beach.
Ramzy : (4) .... ?
Sameh : To go diving.
Ramzy : Have a nice (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What are your .... for the next holiday ?
   a. planes b. plans c. plants d. planets

2. I'm going to go mountain ....

a. climbing b. flying c. diving d. winning

3. "Adventure" means a/an .... experience when something unusual or dangerous happens.

a. boring b. tiring c. exciting d. funny

4. A/An .... helps you find the way.

a. carpenter b. architect c. teacher d. guide

5. .... families live in the desert.

a. Ancient b. Bedouin c. Village d. City

6. SB We're going to go .... in the Red Sea.

a. riding b. trekking c. windsurfing d. climbing

7. WB They took four days to cross the desert. It was a difficult ....

a. trip b. journey c. adventure d. tent

8. I .... abroad. It's my plan.

a. 'm going to travel b. 'll travel

c. travelled d. would have travelled

9. What's he going .... ?

a. do b. doing c. to doing d. to do

10. He wants to visit a lot of places at the Red Sea. He .... to the Red Sea.

a. travel b. travelled

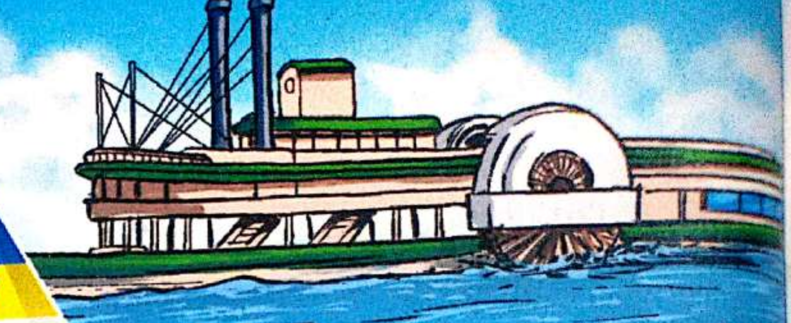
c. has travelled d. is going to travel

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. We're going to travel last month. (..............................)
2. He's going sleeping for 10 hours. (..............................)
3. His birthday is on the third from May. (..............................)
4. SB Is she go to go kayaking ? (..............................)

Lessons **3 & 4**

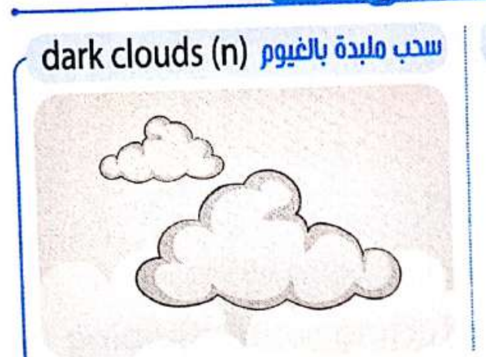
SB pages 26 : 28 WB pages 86 & 87



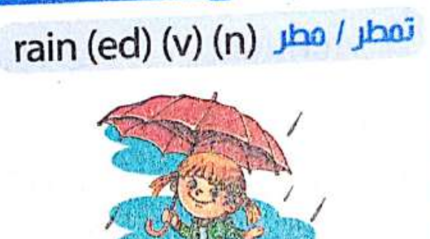
I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

dark clouds (n) سحب ملبدة بالغيوم



rain (ed) (v) (n) تمطر / مطر



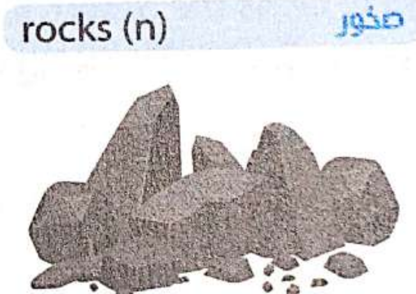
storm (n) عاصفة



sunny (adj) مشمس



rocks (n) صخور



newspaper article (n) مقال بجريدة



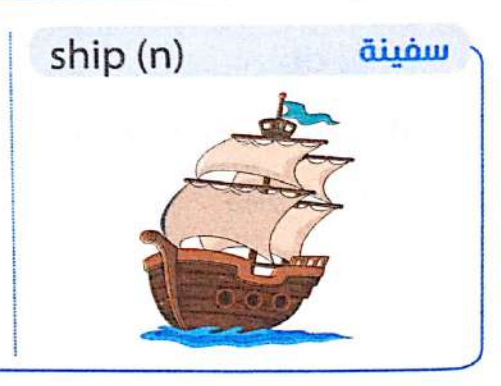
railway line (n) خط سكة حديد



plane (n) طائرة



ship (n) سفينة



stormy (adj) عاصف



snowy (adj) جليدى



towel (n) منشفة / فوطة



Key Vocabulary

weather (n)	طقس	transport (n)	مواصلات

Lesson 3

SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

postcard (n)	كارت بريدى	sunglasses (n)	نظارة شمس
enjoy (ed) (v)	يستمتع	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
dry (ied) (v) (adj)	يجفف - جاف	top (n)	قمة / أعلى
presentation (n)	عرض - تقديم	wet (adj)	مبلل - رطب
fire (n)	نار	frightened (adj)	خائف
eagle (n)	نسر	excited (adj)	منفعل / مثار
mirror (n)	مرآة	terrible (adj)	فظيع
quite (adv)	إلى حد ما		

Famous cities and countries

دول ومدن مشهورة

Egypt	مصر	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية
South Africa	دولة جنوب أفريقيا	Hong Kong	مدينة هونج كونج
Oman	دولة سلطنة عُمان	Suez	مدينة السويس
London	مدينة لندن	South America	أمريكا الجنوبية
Japan	دولة اليابان	Cairo	مدينة القاهرة
India	دولة الهند	Kolkata	مدينة كلكتا (عاصمة الهند القديمة)
Mumbai	مدينة مومباى (الهند)	New York	مدينة نيويورك
San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو (الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية)	England	إنجلترا
		French (n), (adj)	اللغة الفرنسية - فرنسى

Weather words

كلمات خاصة بالطقس

Noun	اسم	Adjective	صفة
rain	مطر	rainy	ممطر
sun	شمس	sunny	مشمس
cloud	سحابة	cloudy	ملبد بالسحاب
snow	جليد	snowy	مكسو بالجليد - مثلج
storm	عاصفة	stormy	عاصف
wind	رياح	windy	عاصف (شديد الرياح)
fog	ضباب	foggy	ضبابى



Lesson 4

SB page 28 WB page 87

mistake (n)	خطأ	introduction (n)	مقدمة
complete (d) (v)	يكمل / ينهى	type (n)	نوع
British (adj)	بريطانى (الجنسية)	character (n)	شخصية
challenge (n)	تحدى	chart (n)	رسم بيانى
return (ed) (v)	يعود	support (ed) (v)	يدعم / يؤيد

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get	يحصل على	got	got / gotten
come	يأتى	came	come
do	يفعل	did	done
stand	يقف	stood	stood
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
hurt	يجرح / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
give	يعطى	gave	given
take	يأخذ	took	taken
read	يقرأ	read	read
put	يضع	put	put
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
make	يصنع / يؤدى	made	made
tell	يُخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
sit	يجلس	sat	sat
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	thought
teach	يُدَّرس	taught	taught

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
top	قمة	bottom	قاع
dark	غامق / مظلم	light	فاتح
warm	دافئ	cool	مائل للبرودة
early	مبكر	late	متأخر

east	شرق	west	غرب
up	أعلى	down	أسفل
wet	مبتل	dry	جاف

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cloud / cloudy	a cloud is a white object that floats in the sky. When there are clouds in the sky, the weather is cloudy سحابة / ملبد بالسحب
fog / foggy	fog is a very low cloud, when it becomes difficult to see very far. When there is fog, the weather is foggy غيوم / ملبد بالغيوم
protect	look after, keep safe. Wear a hat to protect your head from the sun يحمى
railway line	the metal that a train travels on خط سكة حديد
rain / rainy	rain is water that falls from the sky. When it rains, the weather is rainy ممطر / مطر
snow / snowy	snow is like cold, soft, white rain and falls from the sky. When it snows, the weather is snowy جليد / جليدى
wind / windy	wind is the movement of air. When the wind blows, the weather is windy. رياح / عاصف
storm / stormy	a storm is a very bad weather, with a lot of wind and rain or snow. When there is a storm, the weather is stormy. عاصفة / عاصف
sun / sunny	The sun is what gives us light. When the sun shines, the weather is sunny الشمس / مشمس

Important expressions & prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

do an activity	يقوم بنشاط	leave on	يغادر فى ... (تاريخ)
the top of the mountain	أعلى الجبل	return on	يعود فى ... (تاريخ)
on the way down	فى طريقنا للنزول (لأسفل)	return to	يعود إلى
a bit frightened	خائف قليلًا	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
fall over	يسقط	get dressed	يرتدى ملابسه
sit by the fire	يجلس بالقرب من المدفأة	go on a trip	يذهب فى رحلة قصيرة
put on a hat	يرتدى قبعة	made myself breakfast	جهزت وجبة إفطار لنفسى
on time	فى الوقت المحدد	get cold	يشعر بالبرد
come out of	يخرج من	across India	عبر الهند

on holiday	فى عطلة	This sounds easy	هذا يبدو سهلًا
at the start of the trip	فى بداية الرحلة	by ship	عن طريق سفينة
put in the correct order	ضع فى الترتيب الصحيح	keep ... warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
It is OK.	الأمر على مايرام	one day earlier	يومًا مبكرًا
ride on a camel	يركب على جمل	cook (meal) on a fire	يطهو (وجبة) على النار
complete the challenge	يكمل التحدى	go around	يتجول
give a great idea for	يعطى فكرة جيدة لـ	in just 80 days	فى خلال ثمانون يومًا فقط
travel around the world	يسافر حول العالم	travel on the sea	يسافر فى البحر

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a salad	يجهز السلطة	take	a photo	يأخذ صورة - يصور
	a cup of tea	يجهز كوب من الشاى		a challenge	يخوض تحدى
	a mistake	يرتكب خطأ		the ship back to	يرجع بالسفينة إلى
	breakfast	يجهز الإفطار			

II Reading and Listening

Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 26



Dear Grandma,

We're really enjoying ourselves on holiday(1) in South Africa(2)! It's beautiful here and there's a lot to do. Yesterday was an adventure(3). We went trekking in the mountains. It was sunny(4) when we started, but when we got to the top of the mountain(5), we saw dark clouds(6). On the way down, the rain(7) started! Then there was a storm(8). The rocks(9) were wet and Tamer fell over(10) and hurt himself. But it's OK _ his leg is better today.

Tomorrow the weather is going to be better, so we're going to try zip lining! I'm a bit frightened, but I'm excited(11), too.

See you soon,
Dalia

Check Vocabulary

فى أجازة (1)	دولة جنوب أفريقيا (2)	مغامرة (3)	مشمس (4)	قمة الجبل (5)	سحب سوداء / ملبدة بالغيوم (6)
مطر (7)	عاصفة (8)	صخور (9)	سقط (10)	مثار / منفعل (11)	



Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 26

A **Voice a :** It's very sunny[1] and there aren't any clouds[2] in the sky. I think it's a very hot day.

Voice b : There are lots of clouds and they're very dark. I think that there's going to be a storm[3].

Voice c : It's a sunny day, but there are some clouds in the sky above the mountain. I think it's quite hot.

Voice d : It's very foggy[4]. I think it's raining. It looks cold and wet.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشمس	(2) سحب	(3) عاصفة	(4) ملبد / ملىء بالضباب

on Lesson 3 SB page 27






B **Listen to Nader's presentation**

Nader : My trip to the desert[1], by Nader.

Last weekend, we went on a trip[2] to the desert. I woke up early and made myself breakfast[3]. Then I got dressed[4]. I put on my clothes and looked at myself in the mirror[5]. I put on a hat and sunglasses[6] to protect[7] myself from the sun.

At the desert, we met our guide and we rode with him on our camels. My sister took this photo of herself with her camel. That night, we cooked ourselves dinner on a fire. After dinner, when it got cold[8], we sat by the fire to keep ourselves warm[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) الصحراء	(2) رحلة قصيرة	(3) صنعت إفطارًا لنفسى	(4) أرتديت ملابسى	(5) نظرت إلى نفسى فى المرآة
(6) نظارة شمس	(7) يحمى	(8) أصبح الجو باردًا	(9) نحتفظ بالدفء	

Unit 9

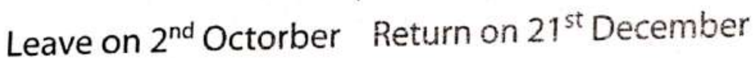
Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Around the world in 80 Days by Jules Verne

In 1872, the writer Jules Verne read a newspaper article(1) about a new railway line(2) across India. It gave him a great idea(3) for a book. He wrote a story about a British(4) man called Phileas Fogg. He takes a challenge(5) to travel around the world in just 80 days. This sounds easy today, but at that time, there were no cars or planes.

Fogg's plan

London to Suez, Egypt	train and ship	7 days
Suez to India	ship	13 days
India to Hong Kong	train and ship	16 days
Hong Kong to Japan	ship	6 days
Japan to the USA	ship	22 days
Across the USA	train	7 days
USA to London	ship	9 days


Leave on 2nd Octorber Return on 21st December

When Phileas Fogg takes the ship back to London from the USA, there is a big storm(6) at sea and he arrives in London one day late, on 22nd December. But he made a mistake(7): because he travelled east(8) around the world, it is one day earlier than he thought. So he completes(9) his challenge on time !

Check Vocabulary

(1) مقال فى جريدة	(2) خط سكة حديد	(3) فكرة رائعة	(4) بريطانى الجنسية	(5) تحدى
(6) عاصفة	(7) أخطأ	(8) شرقًا	(9) يكمل / ينهى	

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 by

لاحظ المعانى المختلفة لكلمة (by)

* by + شخص — بواسطة

- This room was painted by Ali.

* by + مكان — بالقرب من / بجوار

- He's sitting by the fire.

* by + وقت — بحلول ذلك الوقت

- By 2025, we will have built a new house.

* by + وسيلة مواصلات — عن طريق

- We went to Cairo by bus.

2 a bit (a little) ≠ much

توضع كلمة (a bit / little) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة قليلة.

- I'm a bit frightened of dogs.

بينما توضع (much) أمام الصفة لتشير أن الصفة موجودة بدرجة كبيرة.

- I'm much frightened of dogs.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Cars, buses, trains and planes are means of ....
   a. population b. pollution c. transport d. fear
2. I think it is going to rain. There are a lot of .... clouds in the sky.
   a. light b. dark c. white d. blue
3. I read a lot of information about pollution in a newspaper ....
   a. article b. note c. notebook d. capital
4. The Egyptians are designing a .... line that leads to يؤدى إلى the New Administrative Capital العاصمة الإدارية.
   a. car b. railway c. bike d. motor
5. In summer, it is hot and ....
   a. sunny b. cloudy c. windy d. rainy



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB After Sami .... out of the sea, he dried himself with a towel.
   a. made b. gave c. came d. put
2. It is important to .... on a hat in the desert as it protects you from the sun.
   a. make b. put c. give d. cut
3. Today, it .... easy to travel around the world in less than 80 days.
   a. tastes b. takes c. sounds d. leaves
4. Sara .... a mistake when she answered the questions without reading them well.
   a. took b. did c. made d. gave
5. SB How long does it .... to travel from London to Suez ?
   a. make b. bake c. take d. give
6. Which activity are they going to .... tomorrow ?
   a. make b. do c. give d. return
7. Today, the .... is sunny but it is so nice.
   a. wind b. feather c. whether d. weather
8. People from Britain are ....
   a. British b. Scottish c. Swedish d. Spanish
9. SB On his way down, Tamer .... over and hurt himself.
   a. took b. fell c. made d. gave
10. WB We can't sail because there is no ....
    a. sun b. snow c. wind d. fog
11. You shouldn't drive your car in .... weather as you don't see well.
    a. sunny b. funny c. foggy d. hot
12. Going trekking in the mountains is a / an .... It's very dangerous.
    a. fun b. adventure c. beauty d. pleasure
13. SB Maya .... us to speak French.
    a. brought b. taught c. bought d. thought
14. WB There is .... at the top of the mountain. Look! It's white.
    a. air b. storm c. sun d. snow



III Language

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

A We use reflexive pronouns for emphasis :

◀ الضمائر المنعكسة هى ضمائر تعود على فاعل الجملة وتستخدم للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قد قام بعمل الفعل بنفسه وغالبًا ما تأتى هذه الضمائر فى نهاية الجملة.

ex. I polished the shoes myself.

Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس
I أنا	myself بنفسى	You انت / أنتِ	yourself بنفسك/بنفسكِ
He هو	himself بنفسه	You انتم /انتن	yourselves بأنفسكم / بأنفسكن
She هى	herself بنفسها	We نحن	ourselves بأنفسنا
It هو/هى لغير العاقل	itself بنفسه/بنفسها لغير العاقل	They هم/هن	themselves بأنفسهم /بأنفسهن

ex. - She taught herself to speak German.
- We must cook the food ourselves.

B When the object is the same as the subject of the verb, we use the reflexive pronouns.

◀ عندما يكون المفعول هو نفسه الفاعل فى الجملة تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة.

ex. - Amir will hurt himself.
- She saw herself in the mirror.

◀ نلاحظ أن فى الجملة الأمرية إذا كان المخاطب مفرد نستخدم (yourself) وإذا كان جمع (yourselves)

ex. Spend a few minutes preparing yourself / yourselves for exercise.

◀ يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة».

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

ex. - I went shopping on my own (alone).
- He lives on his own (alone / by himself).
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own (without any help) ?

◆ يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر مثل after / for / on :

ex. - The girls looked after themselves.
- Always depend on yourself.

ولكن لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة مع حروف جر مثل (with) وتستخدم ضمائر المفعول بدلًا منها :

ex. - Bring your jacket with you. (Not : with yourself)

◆ تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة :

ex. - Enjoy yourself = استمتع بوقتك
- Take care of yourself = اعتنى بنفسك
- Help yourself (to) = ساعد نفسك / تفضل
- Make yourself at home = تصرف وكأنك فى منزلك
- Behave yourself = تصرف بأدب / تأدب

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB We enjoyed .... when we went sailing.
   a. himself b. themselves c. ourselves d. myself
2. SB Sami came out of the sea and dried .... with a towel.
   a. herself b. himself
   c. ourselves d. themselves
3. SB I made .... some salad for lunch.
   a. himself b. itself c. herself d. myself
4. SB Would you like to make .... a cup of tea ?
   a. yourself b. himself c. herself d. itself
5. You don't have to drive this car. It drives ....
   a. herself b. itself c. yourself d. myself
6. The teacher told the students to behave ....
   a. ourselves b. themselves c. yourself d. yourselves
7. She taught .... to speak English.
   a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself

8. Did you hurt .... ?

a. yourself   b. himself   c. herself   d. myself

9. I cleaned the kitchen .... myself.

a. on   b. in   c. about   d. by

10. WB Sara has a jacket to keep .... warm.

a. himself   b. themselves   c. herself   d. yourself

11. WB The birds sleep in caves to protect .... from eagles.

a. herself   b. itself   c. yourselves   d. themselves

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I made himself a cup of tea. (..............................)
2. A cat doesn't need a shower. It cleans herself. (..............................)
3. Mona drew himself a picture. (..............................)
4. Ahmed bought themselves a cold drink. (..............................)

IV Speaking corner

Describing the weather

وصف حالة الطقس

Questions ?	Answers ✓
• What is the weather like now ? • How is the weather now ? كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟	- There is fog, the weather is foggy. يوجد ضباب، الطقس ضبابى.
• How was the weather yesterday ? كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟	- The weather was sunny. كان الطقس مشمسًا.
• How will the weather be tomorrow ? كيف سيكون الطقس غدًا ؟	- The weather will be windy tomorrow. سيكون الطقس عاصف غدًا.





Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«A holiday in South Africa»

1. Last month, I saw some beautiful photos about South Africa on facebook. ١. الشهر الماضى، رأيتُ بعض الصور الجميلة عن جنوب أفريقيا على صفحة الفيسبوك.
2. I went to South Africa by plane. ٢. ذهبتُ إلى جنوب أفريقيا بالطائرة.
3. I had a nice time there. ٣. قضيت وقتًا رائعًا هناك.
4. On Saturday, I went trekking in the mountains. ٤. فى يوم السبت، ذهبت للتمشية فى الجبال.
5. The weather was sunny. ٥. كان الطقس مشمسًا.
6. On Sunday, I got to the top of the mountain. ٦. يوم الأحد، صعدتُ إلى قمة الجبل.
7. I saw dark clouds at the top of the mountain. ٧. رأيتُ سحب ملبدة بالغيوم على قمة الجبل.
8. There was a big storm, but it finished. ٨. كان هناك عاصفة قوية ولكنها انتهت.
9. I tried zip lining, it was exciting. ٩. ذهبت لتجربة رياضة الانزلاق بالحبال وكانت تجربة رائعة.



On Lessons 3& 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. When did you go trekking in the mountains ?
   a. Yesterday b. Today c. Last week d. Last month
2. What was the weather like when you started ?
   a. Cloudy b. Rainy c. Sunny d. Snowy
3. Did you go to the top ?
   a. Yes, we did b. No, we didn't
   c. Not in the text d. I don't know
4. What did you see at the top ?
   a. Rain b. The sun c. Dark clouds d. A plane

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I read a/an .... in the newspaper about modern inventions.
   a. novel b. article c. adverb d. app
2. My friends say that climbing the mountain is not safe, but I decided to take the ....
   a. challenge b. change c. trip d. top
3. My sister .... her leg and she couldn't walk.
   a. heard b. mended c. hurt d. cleaned
4. The ground was very .... after the rain yesterday.
   a. windy b. wet c. dry d. high
5. When there's .... , we see ice on the ground.
   a. sun b. storm c. snow d. rain
6. Try zip ...., but don't feel frightened.
   a. lining b. climbing c. trekking d. riding
7. Who .... your breakfast ? - I .... it myself.
   a. dried b. made c. hurt d. started



8. Make .... a plan before you start.
   a. you b. yours c. yourself d. ourselves
9. The children hurt ....
   a. himself b. herself c. itself d. themselves
10. I'm sure, Samira made this cup of tea by ....
   a. itself b. herself c. myself d. himself

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I'm sorry, Tamer hurt itself. (..............................)
2. Did you write this passage herself ? (..............................)
3. WB Mona drew himself a picture. (..............................)
4. We bought themselves a new car. (..............................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

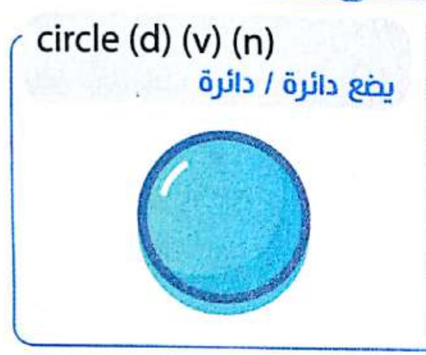
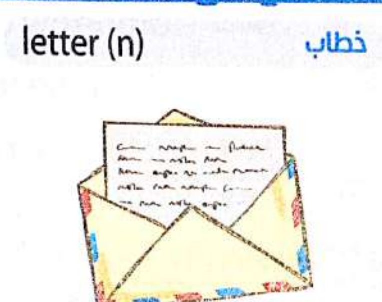
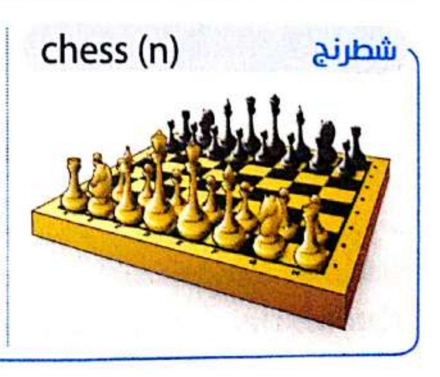
"A trip with your friends"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....





Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

circle (d) (v) (n) يضع دائرة / دائرة 	letter (n) خطاب 	basketball (n) كرة السلة 
beach (n) شاطئ 	grandad (n) الجد 	swimming (n) السباحة 
station (n) محطة 	album (n) ألبوم 	magazine (n) مجلة 
friends (n) أصدقاء 	email (n) بريد إلكترونى 	chess (n) شطرنج 

Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

important (adj)	مهم	introduction (n)	مقدمة
suggestion (n)	اقتراح	opinion (n)	رأى

Lesson 5

SB page 29 WB page 88

prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	hobby (n)	هواية
both	كلًا من	tomorrow (adv)	غدًا
respond (ed) (v) (n)	يرد - رد	underline (d) , (v)	يضع خطًا تحت
respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	weekend (n)	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع

Lesson 6

SB page 30 WB page 89

dear (adj)	عزيز / غالٍ	idea (n)	فكرة
excited (adj)	متحمس	ending (n)	نهاية
visit (ed) (v) , (n)	يزور - زيارة	advantages (n)	مزايا / مميزات
cousins (n)	أولاد العم / الخال	online (adv), (adj)	متصل بالإنترنت
photo album	ألبوم الصور	tennis lessons (n)	دروس فى التنس
reply (ied) (v) , (n)	يرد - رد		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
meet	يقابل	met	met
fight	يحارب / يتشاجر	fought	fought
hit	يضرب	hit	hit
find	يجد	found	found
buy	يشترى	bought	bought

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

challenge	a difficult task or problem	تحدى

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

forms of transport	وسائل المواصلات	respond to suggestions	يرد على الاقتراحات
different forms	أشكال مختلفة	reply to	رد لـ
the most dangerous	الأكثر خطورة	I'm really excited	أنا متحمس للغاية
good idea!	فكرة جيدة !	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
good at	جيد فى	lots of	كثير من
give a presentation	يقدم عرض	stay with	يبقى مع
a bit scary	مخيف قليلًا	by the beach	بجوار الشاطئ
I'd rather + inf.	أنا أفضل	have tennis lessons	يأخذ دروس فى التنس
I don't know.	لا أعرف.	would like	يفضل / يود.....
How about ..... ?	ماذا عن - ما رأيك فى ..... ؟	write to me soon	راسلنى لاحقًا
respect other people's opinions	يحترم آراء الآخرين	end an email	ينهى رسالة بريد إلكترونى
		See you soon !	أراك لاحقًا ! / قريبًا
do sport	يمارس رياضة	plan for ...	يخطط لـ
put in order	يرتب		



II Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29



Ola : I'm really enjoying myself on our holiday. I love being by the sea[1]. What shall we do this afternoon ?

Lamia : Why don't we go swimming ?

Ola : I'm not sure. Swimming is fun[2], but we can do that at home. I'd rather[3] do something more exciting.

Check Vocabulary

بجوار البحر (1)	متعة (2)	أنا أفضل (3)

Lamia : OK. How about going windsurfing ?

Ola : I don't know. I'm not very good at windsurfing ... and it isn't very windy today.

Lamia : OK, not swimming and nor windsurfing ... I know! Let's go kayaking.

Ola : Good idea! I love kayaking.

Videoscript on Lesson 5 SB page 29

There are many sports that people enjoy today, such as hockey(1) ... athletics(2) ... and archery(3). But did you know these sports, and many others, were first played in Ancient Egypt ?(4) Very old drawings and paintings(5) show people playing a lot of different sports.

This picture in the Temple of Ramses II shows people fencing with sticks(6). In fencing today, two people fight each other with swords (7).

The Ancient Egyptians also liked running. During the time of King Taharka, there was a race(8) of 100 kilometres. People believe that this was a test(9) so that the king could find his best soldiers(10). Today, there is a race called the Pharaonic(11) Race. This, too, is 100 kilometres. It starts at the Hawara pyramid and finishes in Saqqara. Running is very popular(12) today. Millions of people around the world go running every week. It is a good way to stay healthy(13).

Some people think the ancient Egyptians played tennis, because there is a town near the Nile called Tinnis... and because the Arabic word for part of the hand is rahat al-yad. This sounds like the racket(14) you hit the ball with.

Sport was very important in Ancient Egypt. Is sport important for you ?

Check Vocabulary

لعبة الهوكى (1)	ألعاب القوى (2)	لعبة الرماية (3)	مصر القديمة (4)	لوحات / رسومات (5)
المبارزة بالعصى (6)	سيوف (7)	سباق (8)	اختبار (9)	جنود (10)
فرعونى (11)	مشهور / شائع (12)	يحافظ على صحته (13)	مضرب التنس (14)	



Reading

on Lesson 6 WB page 89

Dear Manal,

I'm writing to tell you my plans for the summer. It's going to be fun but busy. Then you can write to me about your plans!

First, I'm going to visit my cousins in Alexandria. They're going to take me to the famous library. I'm very excited about that. It's a beautiful building.

I'm going to go home on 22nd august. I'm going to have tennis lessons!

I can't play tennis now, but I'm going to be very good after the lessons!

Let's do some things together before we go back to school.

What about gong to the beach? You always like swimming.

Write to me soon so I know your plans!

From Judy

on Lesson 6 SB Page 30

New message

From : Maher

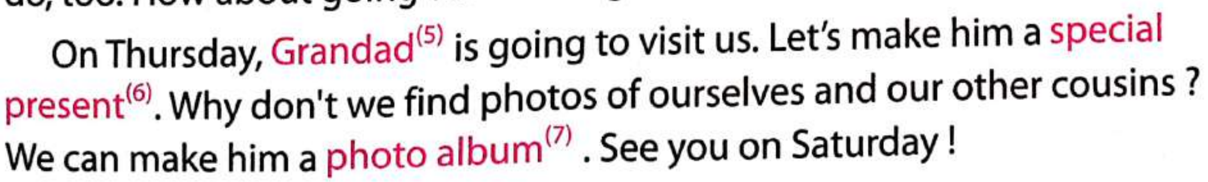
To : Karim

Subject : Your visit

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited[1] that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm looking forward to[2] seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station[3].

Our new home is by the beach[4]. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?



On Thursday, Grandad[5] is going to visit us. Let's make him a special present[6]. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album[7] . See you on Saturday !

From

Maher

Check Vocabulary

(1) مثار / منفعل	(2) يتطلع الى	(3) محطة	(4) بجوار الشاطئ	(5) جد	(6) هدية مميزة	(7) ألبوم صور فوتوغرافية

General Notes on Reading and Listening

▶ Look forward to + noun اسم / (inf. + ing)

يتطلع إلى

- I'm looking forward to visiting Aswan.
- We're looking forward to the summer vacation.

• لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية مع الفعل "make".

make	- notes	يدون ملاحظات
	- suggestions	يقدم اقتراحات
	- a sentence	يكون جملة
	- a special present for	يصنع هدية خاصة لـ
	- a photo album	يصنع ألبوم صور
	- a presentation	يجهز عرض

• لاحظ التراكيب اللغوية الآتية للتعبير عن الاقتراح.

Making Suggestions

1. Let's + inf. هيا بنا
- Let's play tennis.

2. How / What about + (inf. + ing) ..... ? ما رأيك / (وماذا عن) ..... ؟
- How / what about playing basketball ?

3. Why don't we + inf. المصدر ..... ? لما لا ...
- Why don't we go windsurfing ?

4. Shall we + inf. المصدر ..... ? هيا بنا .. ؟ / هلا فعلنا .... ؟
- Shall we go diving ?

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is a team sport.
   a. Basketball   b. Squash   c. Karate   d. Athletics
2. I collected all my family photos and put them in a/an ....
   a. quiz   b. album   c. book   d. basket
3. I love food very much, so I always read .... about food.
   a. offices   b. kitchens   c. magazines   d. screens

4. When I travel to Alexandria, I sit by the .... I love the sea.
   a. street   b. road   c. sand   d. beach

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We learned to .... older people. It's polite to do.
   a. destroy   b. delete   c. respect   d. carry
2. How .... eating lunch at a restaurant ? - Good idea !
   a. for   b. on   c. about   d. off
3. There are many .... of transport nowadays.
   a. forms   b. frames   c. farms   d. farmers
4. Our science teacher .... some suggestions about our trip to the Science Museum.
   a. took   b. gave   c. made   d. did
5. I'm .... forward to seeing my uncle before travelling.
   a. making   b. taking   c. looking   d. doing
6. We usually start the email with the word ....
   a. Dare   b. Dear   c. Deer   d. Dart
7. He thinks that rock climbing is a bit scary. She'd rather .... another sport.
   a. make   b. do   c. give   d. share
8. When your friend sends you an email, you should write him a/an ....
   a. lesson   b. invitation   c. question   d. reply
9. WB Always check your final email for any .... in spelling or grammar.
   a. plans   b. mistakes   c. words   d. lessons
10. One of the .... of the underground is that it is cheap, clean and fast.
    a. advantages   b. presentations   c. introductions   d. stations
11. You can plan your presentation on the computer or .... notes.
    a. have   b. make   c. give   d. do
12. SB Maher wants to make a .... present for his grandad.
    a. special   b. private   c. general   d. public

IV Speaking corner

1 Making and responding to suggestions :

١. تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

1 Situation الموقف	2 Positive response الرد بالموافقة	3 Negative response الرد بالرفض
- **Why don't** we go swimming ? لما لا نذهب للسباحة ؟	- That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	- No, thanks. لا. شكراً.
- **How about** meeting next weekend ? ما رأيك أن نتقابل العطلة القادمة ؟	- Great idea. فكرة عظيمة.	- I don't really feel like it. أنا حقاً لا أحب هذا.
- **What about** watching TV ? ما رأيك فى مشاهدة التلفزيون ؟	- OK, why not ? وهو كذلك ولِمَ لا ؟	- I'm not very keen on that. لست متحمسًا لذلك.
- **Shall we** have a picnic ? - **Shall we** go rock climbing ? - ما رأيك أن نذهب فى نزهة ؟ - ما رأيك بأن نتسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, let's do so. نعم. هيا نفعل هذا.	- Maybe some other time. - I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary ربما فى وقت آخر. انا غير متاكد هذا يبدو مخيفا قليلا
- **We could** have a game of football. من الممكن أن نلعب مباراة كرة قدم.	- OK. موافق.	- That's not possible. - I'd rather (go to the beach) هذا ليس ممكنًا. أنا أفضل الذهاب للشاطئ.
- **Let's** go to the Public Library to read some books. هيا بنا نذهب للمكتبة العامة لقراءة بعض الكتب.	- That's a good idea. - إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I'd prefer to (go to the beach). أنا أفضل (الذهاب للشاطئ).
- **Let's** go shopping. هيا بنا نذهب للتسوق.	- Great idea. - فكرة عظيمة.	- Sorry, I'm busy. آسف. أنا مشغول.
- **I suggest going** to the museum. أنا أقترح أن نذهب للمتحف.	- I agree. أنا موافق.	- I disagree. أنا غير موافق.

2 Talking about your plan for the holiday ٢. الحديث عن خطتك للأجازة

1. On ......أيام الأسبوع......, ...(شخص).... (is / are / am) going to ......رياضة / هواية.......
2. On ......أيام الأسبوع......, ...(شخص).... (am not / isn't / aren't) going to ......رياضة / هواية.......
3. ....(شخص).... (am / is / are) good at ......رياضة / هواية.......
4. It's going to be a ....(صفة).... adventure.
5. From ....(تاريخ).... to ....(تاريخ)...., ...(شخص).... am / is / are going to ......رياضة / هواية.......
6. I like ......رياضة / هواية.......
7. ....(شخص).... am / is / are going to stay at / in ....(مكان)....
8. ....(شخص).... can ......رياضة / هواية.......
9. ....(شخص).... am / is / are looking forward to ....(inf. + ing)....
10. The journey is going to take ....(وقت)....

Exercise on Speaking Corner

◎ **Complete the following dialogue :**

A : Hi Ahmed! What shall we do tomorrow ?

B : Shall we (1) .... rock climbing ?

A : I'm not sure. That sounds a bit scary. I'd rather do another sport.

B : I like doing sports, too. How (2) .... playing basketball ?

A : I don't know. I'm not very good (3) .... basketball.

B : I know ! (4) .... play tennis. We're both good at it.

A : Good idea !

B : (5) .... will we meet ?

A : At nine o'clock.

B : Ok.



V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Forms of transport» وسائل المواصلات

1. We have different forms of transport today.

١. لدينا وسائل مختلفة من المواصلات اليوم.

2. There are some forms of transport that are also hobbies.

٢. هناك بعض وسائل المواصلات التى تعتبر هوايات أيضًا.

3. The fastest form of transport is the plane.

٣. الطائرات من أكثر وسائل المواصلات سرعة.

4. Some people prefer certain forms of transport.

٤. بعض الأشخاص يفضلون وسائل مواصلات معينة.

Writing tips

Remember to use joining words to connect ideas.

تذكر أن تستخدم مفردات لربط الأفكار.

- I can't play tennis now, I'm going to be very good after the lessons !
- Write to me soon. I know your plans !

Remember

تذكر

- E-mails usually start with Dear (name).

تبدأ عادة رسائل البريد الإلكترونى بكلمة **Dear** (اسم).

- E-mails to a friend usually end with an expression like "See you soon"

تنتهى عادة رسائل البريد الإلكترونى بتعبيرات مثل "أراك قريبًا".



On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Who is looking forward to seeing Karim ? - ....
   a. Samy   b. Maher   c. Karim's sister   d. Sawsan
2. Karim is coming from ....
   a. Cairo   b. Alexandria   c. Aswan   d. Luxor
3. When is Karim coming ? - ....
   a. Next Saturday   b. Today   c. Tomorrow   d. Next year
4. How is Karim coming ? - By ....
   a. train   b. bus   c. plane   d. boat

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Salem : What shall we do tomorrow ?

Ameer : Let's (1) .... a sport.

Salem : Are you good at playing basketball ?

Ameer : Yes, (2) .... Do you like playing it ?

Salem : (3) ...., I'm not tall.

Ameer : Don't worry. I'm not tall, either. But I practise it daily.

Salem : (4) .... do you practise it ?

Ameer : At school and in the club.

Salem : (5) .... do you practise it ?

Ameer : Every day.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Shall we .... rock climbing ?
   a. going   b. go   c. went   d. to go
2. .... going to the park ?
   a. Shall we   b. Let's   c. How about   d. Can we

3. WB The children put on hats to protect .... from the sun.
   a. itself b. himself c. herself d. themselves

4. After reading the story, I .... some notes.
   a. made b. did c. bought d. sold

5. I felt .... when I saw my team winning the match.
   a. excited b. afraid c. warm d. frightened

6. Write a/an .... at the beginning of your email.
   a. passage b. text c. conclusion d. introduction

7. A : What's your .... about the journey ? B : Wonderful !
   a. suggestion b. opinion c. hobby d. expression

8. My favourite .... is reading. I like it so much.
   a. activity b. study c. hobby d. trip

9. Egypt has many .... of transport.
   a. farms b. forms c. objects d. subjects

10. I'd rather .... sports on holidays.
   a. make b. take c. do d. send

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Let's spending good time together. (..................................)
2. SB I'm looking forward to see you. (..................................)
3. WB I'd prefer playing tennis. (..................................)
4. She is tall and very good in basketball. (..................................)



Review on Unit 9

SB page 31 WB page 90

1. Vocabulary

diving	رياضة الغطس	water sport	رياضة مائية
kayaking	التجديف بالزورق	mountain sport	رياضة جبلية
trekking	رياضة السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة	Bedouin	بدوى - بدو
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	adventure	مغامرة
zip lining	الإنزلاق بالحبال	equipment	معدات
sailing	الإبحار (بالمركب)	argument	مناقشة / جدال
tent	خيمة	sunny	مشمس
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات الجبلية	foggy	ملئ بالضباب
suggestion	اقتراح	newspaper article	مقال فى جريدة

2. Language

1. Future with (be + going to) :

Affirmative statements

Subj. + be + going to + inf. المصدر

I	am	going to	cook. see. clean.
He She It	is		
You We They	are		look. work.

Questions

1

Am Is Are	+ subj. + going to + inf. .... ?

Is she going to try rock climbing ?

2 **Wh word + be + subj. + going to + inf.** المصدر **?**

- Where are you going to study ?
- What is he going to do tonight ?

Negative statements

Subj. + be + not + going to + inf. المصدر

I	am not	going to	cook. see. clean.
He She It	is not		
You We They	are not		look. work.

2. Reflexive pronouns :
٢. الضمائر المنعكسة

* عندما يكون المفعول والفاعل نفس الشخص نستخدم الضمير المنعكس.

myself,yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves

- Amir will hurt himself.
- Did you look at yourself in the mirror ?

* أحيانًا نستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد على أن الفاعل قام بالفعل بنفسه وغالبًا ما يأتى فى نهاية الجملة.

- Nobody helped me do the work. I did it myself.

3. Speaking

* **Making suggestions :** لتقديم اقتراح نستخدم الصيغ الآتية :

Suggestions	Examples
• Let's + inf. المصدر	- Let's play tennis.
• How / What about + inf. + ing ... ?	- How about going to the park ?
• What shall we + inf... ?	- What shall we do tomorrow ?
• Shall we + inf. ... ?	- Shall we go rock climbing ?

* للرد بالموافقة : - Good idea.
* للرد بعدم الموافقة : - I don't feel like it.

4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

"My trekking adventure"

Next year, I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big adventure! I'm going to travel nearly 500 kilometres through mountains from Ras Shetan to Serabit el Khadem. I'm going to sleep in a tent and stay with Bedouin families. I'm going to have a guide to help me find the way and a camel to carry food and water. The journey is going to take me 43 days.

5. Writing Skill



Study

* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) My favourite sport (2) A trip to the desert (3) An adventure sport (4) A holiday with my family	- I'm in (مكان) with my family. - I would like to (مصدر الفعل). - We are going to try (لعبة رياضية). - The weather is (حالة الجو). - I'm (صفة). - We're enjoying ourselves on holiday in (مكان). - We are going to visit (مكان). - The journey is going to start/finish in (وقت). - We are going to sleep in (مكان).



Try

* استخدم التعبيرات السابقة لتكون جملة على كل كلمة :

The Word	Try to make a sentence
- windsurfing	We're going to try windsurfing.
- tent	....
- Sinai	....
- sunny	....
- rock climbing	....

Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words of :

"Your favourite sport"

....
....
....
....

Test on unit 9



تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We're on holiday in ....
   a. Africa   b. South Africa   c. North Africa   d. India
2. The weather is going to be better ....
   a. tomorrow   b. today   c. next   d. Before
3. Is there a lot to do ?
   a. Yes, there's   b. No, there isn't
   c. Not in the text   d. I don't know
4. Yesterday was ....
   a. foggy   b. an adventure   c. terrible   d. sunny

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem tells Amr about his journey.

Amr : I haven't seen you for ten days. Were you on a journey ?
Kareem : Yes, I (1) .... in Dahab.
Amr : Did you go alone ?
Kareem : No, I went (2) .... my friends.
Amr : (3) .... did you stay there ?
Kareem : For a week.
Amr : Did you try rock climbing ?
Kareem : No, because it was (4) ....
Amr : How did you (5) .... from one place to another ?
Kareem : On a camel.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Karim,

I'm really excited that you are going to come and stay with us next week. I'm **looking forward to** seeing you again. What time is your train going to arrive ? We can meet you at the station.

Our new home is by the beach. We can go swimming every day. There are lots of other things to do, too. How about going windsurfing or diving ?

On Thursday, grandad is going to visit us. Let's make **him** a special present. Why don't we find photos of ourselves and our other cousins ? We can make him a photo album.

See you on Saturday !

From

Maher

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is this email about ?

....

2. Where's Maher's new home ?

....

3. Do you think Maher's grandad would be happy with the photo album ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined expression "**look forward to**" means ....

a. watch b. hope c. like d. worry

5. The underlined pronoun "**him**" refers to ....

a. Maher b. Karim c. grandad d. cousin

6. Karim and Maher can go ....

a. swimming b. windsurfing c. diving d. a,b & c

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To walk a long distance, usually over land is called ....

a. surfing b. kayaking c. trekking d. zip lining

2. Travelling through the desert is a great .... I like it a lot.

a. fear b. adventure c. surfing d. kayaking

3. What about .... lining ? - It's dangerous.

a. rock b. wind c. zip d. rope

4. During trekking adventure, you need a .... to help you find the way.
   a. tourist b. rider c. guide d. driver

5. When you have a .... , this means that you know how to do something.
   a. subject b. skill c. plan d. sport

6. When you go diving, you should have some .... to keep you safe.
   a. equipment b. subject c. argument d. kind

7. After coming out of the sea, I dried myself with a ....
   a. down b. pool c. tool d. towel

8. Heba and Ramzy are really enjoying ....
   a. himself b. herself c. yourselves d. themselves

9. SB I .... try rock climbing tomorrow.
   a. 'll go b. 'm go to c. 'm going d. 'm going to

10. WB What .... learn ?
   a. is going b. she is going to
   c. is going to d. is she going to

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB What shall we doing tomorrow ? (....................)
2. Would you like to make you a cup of tea ? (....................)
3. WB I made this cake me. (....................)
4. Maged's father is going flying abroad. (....................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"An adventure"

....

....

....

....

....

Review 

SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92



Reading on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Hi Dareen

- How are you ? I'm really enjoying myself in Sydney with my family. Sydney is about eight hours by car from our home in Melbourne. Yesterday I climbed Sydney Harbour[1] Bridge[2]. It was very high and scary[3]. But the views[4] from the top were fantastic! My sister and I took a great selfie[5] of ourselves !

Tonight I am going to listen to music at the Sydney Opera House, but it is not opera, it is classical music[6]! Tomorrow I am going to the Blue Mountains. I am going to swim in a lake[7] and go rock climbing[8]. Here are some photos !

Love, Amy

Hi Amy



Your holiday sounds fantastic[9].
My family and I went to Sydney last year but we did not climb the bridge!
We went to Bondi Beach and went windsurfing[10] and kayaking[11].
I love water sports[12] !

I hope you enjoy your holiday, send me an email when you are home.

Love, Dareen

Check Vocabulary

ميناء (1)	كوبري (2)	مخيف (3)	مناظر طبيعة (4)	صورة شخصية بالكاميرا الأمامية (5)
موسيقى كلاسيكية (6)		بحيرة (7)	تسلق الصخور (8)	تبدو رائعة (9)
رياضة ركوب الأمواج (10)		رياضة التجديف بالزورق (11)		رياضات مائية (12)





Listening Lesson 2 SB page 33



Woman : Egypt is just over one million square kilometres(1)

Man : Australia is the sixth largest country(2) in the world. It is just over seven million, six hundred thousand square kilometres.

Woman : The hightest mountain(3) in Egypt is Mount Catherine. It is over two thousand six hundred metres high.

Man : The highest mountain in Australia is Mount Kosciuszko. It is over two thousand, two hundred metres high.

Woman : The River Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through(4) Egypt and other countries in Africa. It's over six thousand, six hundred kilometres long.

Man : The longest river in Australia is the River Murray. It is over two thousand, five hundred kilometres long. Be careful of the crocodiles (5)!

Woman : In Egypt, the tallest building(6) is the Cairo Tower. It is one hundred and eighty-seven metres tall.

Man : The tallest building in Australia is the Q1 building in Surfer's Paradise and it is three hundred and twenty-two metres tall.

Check Vocabulary

(1) كيلومترات مربعة	(2) دولة	(3) جبل	(4) يتدفق خلال	(5) تماسيح	(6) مبنى

Reading on Lesson 1 WB page 91



- Last weekend, I watched a TV programme about Robinson Crusoe Island[1]. The author[2] of *Robinson Crusoe*, Daniel Defoe, wrote about this island because a real[3] sailor[4] called Alexander Selkirk spent[5] four years alone here. Defoe wrote *Robinson Crusoe* after hearing about this man. However, Crusoe's adventures[6] were different to Mr Selkirk's. Crusoe spent a lot longer on the island (28 years) and the weather was a lot hotter than on the real island. Today, about 800 people live on Robinson Crusoe Island. Life is easier now, although people still have to look after[7] themselves. The nearest[8] land, Chile, is 24 hours away by boat. Soon they are going to build a new school and hospital on the island. Those are things that Crusoe did not have!

Check Vocabulary

(1) جزيرة	(2) مؤلف	(3) حقيقى	(4) بحار	(5) قضى	(6) مغامرات	(7) يعتنى بـ	(8) الأقرب

Time Saving

Plan B

◀ طريقة أخرى جديدة للشرح (اختيارية للمعلم)

لدراسة المنهج فى ملحق Quick Look

لضمان الإلمـام بالمنهج بطريقة تتماشى مع الفترة الزمنية للترم الثانى بشكل يضمن اكتساب جميع المهارات المطلوبة.





Listening Lesson 1 WB page 91



1

Girl : Hi Lara. How was your weekend ?

Lara : Oh, it was terrible(1).

Girl : Oh dear, what happened ?

Lara : I went to the museum, but it was closed(2) Then I missed the bus(3) so I had to walk home.

Girl : Oh dear ! (4)

2

Boy 1 : I love tennis. Do you agree(5) that it's more exciting than any other sport ?

Boy 2 : I'm afraid(6) I don't agree.

3

Girl 1 : What shall we do this afternoon, Lama ?

Girl 2 : Why don't go swimming ?

Girl 1 : I'm not sure. The swimming pool(7) is not very near.

Girl 2 : OK. How about going to the park ?

Girl 1 : Good idea !(8) I love the trees and plants there.

4

Boy 3 : What do you think about that book you're reading ?

Boy 4 : I think it's the worst(9) book ever !

Check Vocabulary

(1) فظيع / رهيب	(2) مغلق	(3) يفوته الأتوبيس	(4) يا للأسف	(5) يوافق
(6) أخشى أن	(7) حمام سباحة	(8) فكرة جيدة	(9) الأسوأ	

General Revision

Based on Units 7, 8 & 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٧ ، ٨ & ٩

مراجعة عامة على Unit 7 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية
sports centre	مركز رياضى
funfair	مدينة الملاهى
planetarium	مرصد فلكى
football stadium	ستاد كرة قدم
bowling alley	صالة لعبة البولينج
nervous	عصبى / متوتر
canteen	مقصف (كانتين)
exhibition	معرض / عرض
jungle	أدغال (غابة كثيفة)
musician	موسيقار
trumpet	آلة البوق
cave	كهف
interview	مقابلة رسمية
interviewer	محاور
traditional	تقليدى
adventure	مغامرة
sailor	بحَّار
concert	حفل موسيقى
olives	زيتون
peppers	فلفل
barbecue	حفل شواء

Language

1- Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

in the past	فى الماضى
yesterday	أمس
this morning	هذا الصباح
in (1999)	فى عام (١٩٩٩)
in (October)	فى شهر (أكتوبر)

last →
- year — السنة الماضية
- month — الشهر الماضى
- week — الأسبوع الماضى
- Tuesday — الثلاثاء الماضى

← ago
- an hour — منذ ساعة
- three days — منذ ثلاثة أيام
- six months — منذ ستة شهور
- four years — منذ أربع سنوات

• تستخدم هذه التعبيرات للدلالة على حدث وقع فى الماضى وانتهى.

- Salma bought a new bag last year.

2- Yes/No questions الأسئلة التى يجاب عنها بـ No / Yes

Did you go to the zoo ?

– Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Are you happy ?

– Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

3- Wh-questions الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام

What did you do yesterday ?

When are you going to the cinema ?

Speaking

1. Talking about your weekend :
الحديث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع الخاصة بك
   - When did you go to the funfair ?

   I went to the funfair last Sunday.

2. Discussing types of music :
الحديث عن أنواع الموسيقى
   - What type of music do you like ?

   I like jazz but I don't like opera.

مراجعة عامة على Unit 8 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary		Language	Speaking
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	**1- Comparative adjectives :** المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة معينة	1. Talking about measurements الحديث عن القياسات
tower	برج	صفة قصيرة + er + than	- How long is the Cairo - Alexandria desert Road ? كم يبلغ طول طريق القاهرة - الإسكندرية الصحراوى ؟
tunnel	نفق	- A dog is bigger than a cat.	- It's 220 km long.
desert road	طريق صحراوى	more/less + صفة طويلة + than	2. Talking about comparatives : الحديث عن المقارنات بين اثنين.
forest	غابة	- English is more interesting than history.	- Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid or the Red Pyramid ?
crowded	مزدحم	**2- Superlative adjectives :** المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى صفة	- I think the Great Pyramid is taller.
the countryside	الريف	the + صفة قصيرة + est	3. Asking for & giving opinions. السؤال عن وإعطاء الآراء.
population	تعداد السكان	The elephant is the biggest land animal.	- What's your opinion about the film ?
sunset	غروب الشمس	the most / least + صفة طويلة	- Do you agree that the match is boring ?
ice skating	تزحلق على الجليد	This T-shirt is the most expensive one in the shop.	- I agree. / I don't agree.
view	منظر طبيعى		
achievements	إنجازات		
proud	فخور		
opinion	رأى		
glass floor	أرضية زجاجية		
museum	متحف		
entrance	مدخل		
treasure	كنز		
historical	تاريخى		
column	عمود		
statue	تمثال		

مراجعة عامة على Unit 9 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
diving	رياضة الغطس
kayaking	التجديف بالزورق
mountain biking	رياضة ركوب دراجات الجبال
sailing	رياضة الإبحار
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبال
trekking	رحلة طويلة شاقة (غالبًا سيرًا على الاقدام)
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء
tent	خيمة
water sport	رياضة مائية
mountain sport	رياضة جبلية
rainy	ممطر
sunny	مشمس
cloudy	ملبد بالغيوم
windy	عاصف
foggy	ضبابى
railway line	خط سكة حديد
challenge	تحدى
journey	رحلة طويلة

Language

1- Reflexive pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل والمفعول هما نفس الشخص

- They're enjoying themselves.
- Toka hurt herself.
- Sami came out of the sea and dried himself with a towel.

2- "(Be) going to" for future plans.

استخدام (be) going to للتعبير عن خطط مستقبلية.

- I am going to visit Sinai.
- I am not going to play football.
- Are you going to travel to Tanta ?
- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

Speaking

1. Describing the weather :
وصف الطقس
- What's the weather like today ?
- It's sunny / rainy / windy / hot ... etc.

2. Discussing activities and travel plans :
الحديث عن الأنشطة وخطط السفر
- What shall we do this weekend ?
- Let's play tennis.
- What about going windsurfing ?
- Good idea !
- عند الرد نستخدم.
- OK, why not ?
وهو كذلك / ولِمَ لا ؟

General Exercises on Units 7, 8 & 9

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان : يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع من حوال ٢٥ كلمة ويجيب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. Dina's birthday was last ....
   a. Sunday b. Saturday c. Tuesday d. Monday
2. They went to the ....
   a. citadel b. library c. museum d. tower
3. They saw some .... statues.
   a. ancient b. modern c. new d. big
4. .... went to the museum.
   a. Mum b. Sister c. Dina d. a , b and c

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان : يكمل الطالب محادثة بها خمس فراغات.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Omar : Hello ! Hamdi.

Hamdi : Hi ! Omar.

Omar : (1) .... shall we do on Saturday ?

Hamdi : Why don't we go rock (2) .... ?

Omar : I'm not sure. It's quite (3) .... I'd rather do a different activity.

Hamdi : OK. How about (4) .... basketball ?

Omar : I don't know. I'm not very tall.

Hamdi : OK, you don't agree on rock climbing or basketball ! Let's play (5) ....

Omar : Good idea ! I always enjoy playing tennis.

Hamdi : OK. See you.

السؤال الثالث فى ورقة الامتحان : عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

3 Read the following, then answer the question :

Robinson Crusoe is an adventure story by Daniel Defoe. Robinson Crusoe was a sailor. One day his ship sank because there was a really terrible storm. Crusoe swam to a nearby island, but there were no other people there. Crusoe wrote a diary of what happened to him on the island.

18th December

I arrived on the island four days ago. Today I walked along the beach again, but I saw nobody and I think I am alone. This afternoon I found a dead fish and ate it but it was not nice. Although I am hungry, I don't want to eat another dead fish !

19th December

I found a coconut on the beach today. It was **delicious**. It rained last night and I was cold and wet, so today I went to look for a cave. I want a warm place to sleep. I walked through a jungle and there were some rocks, but no caves.

20th December

I found a cave !

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What's the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. Where did Crusoe stay ?

....

3. Do you think Crusoe was brave ? Why ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. When something is **delicious**, you ....
a. become afraid of it
b. don't like it
c. don't need it
d. enjoy eating it

5. "Robinson Crusoe" is an .... story.
a. romance
b. crime
c. adventure
d. comedy

6. Crusoe wrote a .... of what happened to him.
a. novel
b. dairy
c. diary
d. book

السؤال الرابع فى ورقة الامتحان : يختار الطالب الإجابة الصحيحة من ١٠ جمل (٧ جمل مفردات لغوية + ٣ جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He likes writing every thing happens in his ....
a. diary
b. dairy
c. daily
d. date

2. You can know a lot about the sky and its stars in the ....
a. planetarium
b. aquarium
c. stadium
d. funfair

3. He is a polite person who .... others' opinions.
a. hates
b. teaches
c. respects
d. makes

4. Travelling on the coast .... is wonderful. You can enjoy the sea, too.
a. way
b. street
c. land
d. road

5. We moved our chair to make more .... for us to move.
a. building
b. design
c. opening
d. space

6. I asked a .... to tell me the best places to visit.
a. control
b. guide
c. host
d. captain

7. The channel .... goes under the sea between England and France.
a. Bridge
b. Tunnel
c. River
d. Museum

8. .... did you go to the museum ? - Two weeks ago.
a. How
b. Why
c. Where
d. When

9. An elephant is .... than a camel.

a. bigger b. big c. biggest d. the biggest

10. Are you going to .... home by bus after school ?

a. travelled b. travel c. travelling d. travels

السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان : يقوم الطالب بتصحيح الكلمات التى تحتها خط فى أربع جمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية فقط.

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. What time did he **arrives** this morning ? (..................................)
2. I think tomorrow **is** very hot. (..................................)
3. How **age** is the Luxor Temple ? (..................................)
4. What's Samy going **do** ? (..................................)

السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان : مطلوب من الطالب كتابة موضوع تعبير من ٧٠ : ٨٠ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بكتاب الطالب.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A fantastic day in your life"

....

....

....

....

....

....



SB pages 34:43 WB pages 93:99

Welcome to my home!

Objectives

- **Reading:**
  Homes in ancient Egypt; round houses around the world
- **Writing:**
  - A paragraph describing your first school
  - A timeline of a famous person's life
  - A diagram of future houses.
- **Listening:**
  A podcast about homes of the future.
- **Speaking:**
  Saying what things are made of; predicting the future
- **Language:**
  is/are made of; there was/were; there will/won't be for predictions with no evidence; saying years
- **Life Skills:**
  Creativity; good listening and self-expression

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية في نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

sofa (n) كنبة	television (n) تلفزيون	curtains (n) ستائر
cushion (n) وسادة	lamp (n) مصباح	bedroom (n) غرفة النوم
pencil case (n) مقلمة	skirt (n) جيبة	socks (n) جوارب (شراب)
tablet (n) كمبيوتر لوحى	teaspoon (n) معلقة شاى صغيرة	toy (n) لعبة

Key Vocabulary

oven (n)	فرن	roof (n)	سطح (المنزل)
bricks (n)	قوالب طوب	tap (n)	حنفية / صنبور
wallet (n)	محفظة نقود	boat (n)	قارب
cup (n)	فنجان	wall (n)	حائط

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

material (n)	المادة الخام	round (adj)	مستدير / كروى
cotton (n)	قطن	answer (n)	إجابة / رد
glass (n)	زجاج	main (adj)	أساسى / رئيسى
leather (n)	جلد	knife (n)	سكين
metal (n)	معدن	seat (n)	مقعد
plastic (n)	بلاستيك	wood (n)	خشب
stone (n)	حجر	wool (n)	صوف
jumper (n)	بلوفر	the Stone Age (n)	العصر الحجرى
scarf (n)	كوفية / وشاح	possessions (n)	ممتلكات

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	about (adv)	حوالى
Deir el-Medina	قرية دير المدينة	the Nile Valley	وادى النيل
village (n)	قرية	the Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين
paint (ed) (v)	يلون / يدهن	painted walls	حوائط ملونة
kitchen (n)	مطبخ	life (n)	الحياة
living room (n)	غرفة المعيشة		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
be (am – is – are)	يكون	was/were	been
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten

Words and Opposites

كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
countable	يعد	uncountable	لا يعد
singular	مفرد	plural	جمع

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

cotton	a soft, white material from a plant that is used to make clothes	قطن
cushion	a soft object to sit on or rest your head on	وسادة (مخدة)
glass	a hard material that you can see through, used to make bottles, windows, etc	زجاج
leather	the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags	جلد
oven	the equipment used for cooking or baking food	فرن
plastic	a light, strong material used for making many things such as toys, rulers, etc	بلاستيك
wood	a natural material that is made from trees	خشب
wool	a soft material that is made from sheep's or goat's hair	صوف
brick	a hard, square object that is used for building walls, houses, etc	قالب طوب
roof	• this is the place at the top of a house • the top part of a building	سطح منزل
tap	you turn on a tap to get water in the house, garden, etc	حنفية
metal	a hard material, for example, gold, silver	معدن
round	with a shape like a circle	دائرى
stone	a hard, natural material that is made from rocks	حجر

Important expressions & prepositions

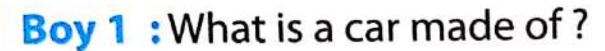
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the same	نفس الشىء	about two kilometres away	على بعد ٢ كيلومتر
on the roof	على السطح / السقف	work in	يعمل فى
made of	مصنوع من	(be) sure of	متأكد من
get ... from	يحصل على ... من	I'm not sure	لست متأكد
the main idea	الفكرة الأساسية	with red doors	بأبواب ذات لون أحمر
at night	ليلاً		



II Reading and Listening

Listening Lesson 1 WB page 93



Boy 1 : What is a car made of ?

Boy 2 : That's a difficult question! It's made of a lot of things. For example, a car door[1] is made of metal[2] and the windows are made of glass.

Boy 1 : What are the seats[3] made of, where you sit ?

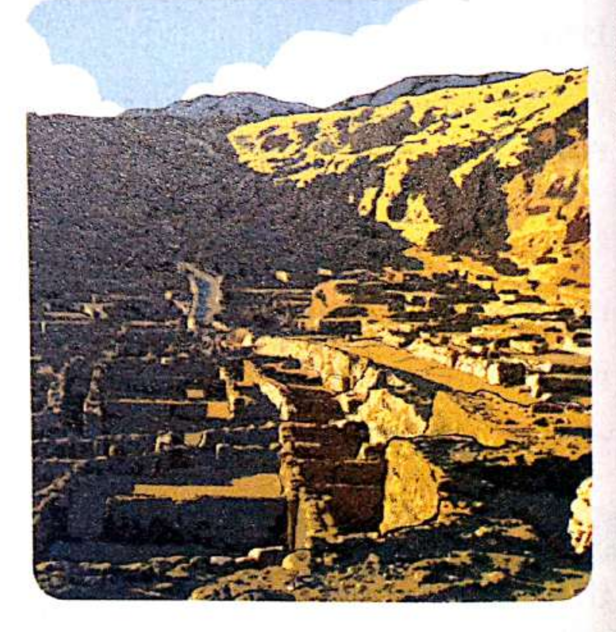
Boy 2 : I think expensive car seats are made of leather[4]. My father's car is not expensive. The seats are made of plastic[5].

Check Vocabulary

باب السيارة (1)	معدن (2)	مقاعد (3)	جلد (4)	بلاستيك (5)

Reading on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Deir el-Medina



In ancient Egypt[1], there was a village[2] called Deir el-Medina. The people from the village worked in the Valley of the Kings[3]. There were 68 houses.

The walls[4] of the houses were made of bricks[5] and the doors were made of wood[6]. The people painted[7] their houses white, with red doors.

The houses had a kitchen and a living room, but there weren't any bedrooms. People usually slept on the roof[8] because it was very hot at night.

There was usually an oven[9] for bread in the kitchen, but there weren't any taps[10]. People got their water from the Nile valley[11], about two kilometres away.

Check Vocabulary

مصر القديمة (1)	قرية (2)	وادى الملوك (3)	حوائط (4)	قوالب طوب (5)	خشب (6)
دهَن / لونً (7)	سقف/سطح (8)	فرن (9)	حنفيات (10)	وادى النيل (11)	

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 leather - skin

* leather — جلد (مدبوغ)
  ex.: - Shoes and bags are made of leather.
* skin — جلد (الجسم)
  ex.: - We can feel things with our skin.

2 glass – a glass – glasses

* glass — زجاج
  ex.: - Windows are made of glass.
* a glass — كوب
  ex.: - Can you bring me a glass of water, please ?
* glasses — أكواب - نظارة
  ex.: - He drank 3 glasses of water.
  - He is wearing his glasses.

3 wood – a wood

* wood — خشب
  ex.: - Doors are made of wood.
* a wood — غابة
  ex.: - There is a small wood near my house.

4

هناك كلمات فى اللغة الانجليزية جمع دائمًا وليس لها مفرد وتتكون من جزئين

socks – pants – trousers – glasses – scissors – scales

وتستخدم كلمة (a pair of) مع هذه الكلمات بمعنى زوج من لتشير أنها جزئين لا يمكن فصلهما عن بعض (أى أنها شىء واحد) ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - The socks are wet now.
- A pair of socks is blue.

5 roof – ceiling

* roof — سطح (المقصود السطح العلوى من المبنى)
  ex.: - In summer, some people sleep on the roof at night.
* ceiling — السقف (المقصود السطح الداخلى / سقف الغرفة)
  ex.: - There are two lamps and a fan in the ceiling.

6 tap – tape

* tap — صنبور (حنفية)

ex.: - Turn off the tap. We don't need any more water.

* tape — شريط لاصق

ex.: - We need paper, sticks and tape to make a kite.

7 (be) called — يسمى / يدعى

ex.: - It was called the Stone Age.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. SB The .... are made of cotton.
   a. televisions b. tables c. cushions d. lamps
2. SB The .... is made of stone.
   a. wall b. table c. lamp d. sofa
3. WB You can turn on the .... to get water.
   a. train b. tap c. top d. toy
4. WB The .... is on the top of a house.
   a. bedroom b. wall c. oven d. roof

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Most children's toys are made of ....
   a. leather b. paper c. plastic d. cotton
2. Most of our furniture is made of ....
   a. leather b. wool c. wood d. metal
3. SB The .... is made of glass.
   a. curtain b. cap c. television d. sofa
4. Teaspoons and some pots are made of ....
   a. wool b. plastic c. cotton d. metal

5. SB What's your .... made of ? – Leather.
   a. table b. wallet c. television d. statue
6. SB What is the .... idea of the article you read ?
   a. mean b. main c. mine d. man
7. The walls of the ancient houses were made of ....
   a. brakes b. bricks c. breaks d. bread
8. SB What .... did people of Deir el-Medina paint their houses ?
   a. subject b. colour c. age d. size
9. The Ancient Egyptians built .... for making bread in their kitchens.
   a. houses b. walls c. ovens d. roofs
10. People in Deir el-Medina slept .... the roof of their houses.
   a. at b. in c. on d. for
11. In winter, we put on .... clothes to keep us warm.
   a. wool b. plastic c. stone d. glass

III Language

(1) .... is/are made of ....

1 للحديث عن المادة الخام المصنوع منها شيء ما نستخدم



Illustrated examples

 is made of  .

 are made of  .

ex.
- The television is made of glass and plastic.
- Curtains are made of cotton.
- The wallet is made of leather.



2 للسؤال عما صنع منه الشيء نستخدم :

◀ للسؤال عن شيء مفرد (singular)

what is + اسم مفرد + made of ?

ex. - What is the sofa made of ?
- The sofa is made of leather.

◀ للسؤال عن شيء جمع (plural)

what are + اسم جمع + made of ?

ex. - What are the statues made of ?
- The statues are made of stone.

(2) There was / There were كان يوجد

Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء التى تعد والتى لا تعد

Countable nouns

الأسماء التى تعد (لها جمع)

an apple	تفاحة	apples
a potato	ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes
a man	رجل	men
an ox	ثور	oxen
a loaf	رغيف خبز	loaves
a child	طفل	children
a lentil	حبة عدس	lentils

Uncountable nouns

الأسماء التى لا تعد (ليس لها جمع)
وتعامل معاملة المفرد أى يأتى بعدها فعل
فى صيغة المفرد

time	وقت	water	ماء
furniture	أثاث	money	نقود
salt	ملح	sugar	سكر
advice	نصيحة	news	اخبار
gold	ذهب	information	معلومات
bread	خبز	molokhia	ملوخية
koshari	كشرى	lamb	لحم الحمل

ex. - Dates are delicious. (تعد)
- Meat is my favourite food. (لا تعد)

◀ لاحظ ان :

There is / isn't .... يوجد / لا يوجد (للمفرد / للاسماء التى لا تعد)
There are / aren't .... يوجد / لا يوجد (للجمع)

1 Affirmative فى صيغة الإثبات



There was + اسم مفرد

There was + اسم مفرد يعد / اسم لا يعد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتى بعدها اسم مفرد يعد أو اسم لا يعد

ex. - There was rice in the kitchen.

- There was a sofa in the living room.

There were + اسم جمع يعد

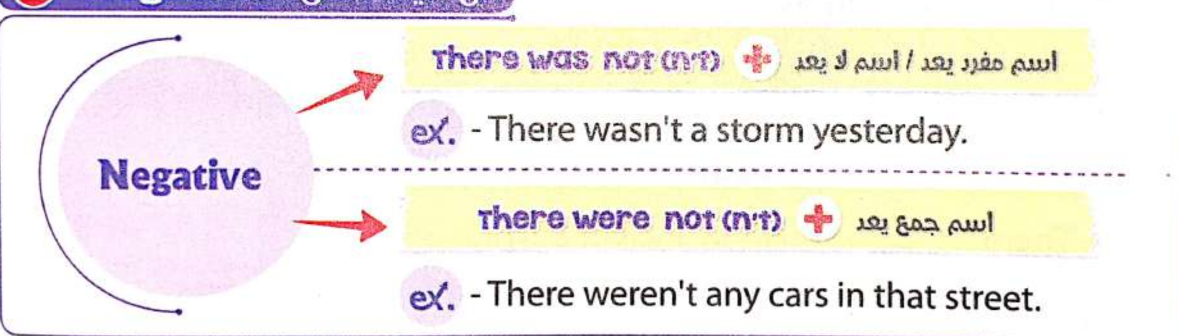
There were + اسم جمع يعد

تستخدم بمعنى (كان يوجد) ويأتى بعدها اسم جمع يعد

ex. - There were boats.

- There were taps.

2 Negative فى صيغة النفى



Negative

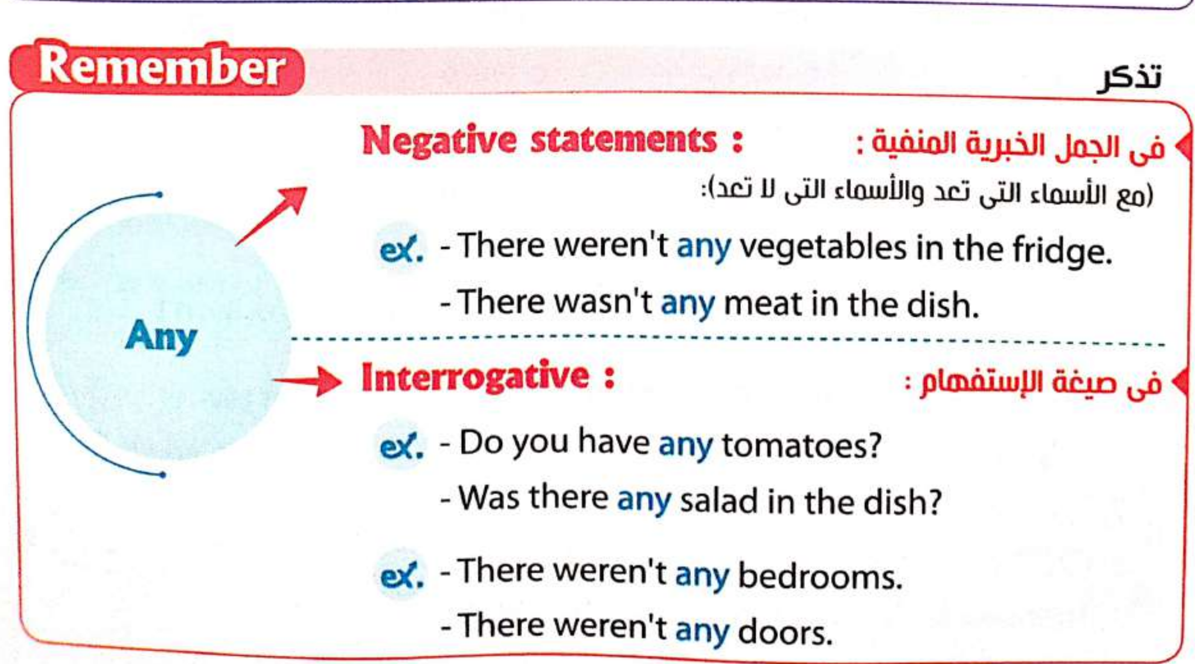
There was not (n't) + اسم مفرد يعد / اسم لا يعد

ex. - There wasn't a storm yesterday.

There were not (n't) + اسم جمع يعد

ex. - There weren't any cars in that street.

Remember تذكر



Any

Negative statements : فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

(مع الأسماء التى تعد والأسماء التى لا تعد):

ex. - There weren't any vegetables in the fridge.

- There wasn't any meat in the dish.

Interrogative : فى صيغة الإستفهام :

ex. - Do you have any tomatoes?

- Was there any salad in the dish?

ex. - There weren't any bedrooms.

- There weren't any doors.



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB What .... the things in the photos made of ?
   a. am b. is c. are d. was
2. SB The sofa .... made of leather.
   a. are b. were c. is d. am
3. SB The curtains are .... of wool.
   a. making b. makes c. make d. made
4. What .... your pencil case made of ?
   a. 's b. 're c. 've d. 'd
5. I'm not sure, I think .... made of cotton.
   a. it b. its c. is it d. it's
6. There .... any cars in ancient Egypt.
   a. weren't b. wasn't c. are d. isn't
7. There .... boats in ancient Egypt.
   a. haven't b. hadn't c. were d. was
8. In ancient Egypt, there .... a village called Deir el-Medina.
   a. is b. was c. were d. are
9. The walls of the houses were .... of bricks.
   a. make b. makes c. made d. making
10. WB There were trains in 1900. There .... any TVs.
    a. wasn't b. weren't c. haven't d. aren't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB When <u>were</u> the Stone Age ? (..............................)
2. The sofa <u>are</u> made of leather. (..............................)
3. WB What <u>is</u> the car seats made of ? (..............................)
4. There weren't <u>some</u> taps in ancient Egypt. (..............................)

IV Speaking Corner

Asking and answering about what things are made of :

توجيه أسئلة وإجابتها عن مما تصنع الأشياء :



Questions	Response
• What's your pencil case made of ? مما تصنع مقلمتك ؟	- It's made of plastic. تصنع من البلاستيك.
• What's your bag made of ? مما تصنع حقيبتك ؟	- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton. أنا غير متأكد. أعتقد أنها تصنع من القطن.
• What are the cushions made of ? مما تصنع الوسادات ؟	- They are made of cotton. تصنع من القطن.



Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

1. Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt.

١. كانت دير المدينة قرية فى مصر القديمة.

2. The people from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings.

٢. كان يعمل الناس من هذه القرية فى وادى الملوك.

3. There were 68 houses.

٣. كان يوجد بها ٦٨ منزلًا.

4. The walls of the houses were made of bricks.

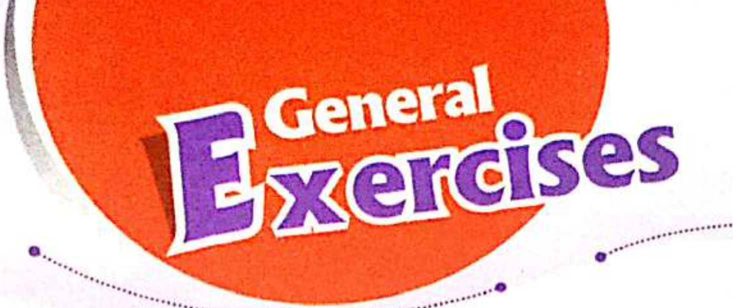
٤. كانت حوائط البيوت مصنوعة من الطوب.

5. The houses had no bedrooms.

٥. كانت لا توجد غرف للنوم فى تلك المنازل.

6. They painted their houses white with red doors.

٦. كانت المنازل مطلية باللون الأبيض مع أبواب ذات لون أحمر.



On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1. A car door is made of ....
   a. metal   b. plastic   c. glass   d. gold
2. Car .... are made of glass.
   a. doors   b. seats   c. windows   d. tires
3. Some car seats are made of ....
   a. plastic   b. metal   c. glass   d. wood
4. Expensive car .... are made of leather.
   a. seats   b. windows   c. doors   d. wool

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I bought many .... for my new flat.
   a. plans   b. objects   c. subjects   d. expressions
2. Many chairs are made of ....
   a. wool   b. wood   c. glass   d. stones
3. What do you know about the Stone .... ?
   a. Page   b. Year   c. Ago   d. Age
4. .... are made of cotton.
   a. Cushions   b. Tables   c. Lamps   d. Statues
5. In ancient Egypt, there was a / an .... called Deir el-Madina.
   a. country   b. village   c. street   d. city
6. We have a/an .... to cook food in.
   a. oven   b. seat   c. air conditioner   d. knife
7. Turn on the .... to get water .
   a. trip   b. tip   c. tap   d. tape

8. SB In ancient Egypt, there .... boats.

a. are   b. is   c. were   d. was

9. Were there .... kitchens in the past ?

a. some   b. so   c. any   d. a

10. SB The sofa is made .... leather.

a. from   b. to   c. of   d. by

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB Lamps are made <u>by</u> glass. (....................................)
2. WB I don't know what <u>it</u> made of. (....................................)
3. There wasn't <u>no</u> rain. (....................................)
4. There <u>were</u> any men in the hall. (....................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Deir el-Medina"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

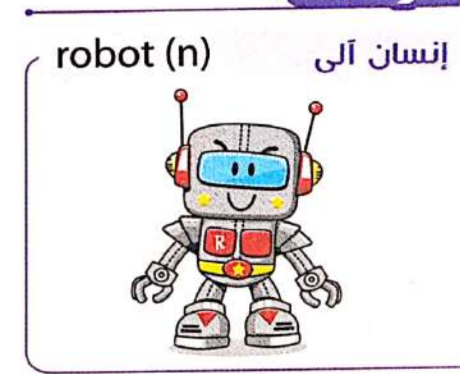


SB pages 38 : 40 WB pages 95 & 96

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

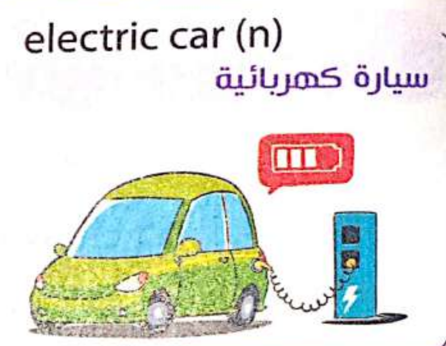
robot (n) إنسان آلى



solar panels (n) الألواح الشمسية



electric car (n) سيارة كهربائية



wind turbines (n) توربينات الرياح (محركات تعمل بقوة الرياح)



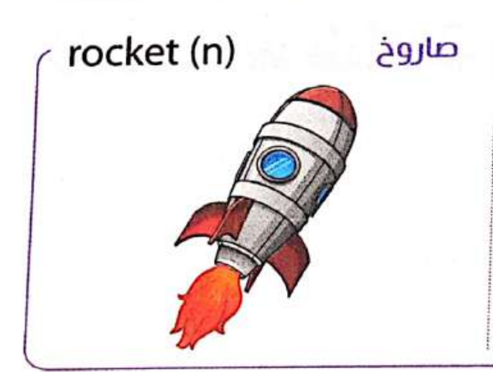
architect (n) مهندس معمارى



swimming pool (n) حمام سباحة



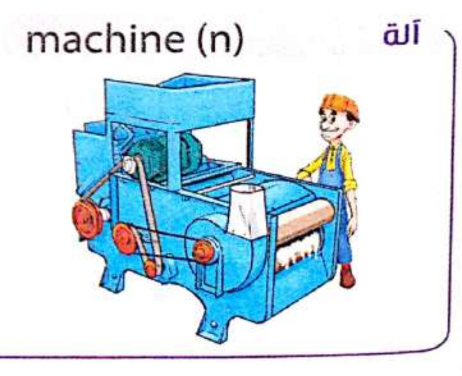
rocket (n) صاروخ



Earth (n) كوكب الارض



machine (n) آلة



igloo (n) منزل من الجليد



moon (n) قمر



earthquake (n) زلزال - هزة أرضية



Key Vocabulary

electricity (n)	كهرباء	warm (adj)	دافئ
drone (n)	طائرة بدون طيار	space (n)	فراغ / مساحة
3D printer (n)	طابعة ثلاثية الأبعاد	cool (adj)	لطيف (الجو)
safer (adj)	أكثر أمانا	material (n)	مادة خام
accident (n)	حادث	driverless car (n)	سيارة بدون سائق

Lesson 3

SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

sign (n)	علامة - إشارة	parcels (n)	طرود بريدية
petrol (n)	بنزين	predictions (n)	تنبؤات
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	evidence (n)	برهان / دليل
change (ed) (v) (n)	يغير - تغيير	ordinary (adj)	عادى
robot teacher (n)	المعلم الآلى	fantastic (adj)	رائع
podcast (n)	نشرة صوتية / برنامج إذاعى	culture (n)	ثقافة
guest (n)	زائر / ضيف	charger (n)	شاحن (كهربى)

Lesson 4

SB page 40 WB page 96

area (n)	مساحة / منطقة	Mongolia (n)	جمهورية منغوليا
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	Burkina Faso (n)	دولة بوركينا فاسو
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	Canada (n)	دولة كندا
ground (n)	أرضية / أرض	round building	مبنى مستدير الشكل
traditional (adj)	تقليدى	square building	مبنى مربع الشكل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	finally (adj)	فى النهاية
quieter (adj)	أكثر هدوءًا	cheaper (adj)	أرخص
yurt (n)	خيمة دائرية الشكل	project (n)	مشروع

Shapes أشكال

square	مربع	rectangle	مستطيل
circle	دائرة	triangle	مثلث

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
drive يقود	drove	driven

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
positive	إيجابى	negative	سلبى
agree	يوافق	disagree	يرفض

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

cool	a nice temperature that is cold, but not too cold	بارد
drone	a small flying object that you can control from the ground	طائرة تعمل بالتحكم من على الأرض (بدون طيار)
earthquake	a natural event when the ground suddenly moves	زلزال / هزة أرضية
electricity	electric power	كهرباء
yurt	a large tent that people can live in	خيمة دائرية الشكل
warm	a nice temperature that is hot but not too hot	دافئ
igloo	a house made of ice and snow	مبنى من الثلج
wind turbine	a machine that uses the wind to make electricity	توربين الرياح
solar panel	a flat glass object that uses the sun to make electricity	لوح شمسى
driverless car	a car that can drive itself, without a driver	سيارة بدون سائق
space	an area that you can move around it	فراغ / مساحة
rocket	an object that can travel to space	صاروخ

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

design buildings	يصمم مبانى	heavy snow	ثلج كثيف
a sign for electricity	إشارة للكهرباء	keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء
		keep cool	يحتفظ بالبرودة
make predictions	يقوم بعمل تنبؤات	fewer materials	مواد أقل
under the sea	تحت البحر	How fantastic !	كم هو شئ رائع !
on the moon	على سطح القمر	homes of the future	منازل المستقبل
listen carefully	يستمع بحرص / بعناية	get electricity	يولد / يحصل على كهرباء
your own ideas	أفكارك الخاصة	make electricity	يولد كهرباء
in the past	فى الماضى / فى قديم الزمان	do the housework	يقوم بأعمال المنزل
fall from the roof	يسقط من السطح	look like	يشبه
In what ways ... ?	إلى أى مدى ؟	use land telephone	يستخدم تليفون أرضى
work on a project	يعمل على إنجاز مشروع	look out	يحترس
fall to the ground	يسقط على الأرض		

II Reading and Listening

Listening on Lesson 3 SB page 38

presenter : Hello, welcome to our podcast[1] : Homes of the Future. Today we have a special guest[2] – Dina Hassan. She is a famous architect[3]. Hello Dina.

Dina : Hello.

Interviewer : What does an architect do ?

Dina : Well, I design buildings[4] such as houses or schools. I think about what materials[5] to use and I draw pictures of it.

Interviewer : What are you designing at the moment ?

Dina : I'm working on a project[6] for houses for the future. They'll be a bit different to our houses today.

Interviewer : In what ways will they be different ?

Dina : Well, I think we'll need more gardens in the future, but there won't be much space[7]. So the garden will be on the roof.

Interviewer : A garden on the roof, great !

Dina : And I think people will all use electric cars[8] in the future, so there'll be chargers[9] for electric car next to the house.

Interviewer : How will people get their electricity ?

Check Vocabulary

		مهندس معمارى مشهور (3)	يصمم مبانى (4)
نشرة صوتية (1)	ضيف مميز (2)		
		فراغ / مساحة (7) | سيارات كهربية (8)	شواحن (9)
مواد خام (5)	مشروع (6)		

Dina : There'll be lots of solar panels(10) and a wind turbine(11). They'll make the electricity.

Interviewer : Great. What else will be different in 2050 ?

Dina : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.

Interviewer : Fantastic! Will people use drones(12) ?

Dina : Yes, I think drones will bring food and parcels(13) to the house.

Interviewer : What materials will the house be made of ?

Dina : We will use plastic bricks(14) that are very strong. We'll also use a lot of glass and metal. Look, here's a picture of what it will look like.

Interviewer : Oh it's beautiful. Thank you very much Dina for talking to us. I think I'll like living in this house !

Check Vocabulary

الواح شمسية (10)	توربين الرياح (11)	طائرات بدون طيار (12)	طرود بريدية (13)	قوالب طوب بلاستيكية (14)

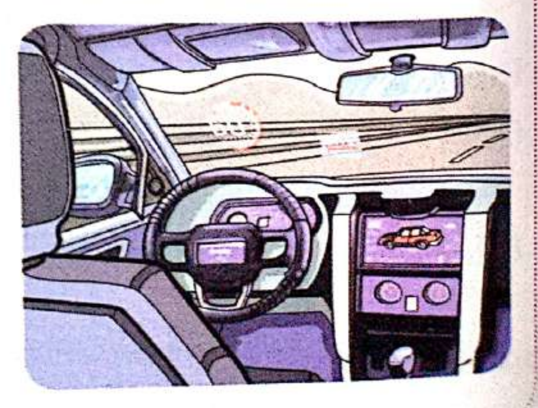


on Lesson 3 SB page 39



Holidays on the moon

In 2080, you won't go to the beach for your holiday(1). You will go to the moon! There will be rockets(2) that leave Earth(3) every day, and the journey(4) will take only 12 hours. They will be very fast!



Driverless cars

In 2080, people won't drive a car. We will all have a driverless car(5). They will be safer(6) and there won't be any accidents(7). Students will read a book or watch TV when a computer on the car drives them to school!

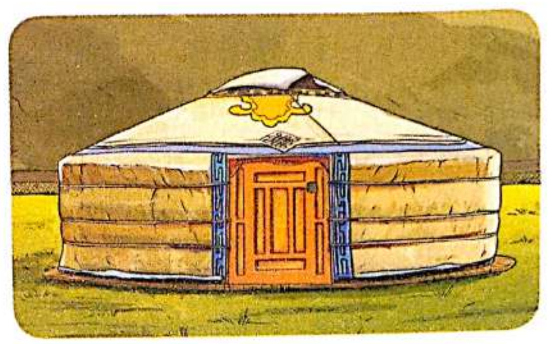
Check Vocabulary

أجازة (1)	صواريخ (2)	الأرض (3)	رحلة طويلة (4)	سيارة بلا سائق (5)	أكثر أمانًا (6)	حوادث (7)

on Lesson 4 SB page 40



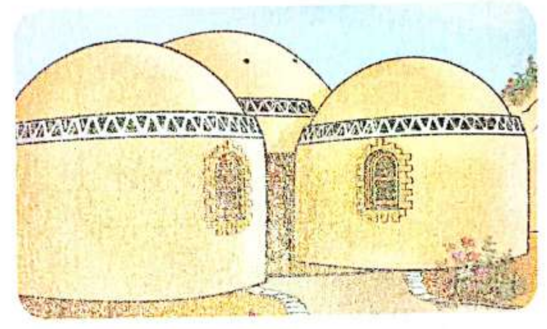
An igloo[1] in Canada



A yurt[2] in Mongolia



A round house in Burkina Faso



A (round) house in Siwa

Round houses around the world

Many **traditional**[3] houses in the past were round. Today, many modern[4] houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons![5]

A round shape[6] means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake[7] or in strong winds[8]. Also, heavy snow[9] or rain[10] will fall from the roof. A round house is also easier to keep warm[11] or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle[12] or square[13]

Finally, a round building uses fewer materials (so it is cheaper to make[14]). It also has more space inside. How fantastic!

Check Vocabulary

منزل من الجليد (1)	خيم دائرية الشكل تستخدم كمنزل متنقل (2)		تقليدى (3)	حديث (4)
أسباب / مبررات (5)	شكل دائرى (6)	زلزال (7)	رياح شديدة (8)	جليد (9)
مطر (10)	يبقى دافئًا (11)	مستطيل الشكل (12)	مربع الشكل (13)	ارخص فى البناء (14)

General Notes on Reading and listening

1 electricity – electric

* electricity (n) كهرباء
  ex.: - The High Dam produces electricity.
* electric (adj) كهربى
  ex.: - People will all use electric cars.

2 sign – signal

* sign لافته - لوحة إشارة
  ex.: - This sign means you mustn't smoke here.
* signal إشارة (ضوئية - صوتية)
  ex.: - He gave me a signal to start driving.

3 solar – lunar

* solar (adj) شمسى
  ex.: - People will use solar energy in the future.
* lunar (adj) قمرى
  ex.: - The lunar year is different from the year on the earth.

4

لاحظ استخدام المقطع (less–) فى نهاية بعض الكلمات لتعنى «بدون» أو النفى

- a driverless car = a car without a driver.
- a homeless child = a child who has no house.
- a useless plan = a plan with no use.

5 afraid

* afraid of + (اسم) / (inf + ing) خائف من
  - Basem is afraid of snakes.
  - Ashraf is afraid of flying.
* afraid to + inf. + ... خائف أن

SB Don't be afraid to express your own ideas.

* afraid = sorry أسف

- A : Can I speak to Sara, please ?
  B : I'm afraid, she is out.

6 round / around

* round (adj) دائرى

SB Many traditional houses in the past were round.

* around (adv) حول

We hear birds singing around us.

7 fall – feel – fail – fill

لاحظ تصريفات ومعانى هذه الافعال :

fall -	fell -	fallen	يسقط
feel -	felt -	felt	يشعر
fail -	failed -	failed	يرسب / يفشل
fill -	filled -	filled	يملأ

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. People won't use oil in the future, so they will drive .... cars.
   a. plastic b. electric c. toy d. gas
2. .... help us to produce electricity.
   a. Robots b. Solar panels
   c. Swimming pools d. Cameras
3. SB .... design new buildings.
   a. Teachers b. Doctors c. Carpenters d. Architects
4. Wood , iron and plastic are ....
   a. colours b. materials c. subjects d. plants
5. SB .... cars go without a driver.
   a. Helpless b. Driverless c. Homeless d. Colourless
6. WB Some houses fell to the ground after the ....
   a. space b. earthquake c. robot d. drone



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In the future, journeys to the moon will .... only 12 hours.
   a. make b. give c. take d. have
2. SB Driverless cars will be .... There won't be any accidents.
   a. more dangerous b. safer
   c. worse d. bigger
3. A computer will .... the cars instead of people in the future.
   a. cook b. drive c. play d. damage
4. I don't have my car today. Can you .... me to my work ?
   a. make b. drive c. help d. have
5. Students, in the future, won't need to go to schools. They will depend on robot ....
   a. painters b. cookers c. teachers d. doctors
6. A/An .... house is a round house in Canada. It's made of ice.
   a. rondavel b. yurt c. igloo d. tent
7. SB It's easy to .... warm or cool in round houses.
   a. get b. keep c. give d. take
8. SB "........................" is an area that you can move around in.
   a. Slice b. Spice c. Space d. Peace
9. SB A nice temperature that is hot but not too hot is called ....
   a. freezing b. cold c. boiling d. warm
10. SB A nice temperature that is cold but not too cold is called ....
    a. very hot b. freezing c. cool d. warm
11. WB This is a .... shape. It is a rectangle.
    a. round b. triangular c. rectangular d. circle
12. WB This is a round shape. It is a ....
    a. circle b. triangle c. round d. square



III Language

The future with "will" : المستقبل باستخدام (will)

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject (الفاعل) + will + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل)

ex. He will go to the zoo.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject (الفاعل) + will not / won't + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل)

ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(a) Yes / No question : (أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

will + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) + ...?

ex. - Will you play football with me ?

- Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال بكلمة إستفهام :

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + will + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) (مصدر الفعل) + ...?

ex. - What will you eat for lunch ?



Usage الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence :

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث فى المستقبل (بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشئ) تأتى معها كلمات مثل :

I'm sure	expect	think	hope	probable	probably	perhaps
أنا متأكد	يتوقع	يعتقد	يتمنى	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

هنا فى هذه الجملة اتحدث عن رأيى فى الطقس ولكن ليس معى دليل إذا ما كان الطقس سيكون لطيفًا أم لا.

ex.: I think the weather will be nice later.

كما يمكن ان تستخدم فى الحالات الاتية

(1) Quick decision : (١) عند إتخاذ قرار سريع (لحظة الكلام) :

ex.: - I'm hungry. I'll have a sandwich.

- The phone is ringing, I'll answer it.

(2) Request : (٢) عند طلب شئ من شخص :

ex.: Will you shut the door, please ?

(3) Offer : (٣) عند عرض أو تقديم شئ :

ex.: I will help you with your homework.

(4) Facts in the future : (٤) عند ذكر حقيقة فى المستقبل :

ex.: Next year, I will be 17 years old.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB The garden .... be on the roof.
   a. have b. has c. will d. had
2. SB People won't all .... electric cars.
   a. used b. uses c. using d. use
3. SB There will .... lots of solar panels.
   a. being b. been c. be d. to be

4. SB How does Dina think people will .... their electricity ?
   a. got b. get c. gets d. getting
5. SB Will she .... a garden on the roof ?
   a. has b. had c. having d. have
6. SB In 2080, you .... go to the beach for your holiday.
   a. won't b. won't be c. won't have d. will have
7. SB We will all .... a driverless car.
   a. used b. using c. uses d. use
8. SB What will the houses .... like ?
   a. looks b. look c. looked d. looking
9. WB I think we .... more robots in our schools.
   a. are having b. will have c. are going to have d. have
10. I think that drones .... bring our food and parcels in 2080.
   a. will b. are going to c. going to d. will go

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB There will been a swimming pool. (..................................)
2. SB What materials will the house being made of ? (..................................)
3. SB We won't goes to the moon. (..................................)
4. SB The journey will took only 12 hours. (..................................)

IV Speaking corner

1 Predicting the future : التنبؤ بالمستقبل

subj. + will / won't + inf.

ex.: - There will be electric cars in the future.
- There won't be ordinary mobiles.



2 Expressing ideas and opinions

التعبير عن الأفكار والآراء :

1. I think ما أعتقده .
2. I agree أوافق with you.
3. I don't agree لا أوافق with you.
4. I'm not sure. غير متأكد
5. I'm صفة to express my own ideas.
6. I would like to ما أفضله .

ex.: 1- A : I think we will all use driverless cars.
B : I disagree. I think we will use electric cars.

2- A : I think there will be robot teachers.
B : I'm not sure.

V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Round houses»

1. Many countries have round houses. ١. كثير من الدول لديها منازل مستديرة.

2. Round houses are strong. ٢. المنازل المستديرة قوية.

3. Round houses are easier to keep warm or cool.
٣. المنازل المستديرة أسهل فى الحفاظ بالدفء أو البرودة.

4. They are cheap and use few materials. ٤. هم أرخص ويستخدمون مواد خام أقل.

5. I'd like to live in a round house. ٥. أريد أن أعيش فى منزل مستدير.



On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The text is about things will happen ....
   a. in the past   b. now   c. in the future   d. today
2. .... will do the housework.
   a. Rabbits   b. Bricks   c. Robots   d. Ropes
3. We will build houses using .... bricks.
   a. glass   b. plastic   c. wood   d. iron
4. .... are cheap.
   a. Robots   b. Plastic bricks   c. Houses   d. Computers

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What's your job ?

B : I'm an (1) ....

A : (2) .... does an architect do ?

B : An architect designs new buildings.

A : What are you (3) .... at the moment ?

B : A project about houses in the future.

A : How about the (4) .... ?

B : The gardens will be on the roof.

A : (5) .... ?

B : Because there won't be much space.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Wind turbines will make ....
   a. electricity   b. industry   c. sound   d. clouds
2. Solar panels get their energy from the ....
   a. moon   b. sun   c. planet   d. earth



3. .... cars have no drivers.
   a. Old b. Electric c. Driverless d. Fashionable
4. .... can leave the Earth to the moon.
   a. Rackets b. Guns c. Planes d. Rockets
5. When there's a/an ...., we feel the ground moves.
   a. volcano b. earthquake c. wind d. storm
6. The opposite of the word "cool" is ....
   a. warm b. worm c. hot d. rainy
7. SB I think we will live on the moon; it is my ....
   a. land b. dream c. drone d. robot
8. I think there .... robot teachers in the future.
   a. be b. are c. will be d. will
9. SB Will there .... ordinary mobiles in the future ?
   a. is b. are c. be d. were
10. I think we will .... electric cars.
   a. use b. to use c. using d. be used

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Will we to have driverless cars ? (....................)
2. I think there aren't be driverless cars in the future. (....................)
3. Hatem won't goes to the museum. (....................)
4. SB Will there were ordinary mobiles in the future ? (....................)

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Round houses"

....

....

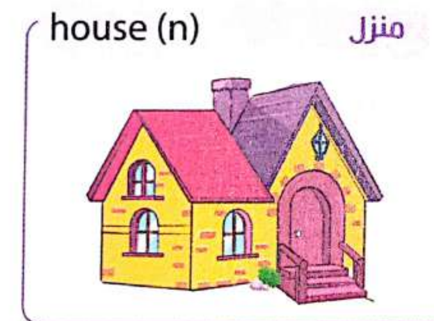
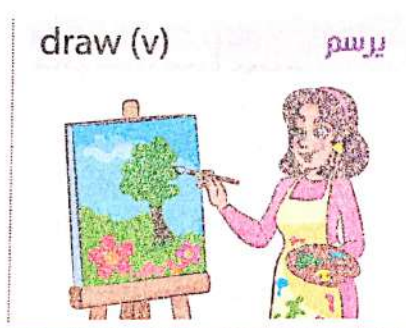
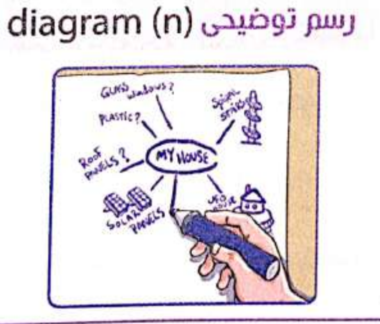
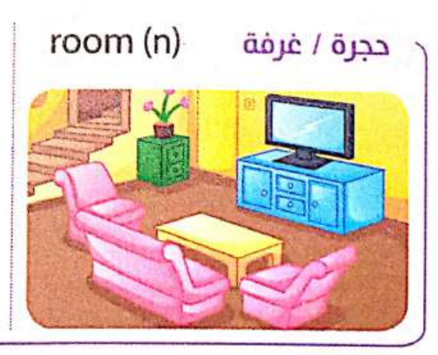
....

....



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

ride a bike يركب عجلة	school (n) مدرسة	The Red Sea البحر الأحمر
		
house (n) منزل	draw (v) يرسم	write down (v) يدون
		
make a plan يضع خطة	diagram (n) رسم توضيحى	room (n) حجرة / غرفة
		
technology (n) تكنولوجيا	calender (n) تقويم	footballer (n) لاعب كرة قدم
		



Key Vocabulary

amazing (adj)	مدهش	timeline (n)	جدول زمنى / تسلسل زمنى
Mount Kiliminjaro	جبل كليمنجارو	divide (d) (v)	يُقسم

Lesson 5

SB page 41 WB page 97

learn (ed) (v)	يتعلم	Switzerland (n)	سويسرا
events (n)	احداث	African (adj)	افريقى
European (adj)	اوروبى	Champions League (n)	دورى الأبطال
discuss (ed) (v)	يناقش		

Lesson 6

SB page 42 WB page 98

creative (adj)	مبتكر / ابداعى	heading (n)	عنوان / رأس السؤال
task (n)	مهمة	imagination (n)	خيال / تخيل
detail (n)	تفصيل	decide (d) (v)	يقرر / يحدد
size (n)	حجم	shape (n)	شكل
first	أولًا	text (n)	نص
then	ثم	introductory (n)	فقرة تمهيدية
now	الآن	topic sentence (n)	جملة رئيسية
explain (ed) (v)	يفسر / يشرح	description (n)	وصف
change (d) (v), (n)	يغير / تغيير	compare (d) (v)	يقارن

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
think	يفكر	thought	thought
keep	يحافظ / يحتفظ	kept	kept
bear	يلد	bore	born

learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Opposite	العكس
win	يفوز / يكسب	lose	يخسر
start	يبدأ	finish	ينهى
ancient	قديم	modern	حديث / عصرى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

imagination	using the mind to think creatively	خيال
round	with a shape like a circle	دائرى
yurt	a large tent that people live in	خيمة دائرية

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have fun	يستمتع	think about / of	يفكر فى
live in	يعيش فى	different to	مختلف عن
as many as you can	بقدر ما تستطيع	change any ideas that don't work	قم بتغيير أى افكار لا تؤدى الغرض
in more detail	بتفصيل أكثر		
play for	يلعب (لصالح فريق)	move house	انتقل لمنزل آخر
European Champions League	دورى أبطال أوروبا	African footballer of the year in 2017	احسن لاعب افريقى لعام ٢٠١٧
draw a plan	يرسم خطة	start school	يبدأ دراسة
I hope so anyway	أمل ذلك على أى حال	compare with	يقارن بـ



II Reading and Listening

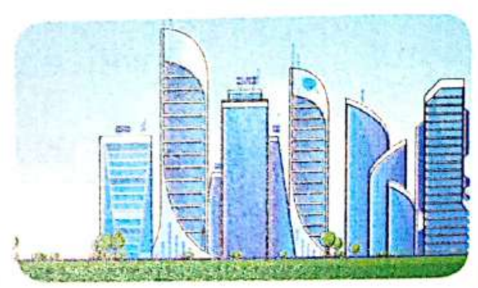
Reading on Lesson 6 WB page 98



1. No more journeys by plane
   Today, I am going to describe what I think holidays will be like in the future.



2. The schools of tomorrow
   I want to explain how I planned the school building you can see above.



3. Taller, cleaner, better
   Today's cities are usually big, noisy and dirty, but what will they be like in the future ?

Listening on Lesson 5 WB page 97

Voice : Mohamed Salah was born in Cairo in 1992. He started playing football for El Mokawloon in 2010. He then moved to Switzerland[1] to play for[2] Basel in 2012.
In 2014, he went to London to play for Chelsea. Three years later, in 2017, he went to play for Liverpool. Mohamed Salah was also African Footballer of the Year[3] in 2017 and in 2019, he won[4] the European Champions League[5] with Liverpool.



Check Vocabulary

(1) سويسرا | (2) يلعب لـ | (3) احسن لاعب كرة قدم فى أفريقيا | (4) فاز | (5) دورى أبطال أوروبا



Listening on Lesson 5 SB page 41

A **Voice 1 : twenty fifty.**

Voice 2 : twenty twenty.

Voice 3 : twenty thirty-five.

Voice 4 : nineteen ninety-nine.

B **Voice** : ten sixty-six / two thousand / nineteen twenty-three / two thousand and eight / three thousand and one / twenty seventy-five

C **Basel's timeline[1].**

Basel : Hi, I'm Basel. These are the important events[2] in my life.
I was born in 2007 in Alexandria.
I started school in 2012.
I liked my school!
I learned to ride a bike in 2013. I love my bike !
In 2018, we moved house[3]. We live in Cairo now.
In 2019, we went on holiday[4] to the Red Sea. It was amazing ![5]
In 2023! I will climb Mount Kilimanjaro[6] - I hope so anyway ![7]

Check Vocabulary

خط زمنى/تسلسل زمنى (1)	احداث هامة (2)	انتقل لمنزل جديد (3)	ذهبنا فى اجازة (4)
مدهش (5)	جبل كليمنجارو (6)	على أى حال / بأى طريقة (7)	

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 learn + (how) to + inf. ..... يتعلم أن .....

ex.: I learned (how) to ride a bike when I was young.

2 on holiday فى إجازة

ex.: Walaa went on holiday last Tuesday.

3 (be) born in ... (مكان / سنة) ولد فى

ex.: Jana was born in 2008.

4 look like / look alike

* **look like** يُشبه

ex.: Toka looks like her mother.

* **look alike** متشابه

ex.: Toka and her mother look alike.

5 in detail بالتفصيل

ex.: Tell me everything about you in detail.

6 other - another آخرون - آخر

* **other + اسم مفرد / اسم جمع**

ex.: - Are there any other questions ?

- There are two cars. One is red. The other car is black

* **another + اسم مفرد** آخر (الثانى من نفس النوع)

ex.: I'll design another plan.

7 move house = move to a new house ينتقل إلي منزل جديد

ex.: Last year I moved house / moved to a new house in Giza.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All the ideas he suggested were ....
   a. creative b. creature c. alive d. living
2. His new song was .... We all liked it.
   a. amazed b. amazing c. worrying d. terrible
3. Modern .... improved our life a lot.
   a. sizes b. champions c. technology d. texts

4. Write the important events in your life in a ....
a. time b. timeline c. map d. corner



Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. In 2012, Mr Ahmed .... to a new house.
a. look b. moved c. born d. lived

2. What will your future house .... like ?
a. put b. take c. look d. make

3. You should write .... the important notes during English class.
a. up b. on c. down d. over

4. You should think about your new ideas in .... to choose the best.
a. total b. detail c. careful d. problem

5. Good students .... plans for their ideas before studying.
a. take b. make c. do d. think

6. The teacher asked me to compare my answers .... my friend and choose the best.
a. of b. with c. from d. to

7. Can you .... three predictions about your house in the future ?
a. give b. take c. do d. make

III Speaking corner

Saying years : كيفية نطق السنوات :

a We usually divide the years into two parts : عادة ما نقسم السنوات لجزئين
2050 = twenty fifty
1977 = nineteen seventy seven

b For the year 2000, we say : أما بالنسبة لعام ٢٠٠٠ نقول :
2000 = two thousand

c For the years 2001 : 2009 we say : : أما بالنسبة للأعوام من ٢٠٠١ حتى ٢٠٠٩ نقول
two thousand + number رقم
2001 = two thousand and one / 2006 = two thousand and six



IV Writing

Stop here!

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

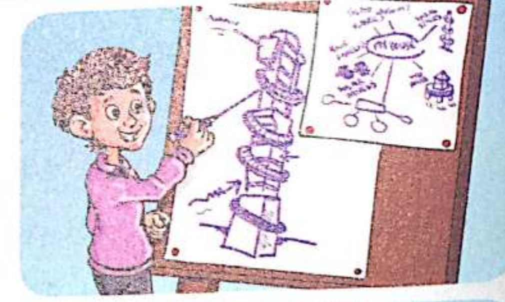
Timeline

1. I was born in nineteen nighty five.
١. ولدت فى عام ١٩٩٥.
2. I started school in two thousand and one.
٢. بدأت الدراسة فى عام ٢٠٠١.
3. I learnt to ride a bike in 2010.
٣. تعلمت ركوب الدراجة عام ٢٠١٠.
4. I moved to a new house in twenty seventeen.
٤. انتقلت إلى منزل جديد عام ٢٠١٧.
5. I went to the Red Sea on holiday in 2018.
٥. ذهبت فى أجازة إلى البحر الأحمر فى عام ٢٠١٨.

Writing Skills on SB page 42

How to plan(1) a creative(2) writing task.

First, think of as many ideas(3) as you can. What will the house look like(4) ? What will it be made of ? What will be different to houses of today ? You can write down(5) or draw your ideas.

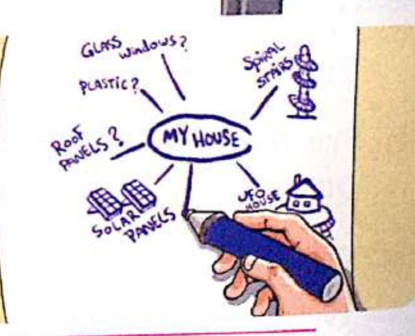


Use your imagination(6) and have fun !(7)
Then, decide(8) which of your ideas are the best. Keep the other ideas for another time.



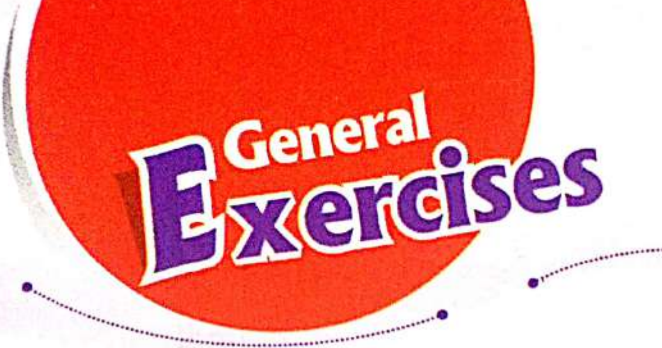
Finally think about your best ideas in more detail(9). How can you make the idea work ?

Make a plan(10) (maybe in a diagram(11) or drawing). You can change(12) any ideas that don't work(13).



Check Vocabulary

خطة (1)	إبداعى (2)	أفكار (3)	يشبه (4)	يدَون (5)	خيال (6)	استمتع (7)
اتخذ قرار (8)	بتفاصيل أكثر (9)	ضع خطة (10)	رسم توضيحى (11)	يغير (12)	غير فاعلة / لا تؤدى الغرض (13)	



On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. In .... , we moved house.
   a. 2013 b. 2018 c. 2012 d. 1990
2. We went on holiday to ....
   a. the River Nile b. the Red Sea c. Cairo d. Alexandria
3. Now, we live in ....
   a. Cairo b. the Red Sea c. Aswan d. Luxor
4. I learned to .... a bike in 2013.
   a. drive b. buy c. ride d. give

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I was born .... 2008.
   a. in b. on c. at d. by
2. What technology .... in the future ?
   a. did you have b. do you have c. will you have d. you have
3. In 2030, there .... many good teachers at my school.
   a. are b. were c. will be d. would be
4. When you paint a picture, you should use your ....
   a. introductory b. imagination c. event d. start
5. Remember to be .... when you describe your house in the future.
   a. active b. creative c. voluntary d. related
6. WB Mohamed Salah won the European Champions .... with Liverpool in 2019.
   a. Timeline b. League c. Diagram d. Plan
7. WB Mohamed Salah was .... footballer of the year in 2017.
   a. Africa b. African c. European d. Switzerland



8. WB Enjoy your time and have ....

a. fun b. fan c. fine d. final

9. SB Make a .... of what you are going to do.

a. plan b. plane c. plain d. pain

10. When you .... something, you have an idea in your mind.

a. finish b. start c. imagine d. fail

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Which house will you live on ? (....................)
2. WB We will had modern technology in the future. (....................)
3. SB She was born on 2010. (....................)
4. Write on your own ideas. (....................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Planning your future home"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Review on Unit 10

SB page 43 WB page 99

1. Vocabulary

sofa	كنبة	curtains	ستائر
materials	مواد خام	cushion	وسادة (مخدة)
teaspoon	ملعقة شاى صغيرة	wallet	محفظة (نقود)
leather	جلد	wool	صوف
stone	حجر	bricks	قوالب طوب
possessions	ممتلكات	taps	حنفيات/صنابير
oven	فرن	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
solar panels	الواح شمسية	drones	طائرات بدون طيار
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح	charger	شاحن
earthquake	زلزال	diagram	رسم توضيحى
traditional	تقليدى	champions	أبطال
footballer	لاعب كرة قدم	introductory	مقدمة تمهيدية
events	احداث	creative	مبتكر / ابداعى
description	وصف	roof	مسطح

2. Language

Future with "will"

تستخدم (will) لاعطاء معلومات مستقبلية.

- I think it will be hot tomorrow.
- The party will start at two o'clock.

تستخدم (will) عندما تقرر فعل شئ وقت الكلام أو أثناء التحدث.

- I think I'll go to bed now.

تستخدم (will) مع الحقائق المستقبلية (لا نية فيها).

- Next year, I'll be 12.



There was / were + a/an , some , any

Positive (+)

There	was	**a** table. **some** water.
	were	**two** books. **some** books.

Negative (–)

There	wasn't	**a** table. **any** water.
	weren't	**any** books. **any** books.

3. Speaking

(1) Saying what things are made of

- What's your pencil case made of ?

- It's made of plastic.

(2) Predicting the future :

A : I think we will all use driverless cars in 2050.

B : I disagree. I think we'll all use electric cars.

(3) Saying years :

2030 : twenty thirty.

2000 : two thousand.

1986 : nineteen eighty-six

4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph

"Deir el-Medina in ancient Egypt"

Deir el-Medina was a village in ancient Egypt. People from this village worked in the Valley of the Kings. They painted their houses white, with red doors. The walls of their houses were made of bricks and the doors of wood. Their houses had a kitchen and a living room. There was usually an oven for making bread. There weren't any bedrooms, so people usually slept on the roof at night because it was very hot . There weren't any taps, so people got their water from the Nile Valley.

5. Writing Skill



Study

* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :

* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
1. My first school 2. A famous person 3. Life in the future 4. Life in ancient Egypt	- (فاعل) was born in (تاريخ / مكان). - (فاعل) started school in (تاريخ). - In my first school, there were / weren't (اسم جمع). - There was / wasn't (اسم مفرد). - (اسم شيء) was / were made of (مادة خام). - (اسم شيء) will be made of (مادة خام). - There will / won't be (اسم شيء). - People will / won't use (اسم شيء).



Try

* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- electric cars	There will be electric cars in the future.
- land telephones	....
- teachers	....
- solar panels	....
- houses	....

Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Life in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

Test on unit 10



تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Mohamed Salah was born in ....
   a. Cairo b. Zagazig c. Fayoum d. Alexandria
2. Salah played for .... in 2010.
   a. El Mokawloon b. Basel c. Liverpool d. Al Ahly
3. Salah started playing football in ....
   a. 2018 b. 1992 c. 2010 d. 2012
4. .... is in Switzerland.
   a. Basel b. Liverpool c. Manchester d. El Mkawloon

B. Language Function

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What's this picture about ?
B : About the (1) .... Egyptian.
A : (2) .... did they live ?
B : Ancient people lived about 5000 years ago.
A : Were there any cars then ?
B : No, there (3) ....
A : Then, how did they travel ?
B : (4) .... camels.
A : How did they get water ?
B : (5) .... the well.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Many traditional houses in the past were round. Today, many modern houses are also round. Why is this ? There are lots of reasons ! A round shape means the building is very strong. This is important when there is an earthquake or in strong winds. Also, heavy snow or rain will fall

from the **roof**. A round house is also easier to keep warm or cool. It is also quieter inside a round building than a building that is a rectangle or square. Finally, a round building uses fewer materials, so it is cheaper to make. **It** also has more space inside. How fantastic!

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. Do you think that traditional houses were comfortable ? Why / Why not ?

....

3. What happens to round buildings when there's heavy snow or rain ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The "**roof**" is the place .... of a building.
   a. at the bottom b. at the top c. inside d. in front
5. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to ....
   a. a round building b. space c. square d. rectangle
6. Round, square and rectangle are all .... for buildings.
   a. places b. shapes c. pieces d. spaces

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB The people .... their houses white, with red doors.
   a. played b. painted c. ate d. drove
2. Change the ideas that don't ....
   a. make b. work c. do d. take
3. People got their water form the Nile .... , about 2 km away.
   a. Island b. Valley c. Temple d. Kitchen
4. Mum used the .... to make bread.
   a. oven b. kitchen c. curtains d. cushions

5. The word "ancient" is the opposite of ....

a. old   b. traditional   c. modern   d. able

6. We can get electricity from solar ....

a. planes   b. panels   c. pens   d. poles

7. I enjoyed my journey. It was really ....

a. amazing   b. amazed   c. expensive   d. excited

8. I think people .... live on the moon in the future.

a. would   b. be   c. will   d. are

9. There weren't .... books here.

a. some   b. no   c. any   d. one

10. He'll .... to Luxor soon.

a. travelling   b. to travel   c. travels   d. travel

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I think people will all used electric cars. (..................................)
2. What is your sunglasses made of ? (..................................)
3. WB What it's made of ? (..................................)
4. He was born in two hundred two (2002). (..................................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"My home in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 100:106

Unit 11 On land and sea

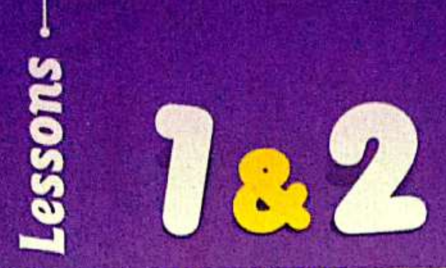


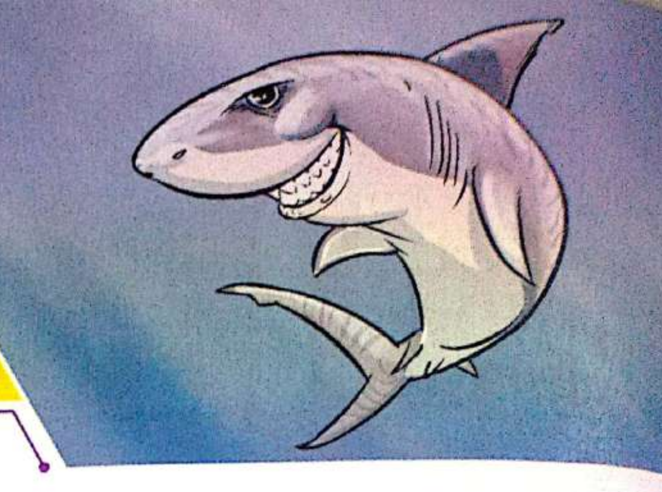
Objectives

- **Reading :**
  A paragraph about sea life; a leaflet about plastic pollution; The Old Man and the Sea
- **Writing :**
  Writing rules; writing an advertisement; a text explaining a beach clean-up day
- **Listening :**
  A talk at a nature reserve.
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about saving the environment
- **Language :**
  Zero conditional; must/mustn't; should/shouldn't; asking for, giving and sequencing instructions
- **Life Skills :**
  Collaboration; setting clear goals

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات



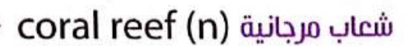


SB pages 44 : 47 WB pages 100 & 101



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)



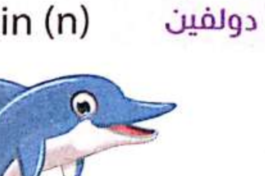
coral reef (n) شعاب مرجانية

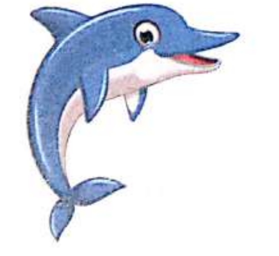


jellyfish (n) قنديل البحر



dolphin (n) دولفين





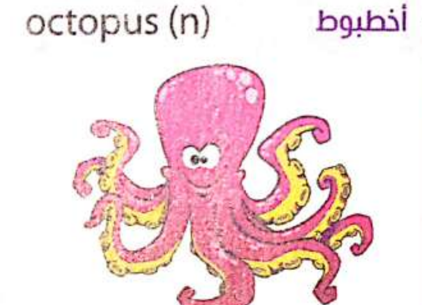
planet (n) كوكب

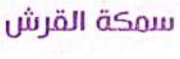


tooth (n) سِنه



octopus (n) أخطبوط





shark (n) سمكة القرش

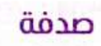


stingray (n) سمكة الراى اللاسع

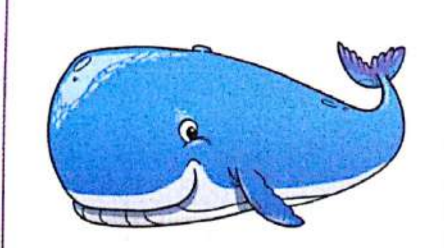


sea turtle (n) سلحفاة بحرية





whale (n) حوت



shell (n) صدفة



tail (n) ذيل



Key Vocabulary

sea life (n)	حياة بحرية	environment (n)	البيئة
ocean (n)	محيط	recycle (d) (v)	يعيد تصنيع
sting (v)	يلسع	rubbish (n)	قمامة
poisonous (adj)	سام		

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

plant (ed) (v), (n)	يزرع - نبات	away (adv)	بعيدًا
sea animals (n)	حيوانات بحرية	test (ed) (v), (n)	يختبر / اختبار
teeth (n)	أسنان	pencil case (n)	مقلمة
danger (n)	خطر	ice (n)	ثلج
flat (adj)	مسطح	turn (ed) (v)	يتحول
hard (adj)	صلب	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
touch (ed)(v)	يلمس	garden (n)	حديقة (خاصة)
facts (n)	حقائق	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

save (d) (v)	يحفظ	die (d) (v)	يموت
everywhere (adv)	فى كل مكان	materials (n)	مواد خام
sea birds	طيور بحرية	paper (n)	ورق
shopping bags	شنط التسوق	glass (n)	زجاج
problem (n)	مشكلة	necessary (adj)	هام / ضرورى
photos (n)	صور	view (n)	منظر
classroom (n)	فصل دراسى	mountain (n)	جبل
lake (n)	بحيرة	weather (n)	طقس
stop (ped) (v)	يتوقف	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
air (n)	هواء	road (n)	طريق
text (n)	نص (رسالة)		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
lose	يفقد/يخسر	lost	lost
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
sting	يلسع	stung	stung
hit	يضرب / يصدم	hit	hit
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
dangerous	خطير	safe	آمن
lose	يفقد / يخسر	win	يكسب
heavy	ثقيل	light	خفيف
late	متأخر	early	مبكر
fast	سريع	slow	بطئ
noisy	مزعج	quiet	هادئ
die	يموت	live	يعيش
forget	ينسى	remember	يتذكر

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

coral reef	a hard area of something like rock made from small sea animals (coral)	شعاب مرجانية
environment	the world around us	بيئة
flat	having no high areas	مسطح
jellyfish	a sea animal with a soft body that you can sea through. It stings when you touch it.	قنديل البحر
ocean	a large sea	محيط
whale	it is the biggest and heaviest sea animal	حوت
coral	it makes a reef at the bottom of the ocean	مرجان

octopus	a sea animal with eight legs	أخطبوط
planets	objects like the Earth that go around the sun	كواكب
poisonous	if something is poisonous, it can make you very ill or kill you	سام
recycle	use again	يعيد تدوير
rubbish	things you do not need	قمامة
shark	a large, dangerous sea animal with sharp teeth	سمكة قرش
shell	the hard part on the outside of a turtle, nut etc.	صَدفة / قوقعة
sting	if an animal stings you, it hurts you to protect itself	يلدغ
stingray	a big, flat fish with a long tail that can sting	سمكة الراى اللاسع
tail	the part that is at the end of an animal's body	ذيل
throw away	put something you do not need somewhere	يلقى بعيدًا
sea turtle	a large sea animal with a hard shell on its back	سلحفاة بحرية
whale	the largest sea animal in the world	حوت

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

make oceans dirty	يجعل المحيطات غير نظيفة	watch a lot of TV	يشاهد التلفاز كثيرًا
stay safe	يبقى آمنًا	swim away	يسبح بعيدًا
stay in	يبقى / يمكث فى	walk on the grass	يمشى على الحشائش
get rid of	يتخلص من	get home from	يصل للمنزل من
made of	مصنوع من	a good view of	منظر جميل لـ
run across	يجرى عبر	give us clean air	يعطينا هواء نقيًا
jump out of water	يقفز خارج الماء	dangerous for	خطر على
wake early	يستيقظ مبكرًا	feel tired	يشعر بالتعب
go to bed	يذهب إلى الفراش	feel ill	يشعر بالمرض
more than once	أكثر من مرة	hit with their tails	يضربوا بذيولهم



throw away	يلقى بعيدًا	find a safe place to cross	يجد طريقًا أمنًا للعبور
take a long time	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	in danger	فى خطر
turn to / into	يتحول إلى	die from	يموت من
good for	جيد / مفيد لـ	easier to recycle	اسهل فى اعادة التصنيع
use again = recycle	يستخدم مرة أخرى / يعيد تدوير	necessary to + inf.	ضرورى لـ
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	(be) not allowed to + inf.	غير مسموح بـ
take off	يخلع (ملابسه أو حذائه)	on roads	على الطرق
go into the shell	يدخل إلى داخل الصدفة	protect .... from	يحمى ... من
write a text	يكتب نص / رسالة	go around the sun	يدور حول الشمس

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

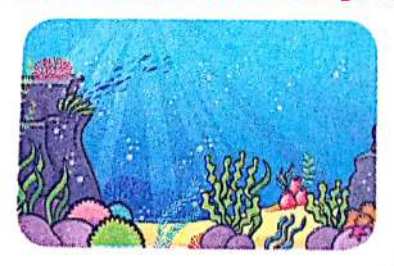
take	time	يستغرق وقت	have	a test	يمتحن
	a photo	يلتقط صورة / يصور			

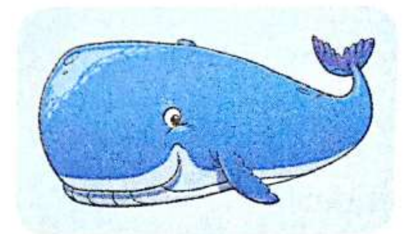


II Reading

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 45





Dangers[1] of the sea

The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean[2]. If it loses[3] a tooth, a new one grows[4]. A shark uses more than 20,000 teeth in its life!

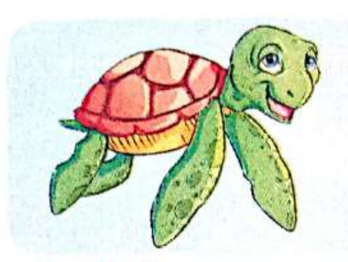
So how do fish and sea animals[5] protect[6] themselves from danger?

A stingray[7] is a big, flat[8] fish and it lives in the coral reef. If it knows a shark is coming, it jumps out of the water !

Check Vocabulary

مخاطر (1)	محيط (2)	يفقد (3)	ينمو (4)	حيوانات بحرية (5)	يحمى (6)	سمكة الراى اللاسع (7)	مستو/مسطح (8)







A sea turtle(9) has a hard shell(10) to protect it. Other animals can swim very fast - the octopus(11) has got eight legs to help it!

Some sea life, like the jellyfish(12), is poisonous(13). It stings(14) you when you touch it.

What about the whales(15) ? These big, heavy animals hit with their big tails(16)!

Check Vocabulary

سلحفاة بحرية (9)	صدفة (10)	اخطبوط (11)	قنديل البحر (12)	سام (13)	يلدغ / يلسع (14)	حيتان (15)	ذيول (16)

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

We must save(1) our planet(2)!

Plastic(3) is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment(4) for a very long time.

Some of the plastic people find on beaches is about 100 years old! We can recycle(5) some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

We must try to use other materials(6) – paper and glass, for example – because these are easier to recycle.

When we use a plastic shopping bag, we mustn't throw away these bags in rivers.

It will take a long time to clean all the plastic rubbish(7) from the beaches and the ocean. But we mustn't stop trying to help our planet!



Check Vocabulary

يحمي / ينقذ (1)	كوكب (2)	بلاستيك (3)	البيئة (4)	يعيد تصنيع (5)	مواد خام (6)	قمامة (7)

General Notes on Reading

1 one of the + إسم جمع + صفة تفضيل (تستخدم غالبًا مع صيغة التفضيل)

ex.: SB The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.

2 protect ...... from .... يحمى من

ex.: SB How do fish and sea animals protect themselves from danger ?

3 flat

* a flat (n) شقة

ex.: - Hoda lives in a small flat.

* flat (adj) مسطح

ex.: - This table has a flat round top.

4 cycle / recycle

* cycle (v) يركب الدراجة

ex.: - Ayman usually cycles to school.

* recycle (v) يُعيد تدوير

ex.: SB We can recycle some plastic.

5 poison – poisonous – poisoned

* poison (v) , (n) يُسمم / سم

ex.: - Man has poisoned rivers and seas.

ex.: - Poison kills people and animals.

* poisonous (adj) سام

ex.: - Don't eat this food. It's poisonous.

* poisoned (adj) مُسمم

ex.: - Most rivers became poisoned nowadays.

6 die from – die of – die out

* die from — يموت من ....

ex.: SB Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic.

* die of — يموت بسبب

ex.:- His uncle died of cancer سرطان.

* die out — ينقرض

ex.:- Dinosaurs died out millions of years ago.

7 plant – planet

* plant (v), (n) — يزرع - نبات

ex.:- Try to plant a tree near your house.

* planet (n) — كوكب

ex.:- The Earth الأرض is a planet.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The .... is the biggest sea animal.
   a. elephant   b. whale   c. horse   d. stingray
2. All .... have shells on their back.
   a. sharks   b. stingrays   c. turtles   d. whales
3. WB The .... is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean.
   a. jellyfish   b. turtle   c. shark   d. octopus
4. A/An .... is a sea animal which has eight legs.
   a. jellyfish   b. octopus   c. shark   d. whale
5. The .... is everything around us. We must keep it clean.
   a. sea   b. environment   c. planet   d. plant
6. To .... is to collect rubbish and make useful things to use it again.
   a. cycle   b. recycle   c. produce   d. protect
7. WB Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun.
   a. environments   b. planets   c. baskets   d. battles

8. In the Red Sea, you can see the most beautiful .... in the world.
a. turtles b. sharks c. whales d. coral reefs

9. SB A .... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it.
a. sea turtle b. whale c. shark d. jellyfish

10. When some sea animals eat plastic things, they die, because these things are ....
a. useful b. healthy c. poisonous d. clean

11. SB A sea turtle has a hard .... to protect it.
a. ship b. shop c. shell d. chin

12. SB The whales which are heavy sea animals hit with their big ....
a. fins b. wings c. legs d. tails

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. SB How do fish and sea animals .... themselves from danger ?
a. destroy b. grow c. protect d. touch

2. SB If a shark .... a tooth, a new one grows.
a. misses b. gives c. takes d. loses

3. SB The octopus swims very fast when it's in ....
a. safe b. danger c. sleeping d. rest

4. SB When a turtle is in danger, it .... into its shell.
a. climbs b. goes c. takes d. makes

5. When he is .... , he has something to eat.
a. thirsty b. sad c. happy d. hungry

6. SB It will .... a long time to clean the plastic rubbish from the beaches.
a. make b. give c. take d. have

7. SB Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die .... plastic.
a. at b. out c. in d. from

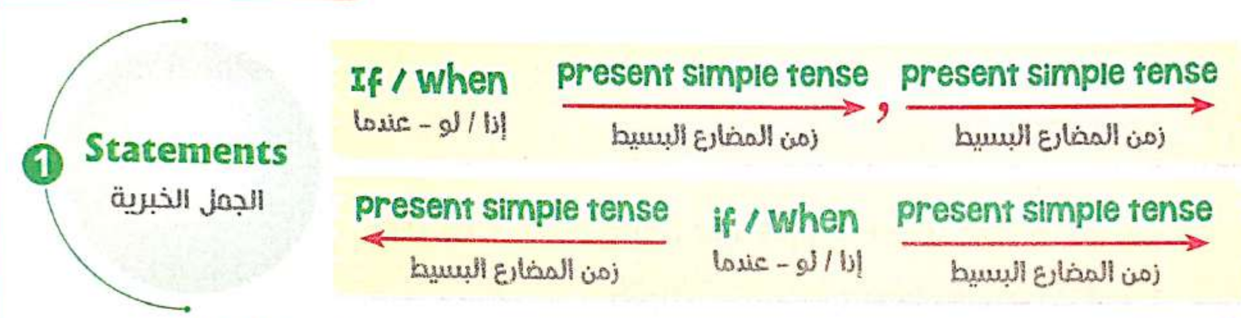
8. To ".................... " means putting something you don't need somewhere.
a. put on b. come into c. throw away d. put up

9. SB You mustn't talk and write a .... at the same time!
a. next b. text c. ticket d. passport



(1) Zero conditional with (If or When)

Formation التكوين



لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود (If / When) فى البداية.

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the zero conditional to say what always happens if/when a certain action takes place.

١. تستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يحدث دائمًا عندما يحدث حدث آخر معين.

ex. - I say hello **when** I see my friends.
- I wear my jacket **if** it is cold.

2. We use the present simple to talk about the action (with if or when) and the result.

٢. يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط عند الحديث عن شيء يحدث مع (if/when) وما يترتب عليه من نتائج.

ex. - I go to bed **when** I'm tired. - **When** I'm tired, I go to bed.

3. It expresses true situations. ٣.تعبر عن مواقف حقيقية.

ex. - **If /When** you **touch** the screen, the game **starts**.
- I **use** my dictionary **if/when** I **don't know** a word.

4. It describes facts related to (nature, physics and astronomy ...).

٤.تصف حقائق ترتبط بـ (الطبيعة والفيزياء والفلك ...).

ex. - **If** you **put** an orange into water, it **floats**.
- **When** you **add** oil to some water, the oil **floats**.
- **If/When** something **has** enough air in it, it **doesn't sink**.



استخدام (If / When) فى صيغة الاستفهام :

2 Interrogative
صيغة الاستفهام

ex. - **Do** you **feel** ill if/when you **eat** too many sweets ?
- When you eat too many sweets, do you feel ill ?
- What **do** you **do** if/when your friend **feels** sad ?
- What happens if/when you mix red with blue ?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB When it's late, I .... tired.
   a. feel b. felt c. feels d. feeling
2. WB If my sister watches a lot of TV, she .... tired.
   a. feel b. felt c. feeling d. feels
3. When you leave ice in the sun, it .... water.
   a. became b. becomes c. becoming d. become
4. If I .... rubbish on the ground, I throw it in the rubbish bin.
   a. sees b. saw c. see d. seen
5. SB If you .... a jellyfish, it stings you.
   a. touched b. touches c. touch d. touching
6. I wear my jacket .... it is cold.
   a. without b. so c. if d. but
7. If you put ice outside a freezer, it ....
   a. melts b. melt c. melting d. melted
8. SB When I am hungry, I .... something to eat.
   a. had b. has c. have d. having
9. If a shark .... a tooth, a new one grows.
   a. lost b. lose c. losing d. loses
10. If it's very hot, I .... on the fan.
    a. turned b. turn c. turns d. turning

11. WB When I feel ill, I .... to bed.
   a. goes b. go c. went d. gone

12. WB When we hear something funny, we all ....
   a. laugh b. laughed c. laughs d. have laughed

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Water is safer to drink if you boils it. (..............................)
2. If we made noise in class, our teacher feels angry. (..............................)
3. SB Where I've got a test, I always study hard. (..............................)
4. When it is cold, we wearing heavy clothes. (..............................)
5. WB When it is very cold, water turned into ice. (..............................)

(2) must /mustn't

- We use "must" to talk about things that are necessary to do.
- We use "mustn't" to talk about things that you are not allowed to do.
- تستخدم "must / mustn't" عندما تريد أن تقول أنه من الضرورى القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

sub. (الفاعل) + must / mustn't + (inf.)

ex. - You must listen carefully to your teachers.
- You mustn't use a mobile phone in the class.

- We use "must / mustn't" to ask for necessity
- تستخدم "must / mustn't" للسؤال عن الضرورة

ex. - Must I buy a ticket ?
  Yes, you must buy a ticket.
- Where must I put the rubbish ?
  You must put it in a trash bin.
- What mustn't you do on roads ?
  We mustn't play games on roads.

(3) should / shouldn't.

We use "should/shouldn't" to talk about things that are good ideas to do or not to do.

تستخدم "should/shouldn't" عندما نريد أن نتحدث عن أشياء جيدة أو غير جيدة للقيام بها.

Sub. (الفاعل) + should / shouldn't + (inf.)

ex. - We **should** recycle plastic.

- You **shouldn't** waste your time.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Heba .... take a taxi. She is very late.

   a. can b. must c. can't d. mustn't

2. You .... speak in the library loudly.

   a. mustn't b. can't c. must d. can

3. SB What must the students .... with them when they leave ?

   a. took b. takes c. take d. taking

4. SB We mustn't .... on the grass.

   a. walk b. walks c. walking d. to walk

5. SB The animals .... eat plastic.

   a. must b. mustn't c. should d. have to

6. SB You mustn't .... angry with people you don't agree with.

   a. be b. being c. been d. to be

7. SB What should I .... first ?

   a. done b. did c. doing d. do

8. What .... we do with the rubbish we find ?

   a. have b. had c. should d. haven't

9. WB You .... run across the road. It's not safe.
   a. should   b. must   c. can   d. mustn't

10. WB You .... look left and right when you cross the road.
   a. must   b. mustn't   c. should   d. can't

11. WB You .... play games in the road.
   a. must   b. should   c. mustn't   d. can

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB You must <u>came</u> early. (..................................)
2. SB We <u>must</u> make a lot of noise. (..................................)
3. SB You shouldn't <u>made</u> decisions or rules yourself. (..................................)
4. SB Why must we <u>cleaned</u> the beaches ? (..................................)

IV Speaking Corner

1 Describing sea animals : وصف الحيوانات البحرية

1. It can swim ظرف ....
2. It has (عدد) أقدام ....
3. It lives in مياه ....
4. The سمكة القرش .... is very dangerous.
5. A سمكة الراى .... is a big, flat fish.

2 Talking about the rules (What we must / mustn't do in/on) .... ? الحديث عن القواعد (ما يجب ولا يجب علينا القيام به)

1. A : What must I do when I cross the road ?	**B :** You must look left and right.
2. A : What mustn't you do on roads ?	**B :** We mustn't play games on roads.





Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Ways to save the environment»

1. We mustn't use a lot of plastic materials.

١. لا يجب علينا أن نستخدم الكثير من المواد البلاستيكية.

2. Plastic materials are very dangerous and damage the environment.

٢. المواد البلاستيكية خطيرة جدًا وتدمر البيئة.

3. We must try to use safe materials like paper and glass.

٣. يجب علينا أن نحاول إستخدام مواد آمنة مثل الورق والزجاج.

4. We must keep our planet safe and clean.

٤. يجب علينا أن نحافظ على كوكبنا آمن ونظيف.

سؤال

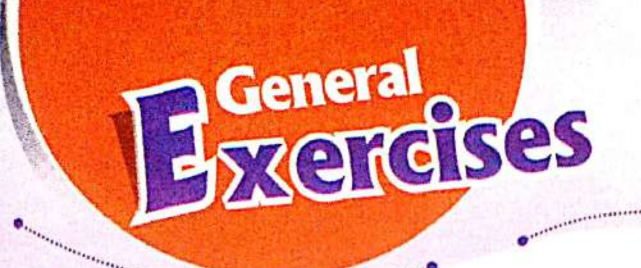
كتابة الموضوعات الإنشائية

من الأسئلة الهامة فى الورقة الامتحانية

تدرب فى

- Writing Skill فى نهاية كل وحدة.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية مجاب عنها فى نهاية الكتاب.
- الموضوعات الإنشائية فى ملحق المعاصر.





On Lessons 1 & 2

1 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What do you think the most dangerous sea animal is ?

B : It's the (1) ....

A : Where do sharks (2) .... ?

B : In oceans.

A : What's the turtle ?

B : The turtle is the sea animal that has a hard (3) ....

A : Why is the shell useful to the turtle ?

B : It (4) .... the turtle.

A : What about the jellyfish ?

B : It is dangerous. It can (5) .... you when you touch it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. stings b. jumps on c. pleases d. grows
2. WB A shark uses more than 20,000 .... in its life.
   a. feet b. fins c. tails d. teeth
3. The .... is the air, water and land around us.
   a. planet b. environment c. life d. material
4. A/An .... has eight legs and it can swim fast.
   a. octopus b. shark c. whale d. jellyfish
5. Plastic is .... , so sea animals and birds die from it.
   a. dead b. alive c. poisonous d. careful
6. The word "recycle" means to ....
   a. use something once b. not use something
   c. use something again d. never use something

7. The Earth is the .... where we live.

a. plant b. planet c. star d. moon

8. When there's a good view, you .... take a photo.

a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. have

9. We must .... our planet. It's important.

a. save b. to save c. saving d. to saving

10. SB We get water if ....

a. it rain b. it will rain c. it is rained d. it rains

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB I'll feel tired if it's late. (..................................)

2. WB You mustn't look left and right when you cross the road. (..................................)

3. Pupils mustn't shouted in the classroom. (..................................)

4. What will happened if it's cold ? (..................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Sea animals"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 48 : 50 WB pages 102 & 103



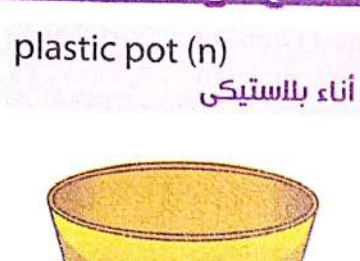
I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

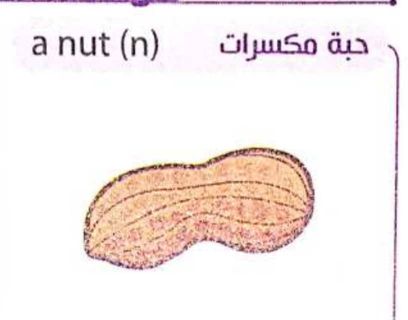
nature reserve (n) محمية طبيعية



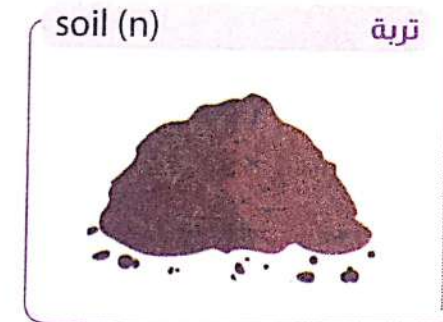
plastic pot (n) أناء بلاستيكى



a nut (n) حبة مكسرات



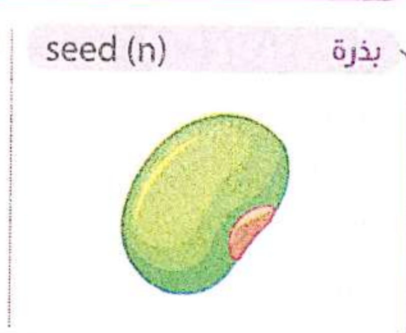
soil (n) تربة



hole (n) حفرة / ثقب



seed (n) بذرة



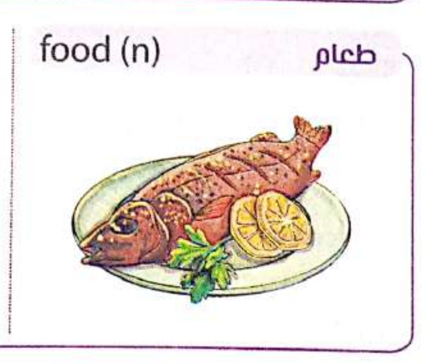
water (ed) (v) يسقى



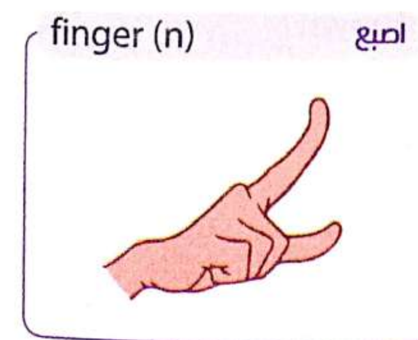
make a sandwich يصنع ساندويتش



food (n) طعام



finger (n) اصبع



ground (n) أرض



recycled plastic (n) بلاستيك معاد تدويره



Unit 11

Key Vocabulary

frighten (ed) (v)	يخيف	instructions (n)	ارشادات/تعليمات
school work (n)	عمل مدرسى	project (n)	مشروع
careful (adj)	حريص		

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

visit (ed) (v), (n)	يزور / زيارة	knives (n)	سكاكين
reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات	fishing line (n)	صنارة الصيد
decisions (n)	قرارات	touch (ed) (v)	يلمس
way (n)	طريقة	share (d) (v)	يشارك
rules (n)	قواعد	collaborate (d) (v)	يتعاون
dive (d) (v)	يغطس	collaboration (n)	تعاون
dictionary (n)	قاموس	Ras Mohammed reserve (n)	محمية رأس محمد

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

air (n)	هواء	fill (ed) (v)	يملأ
wash (ed) (v)	يغسل	cover (ed)(v)	يغطى
press (ed) (v)	يضغط	space (n)	فراغ
deep (adj)	عميق	hide (v)	يخفى / يختبئ
phone call (n)	مكالمة هاتفية	warm (adj)	دافئ
stones (n)	احجار		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave	يترك / يغادر	left	left
find	يجد	found	found
throw	يرمى / يلقى	threw	thrown
take	يأخذ	took	taken
hide	يخفى / يختبئ	hid	hidden
give	يعطى	gave	given
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
pay	يدفع (مال)	paid	paid

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
hard	صلب	soft	لين / أملس
give	يعطى	take	يأخذ
careful	حريص	careless	مهمل
bad	سيئ	good	جيد
empty	فارغ	full	مملوء

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

fishing line	a thin line used to catch a fish	صنارة الصيد
ground	the top part of the Earth, where we stand	أرض
hole	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب
cover	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطى / يحمى
seed	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة
nature reserve	an area of land used to protect nature, animals and plants	محمية طبيعية
pot	a small container	إناء
soil	what plants usually grow in	تربة (زراعية)

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take with	يأخذ مع	press ... into	يضغط فى
bad for	سئ لـ	cover with	يغطى بـ
listen to	يستمع إلى	make a lot of noise	يحدث ضوضاء كثيرة
share ... with	يشارك مع	through the reserve	خلال المحمية الطبيعية
angry with	يغضب من	walk into their homes	يدخلوا منازلهم
agree with	يتفق مع	find their own food	يجدوا طعامهم
at the bottom	فى القاع	come from	يأتى من
give instructions about	يعطى تعليمات عن	keep our air healthy	يحافظ على الهواء الصحى
famous for	مشهور بـ	work as a group	يعمل كمجموعة
have a picnic	يذهب فى نزهة	give food to	يعطى طعام لـ
think of ways to...	يفكر فى طرق لـ ...	pay around	يدفع حوالى / ما يقرب من
fill with	يملئ بـ		

Unit 11

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

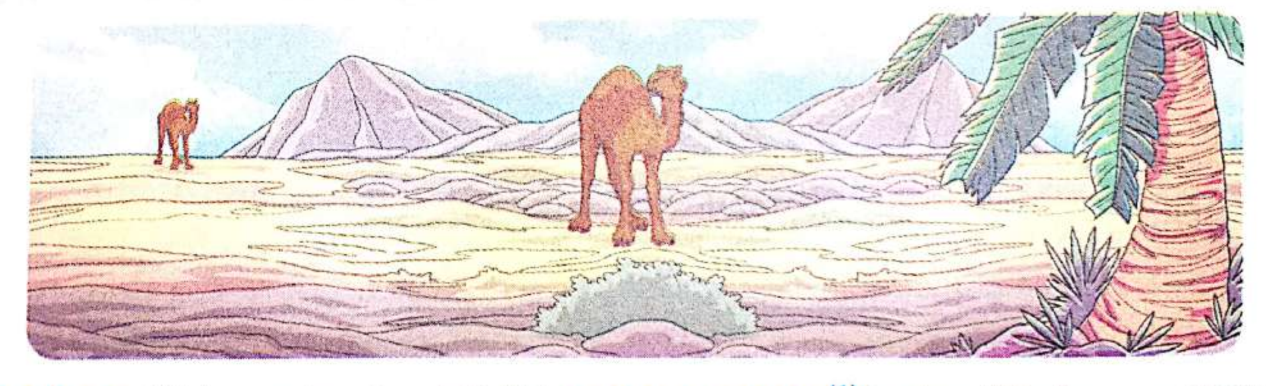
make	noise	يحدث ضوضاء	do	activity	يقوم بنشاط
	a decision	يتخذ قرار	take	turns	يتبادل أدوار
	a rule	يصنع قاعدة	play	a sport	يلعب / يمارس رياضة
	a hole	يصنع حفرة		a game	يلعب لعبة
	a phone call	يجرى مكالمة هاتفية	go	diving in	يذهب للغطس فى
	a sandwich	يصنع ساندويتش			
	something from recycled plastic	يصنع شئ من البلاستيك المعاد تدويره			

II Reading and Listening



Listening

Lesson 3 SB page 48



Teacher : We're going to visit this nature reserve(1) today. We have nature reserves to help our birds, plants and animals. Many important birds, animals and plants live here so we must be careful(2) about what we do.

First(3), you mustn't make a lot of noise(4)! You'll frighten(5) the animals and birds. Secondly(6), we must not leave the road through the reserve. The animals and birds live in the plants next to the road and you don't want to walk into their homes, do you ?

Check Vocabulary

(1) محمية طبيعية	(2) حريص	(3) أولاً	(4) يحدث كثيرًا من الضوضاء	(5) يخيف	(6) ثانيًا

Now I know we're going to have a picnic[7] lunch later, but you mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. They must find their own food. They mustn't think that all their food will come from you!

Next[8], you must take all your rubbish with you when you leave. Some animals think that plastic is food, but they mustn't eat it. It is very bad for them.

Finally[9] , you must remember to work together and write what you see. You can write about your visit to the reserve for the project[10].

Check Vocabulary

يذهب في نزهة (7)	بعد ذلك (8)	أخيرًا (9)	مشروع (10)



on Lesson 3 WB page 102

Ras Mohammed

Ras Mohammed reserve[1] is famous for its birds and animals. Many people go diving in the coral reefs here to see the many beautiful fish and turtles. If you want to dive here, first you must pay around[2] LE 100. When you dive, you mustn't touch or give food to any of the fish. You must only use knives[3] to cut fishing lines[4] and you must never take any fish from the water. Finally, sharks also live here, so you must be careful !



Check Vocabulary

محمية (1)	يدفع حوالى (2)	سكاكين (3)	صنارات صيد (4)





Lesson 4 SB page 50

Plant a tree today !

Adult : Do you want to help save our planet[1] ? Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air[2] healthy. You can plant[3] a nut[4] or the seed[5] of a fruit.

Child : What should I do first ?

Adult : First, wash an empty plastic pot[6] and dry[7] it. Secondly, put some small stones[8] at the bottom of[9] the pot.

Child : Then what should I do ?

Adult : Then fill the pot with soil[10].

Child : Like this ?

Adult : Yes, that's right! The next thing you do is, press[11] your finger into the soil and make a small hole[12].

Child : How deep must it be ?

Adult : It must be 2 centimetres deep. Now plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place[13]. The seed needs sun and water to make it grow.

Child : Should I water it now ?

Adult : Yes, now and every day. But don't give it too much water. It's going to grow big. When it grows too big for the pot, take it out of the soil and plant it in the ground. One day, when it is a big tree, you can say "I planted that!"

Check Vocabulary

(1) تحافظ على / تنقذ كوكبنا	(2) هواء	(3) يزرع	(4) حبة مكسرات / جوز هند	(5) بذرة	(6) أناء بلاستيك فارغ
(7) يجفف	(8) أحجار	(9) فى قاع	(10) تربة زراعية	(11) يضغط	(12) حفرة/فتحة
(13) مكان دافئ					

on Lesson 4 WB page 103

How to grow a tomato plant

- **First**, find a sunny place in the garden.
- **Second**, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.
- **Then**, make a small hole in the soil.
- **Next,** put some water in the hole so it is not too dry.
- **Finally,** put the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.



Lesson 4 WB page 103

Lama : I'd like to grow[1] a tomato plant[2]. What should I do first ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny place[3] in the garden.

Lama : Like this ?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : OK. What should I do after that ?

Mariam : Then, make a small hole in the soil[4].

Lama : How deep must it be ?

Mariam : About 2 cm. Next, put some water in the hole so it is not too dry[5].

Lama : Should I water[6] it now ?

Mariam : Yes, you should. Finally, put the seed[7] in the hole and cover[8] it with soil.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يزرع | (2) نبات الطماطم | (3) مكان مشمس | (4) تربة زراعية | (5) جاف | (6) يسقى / يروى | (7) حبة / بذرة | (8) يغطى

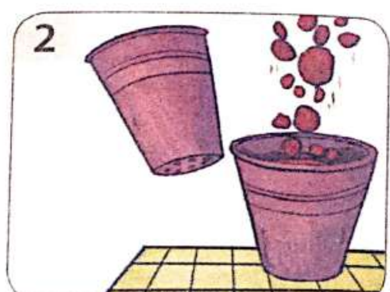


Plant a tree today!

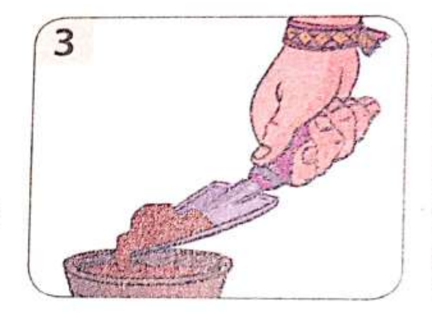
Do you want to help save our planet ?

Well, plant a tree! Trees help to keep our air healthy[1]. You can plant a nut or the seed of a fruit.



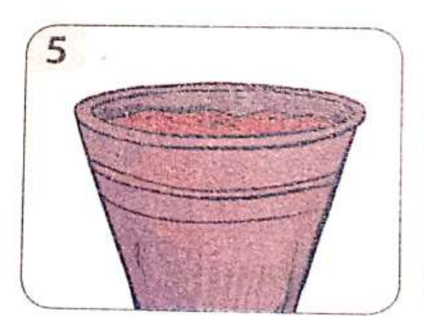


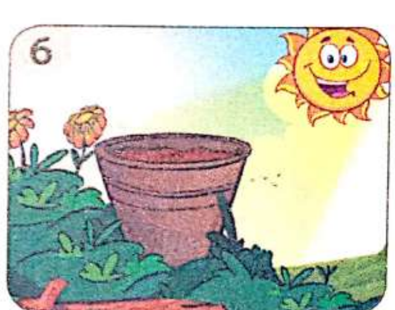
1. First, wash the plastic pot[2] and dry it.
2. Second, put some small stones[3] at the bottom [4]of the pot.





3. Then, fill[5] the pot with soil.
4. Next, press[6] your finger into the soil and make a small hole about 2 cm deep.





5. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.
6. Finally, put the pot outside in a warm place.
7. Water it every day. (Don't give it too much water).





8. When the tree grows too big for the pot, plant it in a bigger pot, or in the ground.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يحافظ على الهواء صحى	(2) إناء بلاستيكى	(3) أحجار	(4) فى قاع	(5) يملأ	(6) يضغط

Videoscript on Lesson 3 WB page 102

From the camel to the beautiful desert cat[1], or caracal[2] ... to the Nile crocodile[3], there are many animals in Egypt. But some animals are in danger of extinction[4]. This means that every example of the animal will die. The Dorcas gazelle[5] lives in the Sinai Peninsula[6] and in other parts of North Africa. It eats plants and you can sometimes see them early in the morning and late in the evening. The animal is in danger because some people want to eat it.

In the past, the Barbary sheep[7] lived all over the country. It eats plants, but warmer weather[8] means the sheep find it harder to find food. Today, you can only find them in the mountains of southern[9] and western[10] Egypt.

The striped hyena[11] looks like a dog. You can only see it at night. It eats other animals. People think that there are only a small number of striped hyenas in Egypt.

One of the most unusual animals is the dugong[12]. This animal lives in the Red Sea and other places. It is also called the sea cow. This is because it only eats plants that grow underwater.

The dugong is in danger because there is plastic and other pollution[13] in the sea. Also, there is not much food in the sea for it to eat.

Today, there are some organisations[14] that want to help these and other animals that are in danger, like this turtle. It is helpful for animals when we take rubbish from the beaches. We must all do what we can to help to protect nature.

Check Vocabulary

القط الصحراوى (1)	الكاركال (حيوان السنور البرى) (2)	تمساح نهر النيل (3)	معرض لخطر الانقراض (4)	غزال الدوركاس (5)
شبه جزيرة سيناء (6)	الخروف البربرى (7)	الجو الأدفء (8)	جنوبى (9)	غربى (10)
الضبع المخطط (11)	حيوان الأطوم (عجل البحر) (12)	تلوث (13)	منظمات (14)	



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 reserve

* reserve (v) = book — يحجز

ex.: - He reserved two tickets at the cinema.

* reserve (n) — محمية (للحيوانات والنباتات)

ex.: - You mustn't damage anything in a nature reserve.

2 share ..... with ...... — يشارك .... مع ......

- Always share your ideas with your friend.

3 fill ..... with ...... — يملئ .... بـ ......

- Fill the glass with water.

4 water

* water (v) — يسقى / يروى

ex.: - Water plants regularly.

* water (n) — ماء

ex.: - Give me a bottle of water.

5 soil - floor

* soil — التربة (التى نزرع فيها النباتات)

ex.: - To grow this plant, you need a good soil.

* floor — أرضية (الحجرة)

ex.: - We put a carpet سجادة on the floor.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Nature .... protect a lot of animals and birds.
   a. preserves b. resorts c. reserves d. deserts

2. Some people like to grow plants in plastic .... at home to enjoy their view.
   a. water b. pots c. pans d. cotton
3. The .... is the place where we stand.
   a. hole b. planet c. earth d. ground
4. This area gives a lot of good crops. It has a good ....
   a. soil b. desert c. earth d. land
5. SB Press your finger into the soil and make a small .... about 2 cm deep.
   a. hall b. hole c. hill d. hell
6. When you put a/an .... into the soil, it grows into a new plant.
   a. brick b. seal c. seed d. egg

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

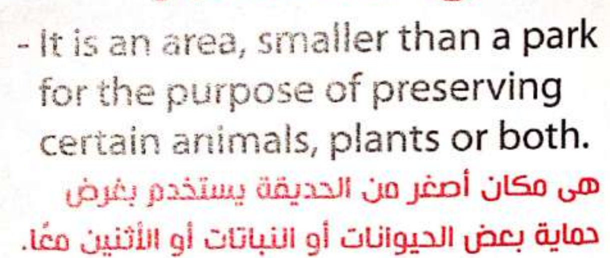
1. SB You mustn't .... a lot of noise in nature reserves.
   a. take b. get c. do d. make
2. You shouldn't walk .... the animals' homes in order not to frighten them.
   a. from b. too c. into d. for
3. Students wrote .... their visit to the nature reserve.
   a. on b. about c. to d. from
4. SB Can you think .... ways to help the environment ?
   a. at b. on c. of d. from
5. Pupils are .... activities and projects about the environment.
   a. making b. doing c. giving d. taking
6. Good students .... their ideas with each other. They are helpful.
   a. shake b. share c. wave d. clap
7. .... decisions quickly isn't a good habit. You should think well.
   a. Talking b. Making c. Having d. Giving
8. SB You shouldn't be angry .... people you don't agree with.
   a. of b. at c. with d. about

9. SB Trees help to .... our air healthy.
   a. get b. give c. keep d. save
10. "Earth" is the .... we live on and we should save it.
   a. plant b. planet c. plate d. plot
11. Try to keep this plant in a .... place.
   a. word b. worm c. warm d. wool
12. Can I .... a phone call, please ?
   a. take b. bake c. make d. do

III Speaking corner

1. Ask and answer questions about a nature reserve

السؤال عن المحمية الطبيعية والإجابة عليها

Questions	Answers
• What is a nature reserve ? ما هى المحمية الطبيعة ؟	- It is an area, smaller than a park for the purpose of preserving certain animals, plants or both. هى مكان أصغر من الحديقة يستخدم بغرض حماية بعض الحيوانات أو النباتات أو الأثنين معًا.
• What do you think people must do in a nature reserve ? فى رأيك ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس فى المحمية الطبيعية ؟	 - They must be careful about what they do. يجب أن يكونوا حذرين لما يفعلوه.
• What do you think people mustn't do in a nature reserve ? فى رأيك ماذا يجب ألا يفعل الناس فى المحمية الطبيعية ؟	- They mustn't walk into animals homes. يجب ألا يدخلوا بيوت الحيوانات. - They mustn't give food to the animals or birds. يجب ألا يعطوا طعام للحيوانات أو الطيور.
• How can we save our planet ? كيف يمكننا حماية كوكبنا ؟	- We can save our planet by planting trees, nuts and fruits. يمكننا أن نحمى كوكبنا عن طريق زراعة الأشجار والمكسرات والفواكة.



Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

"Nature reserve"

1. We mustn't make much noise in the nature reserve.

١. يجب ألا نحدث الكثير من الضوضاء فى المحمية الطبيعية.

2. We mustn't give food to the animals or birds.

٢. يجب ألا نعطى طعام للحيوانات أو للطيور.

3. The animals mustn't eat plastic.

٣. يجب ألا تأكل الحيوانات البلاستيك.

4. We mustn't walk into animals' homes.

٤. يجب ألا ندخل بيوت الحيوانات.

"How to plant"

1. First, wash the plastic pot and dry it.

١. أولًا، قم بغسل الأناء البلاستيكى وجففه.

2. Second, fill the pot with soil.

٢. ثانيًا، املأ الإناء بالتراب (الزراعى).

3. Next, press your finger into the soil and make a hole.

٣. ثم، أضغط باصبعك فى التربة الزراعية واصنع حفرة.

4. Plant the seed in the hole and cover it with soil.

٤. أزرع البذرة فى الحفرة وقم بتغطيتها بالتربة.

5. Water it every day.

٥. اسقيها كل يوم.

6. Don't give it too much water.

٦. لا تقم بإعطائها الكثير من الماء.

Remember

- Use short sentences. — استخدم جمل قصيرة.
- Use the imperative. — استخدم صيغة الأمر.
- Say one thing in each sentence. — اذكر شىء واحد فى كل جملة.
- Use sequencing words to show the order in which the actions or instructions happen : First, Second, Next, etc.
- استخدم كلمات التوالى / التعاقب لتوضح ترتيب الأحداث أو التعليمات باستخدام : أولًا، ثانيًا، ثم ...



On Lessons 3 & 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We should .... our planet.
   a. take b. make c. save d. give
2. The Earth is our ....
   a. plant b. planet c. star d. sun
3. .... keep our air healthy.
   a. Trees b. Planets c. Earth d. Sun
4. We can breathe fresh ....
   a. plants b. air c. Earth d. planet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Kareem : Where did you go yesterday ?
Omar : I went to a nature (1) ....
Kareem : How did you go there ?
Omar : By car.
Kareem : What did you (2) .... there ?
Omar : I saw a lot of rare (3) .... and plants.
Kareem : Did you give the animals anything to eat ?
Omar : No. Animals must try to find their (4) ....
Kareem : Why is this place (5) .... ?
Omar : Because we protect these animals and help them to live there.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you make noise, you'll .... the animals and birds.
   a. laugh b. frighten c. keep d. save
2. Nature .... keep our birds, plants and animals safe.
   a. resorts b. reserves c. services d. parks
3. Plants help to keep our air ....
   a. healthy b. wealthy c. cloudy d. dusty

4. That pot is .... There's nothing in it.
   a. filled b. dirty c. empty d. busy

5. Be careful, there's a .... in front of you.
   a. hall b. hole c. wheel d. fall

6. SB Plant the .... in a hole and cover it with soil.
   a. pot b. water c. seed d. ground

7. people must take all their .... with them when they leave the nature reserve.
   a. animals b. plants c. birds d. rubbish

8. He must .... to other friends' ideas.
   a. listen b. to listen c. listening d. listens

9. WB You mustn't .... why you are doing the activity.
   a. forget b. forgets c. to forget d. forgetting

10. Don't give the seeds too .... water.
    a. lots b. many c. much d. a lot

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Should I watered the plants now ? (..................................)
2. WB You should sharing your ideas with others. (..................................)
3. SB What must the birds and animals found ? (..................................)
4. When you visit a reserve, you must cut the rare flowers. (..................................)

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on : مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"What we must do to keep our animals safe"

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52   WB pages 104 & 105





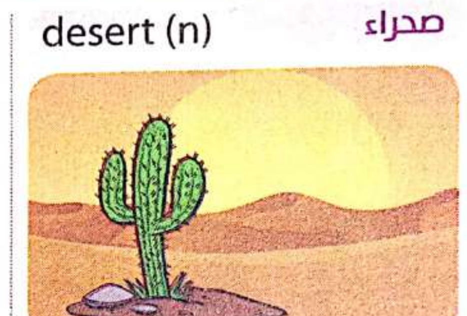
I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

newspaper (n) جريدة



desert (n) صحراء



plastic rubbish (n) نفايات بلاستيكية



skeleton (n) هيكل عظمى



leaflet (n) منشور - كتيب إرشادى



snack (n) وجبة خفيفة



gloves (n) قفازات



headphones (n) سماعات الرأس



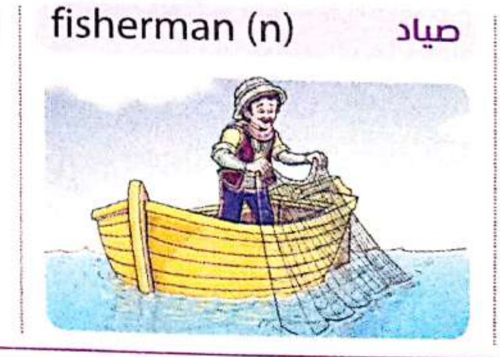
plastic bottle (n) زجاجة بلاستيكية



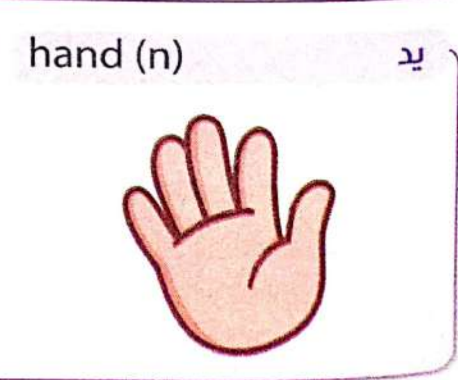
poster (n) ملصق



fisherman (n) صياد



hand (n) يد



Key Vocabulary

respect (ed) (v)	يحترم	radio station (n)	محطة إذاعية
character (n)	شخصية	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
West Beach (n)	الشاطئ الغربى	writer (n)	كاتب / مؤلف
advertisement (n)	إعلان		

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

worry (ied) (v)	يقلق	real (adj)	حقيقى
pull (ed) (v)	يسحب / يشد	boat (n)	قارب
the Red Sea (n)	البحر الأحمر	return (ed) (v)	يعود
bones (n)	عظام	brave (adj)	شجاع
illness (n)	مرض	position (n)	موضع / مكان
suggest (ed) (v)	يقترح	main (adj)	رئيسى / أساسى
smile (d) (v), (n)	يبتسم / ابتسامة		

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

afternoon (n)	وقت الظهيرة	title (n)	عنوان (مقال - مسرحية)
role (n)	دور	information (n)	معلومات
key points (n)	نقاط رئيسية	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص / يوجز
use (d) (v), (n)	يستخدم / استخدام	concluding sentence (n)	جملة ختامية
increase (d) (v)	يزداد / يزيد	details (n)	تفاصيل
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة	imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل
folded (adj)	مطوى	simple (adj)	بسيط
headings (n)	عناوين (رؤوس الموضوعات)	conclude (d) (v)	يختتم / ينهى
clear goals	أهداف واضحة	comment (n)	تعليق
local (adj)	محلى		

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
catch	يمسك - يصطاد	caught	caught
be (am / is / are)	يكون	was / were	been
come	يأتى	came	come
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
teach	يدرس / يُعلم	taught	taught
lose	يفقد / يخسر	lost	lost

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
brave	شجاع	afraid / frightened / coward	خائف أو جبان
tiny	ضئيل	enormous	ضخم
weak	ضعيف	strong	قوى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

fisherman	a man who catches fish	صياد (سمك)
respect	show care and admiration for someone	يحترم
skeleton	the bones of the body	هيكل عظمى

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	How big the fish was !	كم كانت السمكة كبيرة
feel weak	يشعر بالضعف	pieces of	قطع من
at the end of	فى نهاية	tell about	يخبر عن
find a new use for	يجد استخدام جديد لـ	I don't feel well today.	لا أشعر بتحسن اليوم.
It took two days	إستغرق يومان	the bottom of the ocean	قاع المحيط
on the beach	على الشاطئ	on the ground	على الأرض
onto the boat	على متن القارب	home to	موطن لـ
		study for the test	يدرس/يذاكر للإمتحان

for a long time	لمدة طويلة	eat too many sweets	يأكل الكثير من الحلوى
more than ever	أكثر من ذى قبل	for up to (1000 years)	يصل إلى أو يقترب من ...
make art with	يزينها / يجعلها زينة	throw rubbish	يلقى القمامة
have a role to play	لديه دور يقوم به	start with	يبدأ بـ
give yourself clear goals	حدد لنفسك أهداف واضحة	dangerous for	خطير على
		get well	يشفى / يتعافى
To conclude .... = In conclusion	فى الختام / فى النهاية	travel on the bus	يسافر بالأتوبيس
		keep water clean	يحافظ على الماء نظيفًا
learn how to + inf.	يتعلم كيف ...	important to + inf.	هام لـ ...



II Reading and Listening



Reading

Lesson 5 SB page 51

The Old Man and the Sea

By Ernest Hemingway

Santiago was an old fisherman(1). He felt worried, because the last time he caught a fish was 84 days ago. On the 85th day, he felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line(2). But the fish was stronger than(3) Santiago. It took two days for him to finally pull it to the boat. Then the sharks(4) came. When Santiago returned to(5) his home on the beach, he had no fish, only a skeleton(6). He felt weak(7) and slept for a long time. But the other fishermen saw how big the fish was and knew that he was brave(8) to catch it. Santiago lost the fish, but the other fishermen now respected(9) him more than ever.







Check Vocabulary

(1) صياد	(2) صنارة صيد	(3) أقوى من	(4) أسماك القرش	(5) عاد إلى	(6) هيكل عظمى	(7) ضعيف	(8) شجاع	(9) احترم



on Lesson 5 WB page 104



When Santiago woke up[1], he saw the boy Manolin. Santiago smiled[2].
"We must fish together[3] next time[4]," said Manolin.
"Yes, but I don't feel well[5] today", said Santiago.
"You must get well fast because there is so much I can learn from[6] you," said Manolin.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يستيقظ	(2) ابتسم	(3) نصطاد معًا	(4) المرة القادمة	(5) يشعر بتحسن	(6) يتعلم من

Lesson 6 SB page 52

We must clean our beach!

1- Where and when is the event[1]?
- West Beach
- Saturday afternoon 2 p.m. – 5 p.m.

2. What do we need ?
- rubbish bags[2], gloves[3] (to protect your hands), a bottle of water to drink and snacks[4] to eat!
- some people like listening to music on their headphones![5]

3. Why must we clean the beaches ?
- 100,000 pieces of plastic rubbish on this beach.
- one plastic bottle can stay in our environment for up to 1,000 years (dangerous for animals and fish)

4. How can we tell people about our event ?
- posters[6] (around school and town)
- emails to local groups
- local radio station[7] or newspaper



Check Vocabulary

(1) حدث	(2) أكياس القمامة	(3) قفازات	(4) وجبات خفيفة	(5) سماعات الرأس	(6) ملصقات	(7) محطة إذاعية

5. What should we do with the rubbish we find ?
- Recycle it.
- Find a new use for it.
- Make art with it.



Life Skills

- Remember that we all have a role[8] to play in helping the environment.

Give yourself clear goals[9] on how to do this.

Check Vocabulary

دور (8) | أهداف واضحة (9)



Reading on Lesson 6 WB page 105



Match the headings with the conclusions to these three different texts.

a. Keeping water clean

1. To conclude, the sea gives us much more than a place to go swimming, so let's not make it dirty!

b. Think before you use plastic material

2. To conclude, we must remember how long plastic rubbish stays in our environment, and we must use different materials when we can.

c. The amazing Red Sea

3. In conclusion, the warm waters are home to everything from tiny jellyfish to very big sharks.



General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 **لاحظ** : أن الفعل feel دائمًا يُتبع بصفة.

* Santiago felt worried.

Rahma feels sad when she sees an orphan. يتيم

2 catch **معانى مختلفة للفعل**

- catch fish — يصطاد سمك
- catch a bus / a train / a plane — يلحق بالاتوبيس / القطار / الطائرة
- catch a ball — يمسك الكرة
- catch a thief — يقبض على لص
- catch an illness — يصاب بمرض

3 beach / coast
شاطئ (البلاج)

* beach

ex.: - Don't throw plastic bottles on the beach.

ساحل

* coast

ex.: - On the North Coast, there are many tourist villages.

4 role – rule
دور

* role (n)

ex.: - We all have a role to play in helping the environment.

يحكم / قاعدة

* rule (v), (n)

ex.: - The Romans ruled Egypt a long time ago.
- All students must obey the school rules.

5 rubbish
قمامة (تعامل معاملة الإسم المفرد)

* rubbish

ex.: - Rubbish is important because it can be recycled.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ernest Hemingway is the .... of "The Old Man and the Sea". It's a wonderful story.
   a. reader b. writer c. baker d. cooker
2. WB In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big!
   a. skeleton b. sketch c. length d. height
3. WB A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea.
   a. teachers b. fishermen c. farmers d. firefighters
4. WB My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says.
   a. delete b. became c. respect d. expect
5. SB We wear .... to protect our hands.
   a. helmets b. gloves c. trousers d. jackets
6. SB Some people like listening to music on their ....
   a. headphones b. gloves c. helmets d. trousers
7. Having a .... is important if you are hungry.
   a. snake b. bag c. role d. snack

Exercise on Vocabulary

1. Some fishermen feel .... when they wait for a long time without catching a fish.
   a. happy   b. pleased   c. worried   d. proud
2. I enjoy catching fish using my fishing ....
   a. lion   b. tyre   c. line   d. lemon
3. SB It .... two days for Santiago to pull the fish to the boat.
   a. made   b. went   c. gave   d. took
4. The .... of the big fish is its bones only.
   a. tail   b. skeleton   c. fin   d. head
5. SB Santiago is the .... character in the story of "The Old Man and the Sea".
   a. mean   b. mine   c. main   d. mile
6. SB One plastic bottle can stay in our environment for .... to 1,000 years.
   a. down   b. up   c. bottom   d. over
7. SB Remember that we all have a .... in helping our environment.
   a. role   b. rule   c. door   d. head
8. She ran for four hours, so she felt ....
   a. weak   b. false   c. strong   d. afraid
9. Reading stories can .... us lessons for life.
   a. know   b. get   c. learn   d. teach

III Speaking corner

Discussing the problem of rubbish : مناقشة مشكلة القمامة



Answers

Questions	Answers
• Is rubbish a problem in your area ? هل القمامة مشكلة فى منطقتك ؟	- Yes, it is. نعم. إنها كذلك.
• What must people do to help ? ماذا يجب أن يفعل الناس للمساعدة ؟	- They must clean their city. يجب أن ينظفوا مدينتهم.

IV Writing

Tips for writing

1 Leaflet

منشور (كتاب إرشادى)

A leaflet is a folded paper that has information about something.
It has :

المنشور (أو نشرة التعليمات) هو عبارة عن ورقة مطوية بها معلومات عن شىء ما وأهم ما يميزها أن لها :

1. a short, exciting title.
2. a short, simple introduction.
3. clear headings.
4. simple sentences.

١. عنوان رئيسى قصير مثير للانتباه.
٢. مقدمة قصيرة وبسيطة.
٣. عناوين واضحة.
٤. جمل بسيطة.

2 How to conclude a text

كيف تنهى نص مكتوب

1. When you finish writing a text, you use a concluding sentence.
١. عندما ننهى نصًا، نستخدم جملة ختامية.

2. A concluding sentence summarises the key points of your text.
٢. الجملة الختامية تلخص النقاط الرئيسية للنص.

3. Always include a comma after phrases such as "to conclude .... In conclusion, ..."
٣. دائمًا ضع فاصلة سفلية بعد التعبيرات التى تعبر عن النهاية.

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

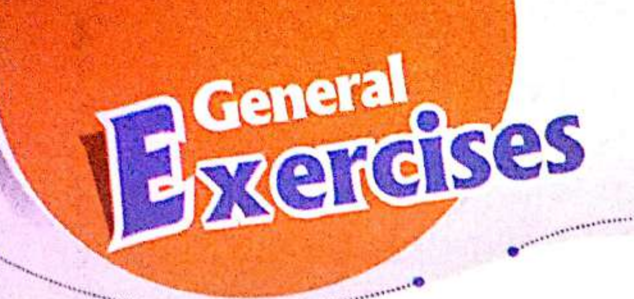
1. Santiago was an old fisherman.
١. كان سنتياجو صياد عجوز.

2. He felt a big fish at the end of his fishing line.
٢. شعر بسمكة كبيرة فى نهاية صنارته.

3. The fish was stronger than Santiago.
٣. كانت السمكة أقوى من سنتياجو.

4. The other fishermen saw how big the fish was.
٤. رأى الصيادين الآخرين كم كانت السمكة كبيرة.

5. The fishermen now respected him more than ever.
٥. الآن إحترمه الصيادين أكثر من ذى قبل.



On Lessons 5,6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Santiago was an old ....
   a. fisherman b. carpenter c. sailor d. farmer
2. Santiago didn't .... for a long time.
   a. buy fish b. sell fish c. catch fish d. eat fish
3. ...., there was a big fish.
   a. Today b. Yesterday c. One day d. Last week
4. The big fish was .... his ship.
   a. at the end of b. in the front of c. in the middle of d. at the top of

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... people sometimes do dangerous work.
   a. Quiet b. Lazy c. Weak d. Brave
2. A .... is the bones of somebody, an animal or a fish.
   a. diagram b. skeleton c. body d. fin
3. SB You mustn't swim here. It's ....
   a. safe b. dangerous c. interesting d. boring
4. A .... is a dangerous sea animal with big teeth.
   a. whale b. turtle c. shark d. snake
5. SB It's important to buy a .... when you travel on the bus.
   a. treck b. ticket c. card d. coin
6. Wear .... on your hands to keep them warm.
   a. glasses b. scarfs c. gloves d. coats
7. When you return to your home, it means that you .... to it.
   a. travel from b. come back c. go forward d. leave

8. .... is the main character in "The Old Man and the Sea" ?

a. What b. Whom c. Whose d. Who

9. We must .... the beaches regularly.

a. clean b. cleaned c. to clean d. cleaning

10. You .... throw rubbish on the beach. It's dangerous.

a. can't b. mustn't c. must d. can't

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Why must he cleans the room ? (..................................)
2. I learnt how doing this. (..................................)
3. SB It's important study hard for the test. (..................................)
4. SB Don't threw rubbish in the ground. (..................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A story you like"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Review on Unit 11

SB page 53 WB page 106

1. Vocabulary

coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	save	ينقذ
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
octopus	أخطبوط	nut	حبة مكسرات
shark	سمكة القرش	seed	بذرة
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	soil	تربة (زراعية)
sting	يلسع	instructions	تعليمات
stingray	سمكة الراى اللاسع	stones	أحجار
environment	البيئة	press	يضغط
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	snack	وجبة خفيفة
throw away	يلقى بعيدًا	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
rubbish	قمامة	headphones	سماعات الرأس

2. Language

Zero Conditional

- تستخدم الحالة الصفرية (If) للتعبير عن الحقائق الثابتة.

- **If** you **heat** water, it **boils**.

- يمكن أن تحل (When) محل (If) فى الحالة الصفرية.

- **If / When** you **mix** red and blue, you **get** purple.

Sequencing events : تعاقب الاحداث :

1. First, ... أولًا 2. Now, ... الآن 3. Then, ... ثم

4. Next, ... ثانيًا 5. After that, ... بعد ذلك 6. Finally, ... فى النهاية

(must, mustn't) :

- استخدام **(must/mustn't)** للتعبير عن الإلزام.

- You **must** do your homework every day.
- You **mustn't** be late for school.

3. Speaking corner

1. Describing a sea animal :

- An octopus can swim fast. It's got eight legs.

2. What must / mustn't you do in/on .... ?

- What must you do in the classroom ?
  We must be quiet.

4. Related paragraphs

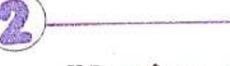
موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph 1

"Sea life"

There are many marine animals in the sea. Some of them have a shell and others have a tail. They can be dangerous to protect themselves. The shark is one of the most dangerous sea animals in the ocean. If it loses a tooth, a new one grows. A sea turtle has a hard shell to protect it. The jellyfish is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. The octopus has got eight legs to help it. It can swim very fast.

Model Paragraph 2



"Saving our planet"

Our planet is our big home. We must save it. There is a big problem in our environment. The plastic is everywhere. We use it for many different things. The problem is plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. We can recycle some plastic, but some of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous. So when birds and sea animals eat it, they die. We must try to use other materials. We mustn't stop trying to help our planet.

Model Paragraph 3

"Nature reserve"

Nature reserve is an area of land. We have it to help our birds, plants and animals. Many birds, animals and plants live in nature reserves. So it's a very important place. We must be careful when we go there. We mustn't make a lot of noise there as that will frighten the animals and birds. We mustn't leave the road through the reserve. We mustn't give any food to the animals or birds. We mustn't leave our rubbish when we visit the nature reserve.

5. Writing Skill



* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :

* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
(1) A beach clean-up day (2) A nature reserve (3) Saving the environment (4) Sea animals	- We must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - We should / shouldn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - Don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - It's dangerous to + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - It's important to + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - (حيوان بحرى) is my favourite sea animal. - (حيوان بحرى) can + inf. (مصدر الفعل). - (حيوان بحرى) has got (شئ لدى الحيوان). - (حيوان بحرى) is (صفة).



* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Word	Try to make a sentence
- plant trees	It's important to plant trees.
- octopus	....
- throw rubbish	....
- plastic	....
- recycle	....



- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"A beach clean-up day"

....

....

....

Test on unit 11



تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. What is the text about ?
   a. The shark b. The sea c. The teeth d. The shark's life
2. What is the most dangerous sea animal ?
   a. The dolphin b. The whale c. The shark d. The octopus
3. What happens if the shark loses a tooth ?
   a. It loses another one. b. It uses less teeth.
   c. A new one grows. d. It loses its life.
4. How many teeth does the shark use in its life ?
   a. 1,000 b. 4,000 c. 20,000 d. 2000

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : How can we keep our air healthy ?
B : We can plant nuts or the seeds of a fruit.
A : (1) .... can we plant the seeds ?
B : In a plastic (2) ....
A : What should I (3) .... first ?
B : First, put the soil in the pot and make a hole to put the seed in it.
A : Then, what else can I do ?
B : (4) .... the hole with soil .
A : Can we (5) .... it every day ?
B : Ok. But don't give it too much water.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Plastic is everywhere! We use it for many different things. The problem is, plastic stays in the environment for a very long time. Some of the plastic people find on **beaches** is about 100 years old! We can recycle some plastic, but most of it goes into the ocean. Plastic is poisonous

when animals eat it. Every year, more than 100,000 sea animals and birds die from plastic. Dolphins and birds also swim into plastic fishing lines.

We must try to use other materials – for example paper and glass, because **they** are easier to recycle.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What is the main idea of this passage ?

....

2. What do you think of plastic objects ?

....

3. Why do thousands of sea animals and birds die every year ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined word "**beaches**" means ....
   a. places away from the sea. b. places by the sea
   c. places for plastic objects d. our environment
5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. fishing lines b. plastic materials
   c. paper and glass d. dolphins
6. When something is poisonous, it causes ....
   a. evaporation b. recycling
   c. animals eat it d. death

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you.
   a. can sting b. sting c. stings d. would sting
2. You must .... the school rules.
   a. to follow b. following c. follow d. followed
3. What .... to get high marks ?
   a. I should do b. should I do c. do I should d. should do

4. WB When I'm ...., I go to bed.
   a. relaxed b. tired c. funny d. hungry
5. " .... " means to put something you don't need somewhere.
   a. Catch b. Turn to c. Cut down d. Throw away
6. Cleaning plastic rubbish from the beaches and the ocean helps to protect our ....
   a. moon b. planet c. star d. problem
7. The .... is the air, water and land on Earth.
   a. wind b. environment c. ocean d. skeleton
8. You can practise your favourite sport in the sports ....
   a. road b. centre c. barn d. circle
9. I arrived at work late as the .... were busy.
   a. roads b. ways c. lines d. lives
10. A .... reserve is an area of land in which animals and plants are protected.
   a. furniture b. future c. nature d. culture

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB You must forget why you are doing the activity. (................................)
2. What we should do with the rubbish ? (................................)
3. SB You mustn't to eat many sweets. (................................)
4. I feel tired when it rained. (................................)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Planting a tree"

....

....

....

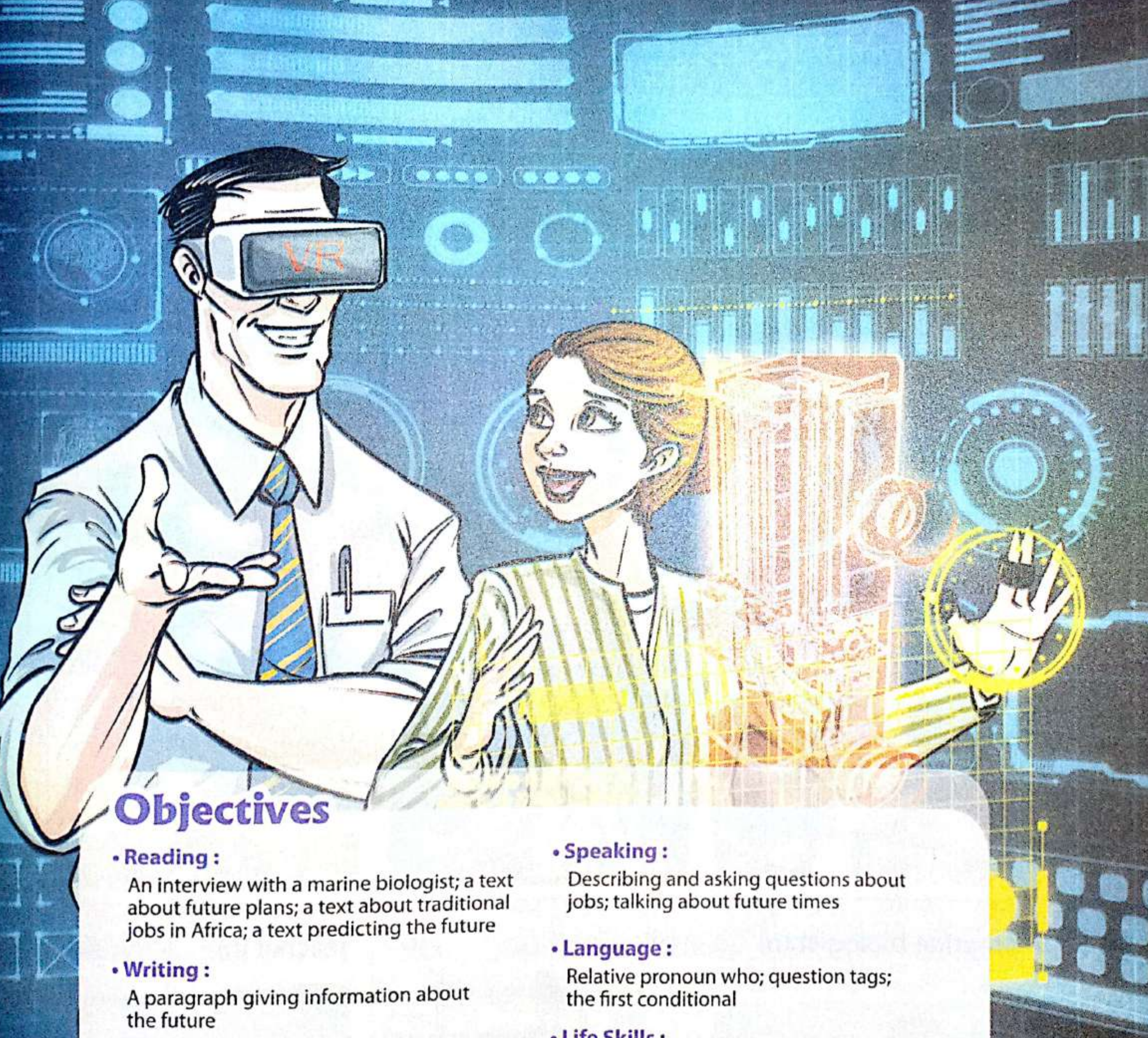
....

....

Unit 12

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

My Future



Objectives

- **Reading :**
  An interview with a marine biologist; a text about future plans; a text about traditional jobs in Africa; a text predicting the future
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph giving information about the future
- **Listening :**
  A description of a job; an interview with a marine biologist; people talking about their future plans
- **Speaking :**
  Describing and asking questions about jobs; talking about future times
- **Language :**
  Relative pronoun who; question tags; the first conditional
- **Life Skills :**
  Productivity : set clear goals

- يمكنك استخدام مفكرة Time saving
- اختبر مفرداتك اللغوية فى نهاية الكتاب

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات

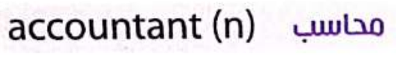




SB pages 54 : 57 WB pages 107 & 108



I Vocabulary



Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

accountant (n) محاسب



architect مهندس معمارى



businessman / businesswoman(n) رجل أعمال - سيدة أعمال



computer programmer (n) مبرمج كمبيوتر



dentist (n) طبيب/طبيبة أسنان



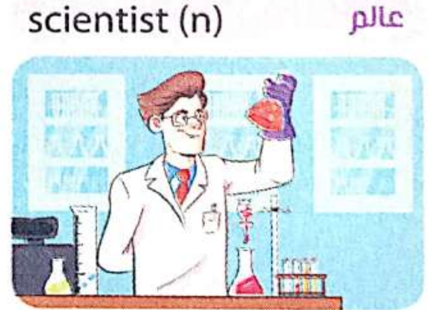
photographer (n) مصور فوتوغرافى



engineer (n) مهندس



scientist (n) عالم



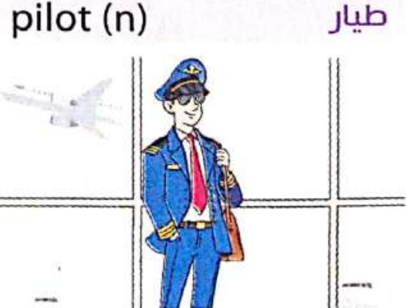
writer (n) كاتب



marine biologist (n) عالم أحياء بحرية



pilot (n) طيار



teacher (n) معلم / معلمة



Key Vocabulary

interview (ed) (v),(n)	يجرى مقابلة - مقابلة (شخصية)	laboratory (n)	معمل
		business (n)	عمل تجارى / شركة
research (n)	بحث	design (ed) (v)	يصمم

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

future plans (n)	خطط مستقبلية	wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك
office (n)	مكتب	sum (n)	مسألة حسابية / مبلغ من المال
meeting (n)	إجتماع	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
engine (n)	محرِّك	quiz (n)	اختبار قصير
machine (n)	آلة	study (ied) (v)	يذاكر / يدرس
science (n)	علوم	photograph (n)	صورة فوتوغرافية
African countries (n)	الدول الأفريقية	sick (adj)	مريض
score (d)(v)	يحرز / يسجل	article (n)	مقالة
call (ed)(v)	يتصل	name (d) (v), (n)	يسمى - اسم
goal (n)	هدف	voluntary work (n)	عمل تطوعى
voluntary (adj)	تطوعى		

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

person (n)	شخص	radio programme (n)	برنامج إذاعى
job (n)	وظيفة	presenter (n)	مقدم برامج
test (ed) (v),(n)	يختبر - اختبار	advice (n)	نصيحة
dive (d) (v),(n)	يغطس / غطسة	decide (d) (v)	يقرر
expect (ed) (v)	يتوقع	diving (n)	رياضة الغطس
voice (n)	صوت (بشرى)	results (n)	نتائج
Atlantic Ocean	المحيط الأطلنطى	terrible (adj)	رهيب / فظيع
nurse (n)	ممرضة	storm (n)	عاصفة
dream (ed) (v),(n)	يحلم / حلم	volunteer (ed) (v), (n)	يتطوع / متطوع
prefer (red) (v)	يفضل	record (ed) (v)	يسجل
especially (adv)	بصورة خاصة	collect (ed) (v)	يجمع

Famous cities and countries

مدن وبلاد مشهورة

Neweiba (n)	مدينة نويبع	England (n)	انجلترا
Thailand (n)	تايلاند	Australia (n)	استراليا
France (n)	فرنسا		



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
read	يقرأ	read	read
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
fly	يطير	flew	flown
spend	يقضى / يصرف	spent	spent

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
useful	مفيد	useless	عديم الفائدة
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح
interesting	شيق	boring	ممل
different	مختلف	similar	متشابه

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

an accountant :	is a person who works with money and numbers	محاسب
a businessman / businesswoman :	- is a man or a woman who works in business - a person who works in an office and goes to meetings	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
a dentist :	is a person who looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان
a scientist :	is a person who works with science	عالم
an architect :	is a person who designs buildings	مهندس معمارى
an engineer :	is a person who designs or mends machines, engines and designs buildings	مهندس
a pilot :	is a person who flies a plane	طيار
a marine biologist :	is a person who studies the ocean, the plants and animals in it	عالم أحياء بحرية
a computer programmer :	is a person who writes computer programmes	مبرمج كمبيوتر
engine :	is a machine that makes something move.	محرك

teacher :	is a person who teaches students.	معلم
machine :	an object, often electric, that can do jobs for us	آلة
meeting :	a time when people who work together can talk about important things	اجتماع
photographer :	a person who takes photographs	مصور فوتوغرافى
writer :	a person who writes books or articles	كاتب
laboratory :	a place where scientists work and do experiments	معمل
test :	check or do a scientific experiment on something	اختبار

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

work for	يعمل لدى	learn about	يتعلم عن
work with	يتعامل / يعمل مع	that sounds like great advice	هذه تبدو كنصيحة عظيمة
work in	يعمل فى		
I'd like to be وظيفة...	أريد أن أكون...	It's not nice to + inf. ...	إنه ليس لطيف منك أن ...
how much money a business gets	كم النقود التى يحصل عليها من العمل التجارى	volunteer for dives	يتطوع للغطس
good at	جيد فى	take a long time	يستغرق وقت طويل
on some days	فى بعض الأيام	the results of tests	نتائج الإختبارات
decide to + inf.	يقرر أن	that's the best thing	هذا أفضل شئ
next door	المنزل المجاور	It's important to + inf. ...	من المهم أن ...
at least	على الأقل	on other days	فى الأيام الأخرى
go down	ينخفض / يهبط	hard work	عمل صعب
check information	يدقق فى المعلومات	work hard	يعمل بجد
jump high	يقفز لأعلى	at the moment	فى هذه اللحظة
score a lot of goals	يحرز الكثير من الأهداف	the rest of	الباقى من
take photographs	يلتقط صورًا فوتوغرافية	find out	يكتشف
on the phone	على الهاتف	go out in a boat for a dive	يخرج فى قارب للغطس
in a wheel chair	يتحرك بكرسى متحرك	You're welcome !	على الرحب والسعة

Unit 12

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

design	buildings	يصمم مبانى
	machines or engines	يصمم الآلات والمحركات
write	books or articles	يكتب كتب أو مقالات
	computer programmes	يبرمج برامج الكمبيوتر
look after	sick people	يعتنى بالمرضى
	people's teeth	يعتنى بأسنان المرضى
do	voluntary work	يقوم بعمل تطوعى
	a test	يجرى اختبار
	very well	يؤدى أداءًا حسنًا
speak	French	يتحدث اللغة الفرنسية

II Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 54

Narrator 2 : 1
Male : He looks after[1] people's teeth. He's a dentist.
Narrator 2 : 2
Male : She studies science[2]. She's a scientist.
Narrator 2 : 3
Male : He's a person who designs[3] machines[4]. He's an engineer.
Narrator 2 : 4
Male : She works with numbers. She finds out how much money a business[5] gets. She's an accountant.
Narrator 2 : 5
Male : He takes photos[6] He's a photographer.
Narrator 2 : 6
Male : She works in an office[7] and goes to meetings[8]. She's a businesswoman.
Narrator 2 : 7
Male : He writes computer programs[9]. He's a computer programmer.
Narrator 2 : 8
Male : She writes books or articles[10]. She's a writer.
Narrator 2 : 9
Male : She designs buildings[11]. She's an architect.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يعتنى بـ	(2) علوم	(3) يصمم	(4) الآلات	(5) عمل تجارى / شركة	(6) يلتقط صور
(7) مكتب	(8) لقاءات / اجتماعات	(9) برامج كمبيوتر	(10) مقالات	(11) مبانى	



Listening on Lesson 1 SB page 55

Which job from the quiz is she talking about ?

Randa : It's an interesting job, but it isn't an easy job. You usually work in an office. You have to do a lot of sums[1]. I'm good at maths, so I'd like to do this job.

Check Vocabulary

يحل مسائل حسابية / يتعامل مع المبالغ (1)

Listening on Lesson 2 SB page 56



A Two adult women on a radio programme [1]

Presenter : This week, we interviewed[2] Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist. So, Nesma, what's a marine biologist ?

Nesma : A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

Presenter : Why did you decide[3] to become a marine biologist ?

Nesma : I'm good at science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

Presenter : What's your day like ?

Nesma : In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving[4] around coral reefs[5]. On other days, I test[6] water from the ocean in the laboratory[7]. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, recording the results[8] of tests.

Presenter : What's the best thing about your job ?

Nesma : My research[9] helps to protect[10] the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet,[11] isn't it ?

Presenter : And what's the worst thing ?

Nesma : There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather[12] is terrible[13]. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm[14] !

Check Vocabulary

برنامج اذاعى (1)	أجرى مقابلة (2)	يقرر (3)	غطس (4)	شعاب مرجانية (5)	يختبر (6)	معمل (7)
نتائج (8)	بحث (علمى) (9)	يحمى (10)	كوكب (11)	طقس (12)	فظيع / رهيب (13)	عاصفة (14)

Listening on Lesson 2 SB page 57

B Listen to the rest of the interview with Nesma.

Presenter : You visit some interesting places[1], don't you ?

Nesma : Yes, I do ! At the moment[2], I'm working in the Red Sea[3], near Neweiba. Last year, I worked in Australia. And before that, I worked in Thailand.

Presenter : Wow ! And what different kinds of animals do you study ?

Nesma : Well, some marine biologists study large animals, like whales and dolphins. But I study fish and smaller animals around coral reefs.

Presenter : It sounds like a dream job[4] to be a marine biologist, but it isn't an easy job, is it ?

Nesma : No, it isn't. There's a lot of information to collect[5] and record[6]. It's hard work and it takes a long time. I work about ten hours a day.

Presenter : What is your advice[7] to young people who want to become a marine biologist ?

Nesma : Work hard at school, especially in science. You have to love science to be a marine biologist ! And find out everything you can about the job.
You can even volunteer[8] for dives.

Presenter : That sounds like great advice. Thank you, Nesma.

Nesma : You're welcome[9].

Check Vocabulary

(1) اماكن رائعة	(2) فى هذه اللحظة	(3) البحر الأحمر	(4) الوظيفة التى يحلم بها	(5) يجمع
(6) يسجل	(7) نصيحة	(8) يتطوع	(9) على الرحب والسعة	

Lesson 2 SB page 57

Narrator 2 : 1

Male : You want to be a nurse, don't you ?

Narrator 2 : 2

Male : It isn't hot today, is it ?

Narrator 2 : 3

Male : You won't forget to phone me, will you ?

Narrator 2 : 4

Male : There were a lot of people at the meeting, weren't there ?

Narrator 2 : 5

Male : You don't like fish, do you ?



on Lesson 1 SB page 55



My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer(1) is a person who designs machines and engines.(2) My uncle designs engines for planes. I'd like to be an engineer one day ! My aunt is a businesswoman. That's an interesting job, too. A businesswoman(3) and a businessman(4) are people who work in an office(5) and go to meetings(6).

Amir

Check Vocabulary

مهندس (1)	محركات (2)	سيدة أعمال (3)	رجل أعمال (4)	مكتب (5)	إجتماعات / مقابلات (6)



on Lesson 2 SB page 56

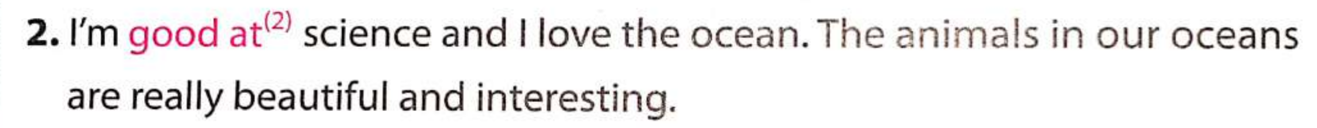
My dream job

This week, we interviewed Nesma El-Soory, a marine biologist[(1)].

What's a marine biologist ?

1. A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it.

Why did you decide to become a marine biologist ?



2. I'm good at[(2)] science and I love the ocean. The animals in our oceans are really beautiful and interesting.

What's your day like ?

3. In my job, every day is different ! On some days, I go diving around coral reefs. On other days, I test[(3)] water from the ocean in the laboratory. I also spend a lot of time on the computer, writing the results[(4)] of tests.

What's the best thing about your job ?

4. My research[(5)] helps to protect the plants and animals in the ocean. That's the best thing. It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it ?

And what's the worst thing ?

5. There are bad things about every job, aren't there ? Sometimes the weather is terrible. It isn't nice to go out in a boat for a dive when there's a storm ![(6)]

Check Vocabulary

عالم احياء بحرية (1)	جيد فى (2)	يختبر (3)	نتائج (4)	بحث علمى (5)	عاصفة (6)

General Notes on Reading and Listening

▶ advice - advise

* advice (n) — نصيحة (اسم لا يعد)

ex.: My advice to you is to study hard to become a marine biologist.

* advise (d) (v) — ينصح

ex.: I advise you to do a lot of voluntary work in a charity.

▶ work (ed) (v),(n) — يعمل - عمل (اسم لا يعد)

* work in / for — يعمل فى / لدى

ex.: I work in / for a big company.

ex.: Hend works for a hotel.

* work with — يتعامل مع

ex.: An accountant works with money and numbers.

* work on — يعمل على تحسين (مهارة - صناعة مثلًا)

ex.: You need to work on writing skills.

▶ 'd like (to + inf.) = want + (to + inf.) — يريد أن - يود أن

ex.: I'd like to be an architect. = I want to be an architect.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Heba works in a bank. She is a/an ....
   a. actor b. accountant c. teacher d. nurse
2. Ayman's hobby is taking photos. He wants to be a/an ....
   a. dentist b. businessman c. engineer d. photographer
3. Amr's uncle is a famous .... He designs new buildings.
   a. writer b. architect c. dentist d. computer programmer
4. Naguib Mahfouz is a famous .... He wrote many novels.
   a. programmer b. businessman c. writer d. scientist

5. Dr Zewail was a great .... He made many wonderful discoveries اكتشافات in science.
   a. architect b. dentist c. writer d. scientist

6. A .... is the person who looks after your teeth.
   a. engineer b. dentist c. accountant d. actor

7. My uncle Ali is a/an .... He has many projects and a big company.
   a. photographer b. engineer c. businessman d. writer

8. I like computer, so much. I hope to work as a/an .... in the future.
   a. actor b. dentist
   c. computer programmer d. doctor

9. SB An engineer is the person who .... machines and engines.
   a. plays b. acts c. designs d. cooks

10. A .... is a woman who works in an office and goes to meetings.
   a. dentist b. businessman
   c. businesswoman d. teacher

11. WB A/An .... is a person who flies a plane.
   a. architect b. dentist c. writer d. pilot

12. Mr Ahmed is a good .... He teaches at Al Salam Private School.
   a. doctor b. teacher c. dentist d. photographer

13. SB The person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it is called ....
   a. an engineer b. a marine biologist
   c. a dentist d. a doctor

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB It's really important to .... after our planet.
   a. take b. look c. make d. do

2. WB Mariam has got the .... of her test. She did very well !
   a. reasons b. results c. oceans d. engines

3. SB It's not nice to go out in a boat for a .... when there's a storm.
   a. diver b. driver c. ride d. dive

4. What subject is Ahmed good .... ?
   a. for b. in c. at d. to

5. WB He is a good footballer who scores a lot of ....
   a. goals b. goods c. guns d. boats

6. WB He is .... a wheelchair. He can't walk.
   a. at b. with c. in d. of

7. WB Can you .... a person who is very good at sport ?
   a. make b. name c. do d. go

III Language

1 The Relative pronoun (who)

- **We can join two sentences about people using the relative pronoun (who) :**

يمكننا ربط جملتين فاعلهما عاقل باستخدام ضمير الوصل (who).

ex. - A businesswoman is a woman. She works in an office.
- A businesswoman is a woman who works in an office.

2 Question Tag السؤال المذيل

- **We use question tags to check information (so we expect people to agree).**

نستخدم الأسئلة المذيلة للتحقق من معلومات (لذلك نتوقع ان يوافق الشخص على السؤال).

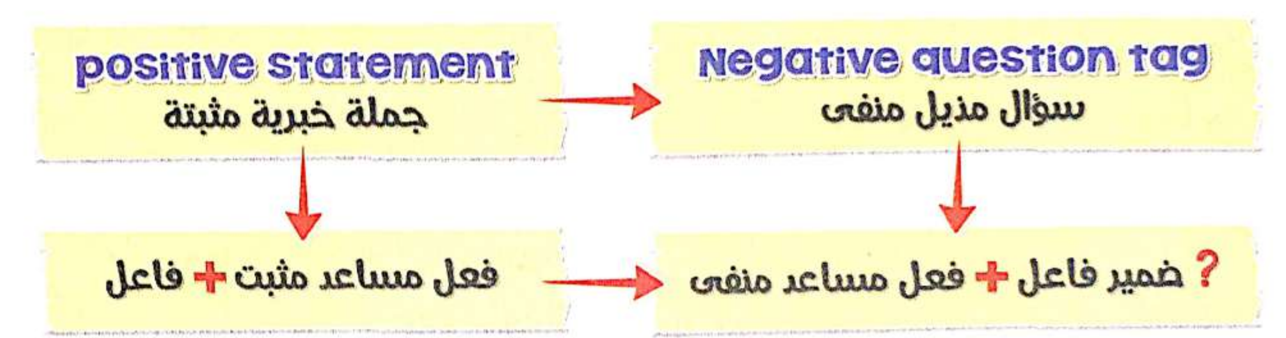
- **The voice goes down at the end of the question tag.**

ينخفض الصوت فى نهاية السؤال المذيل.

- **يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالأتى :**

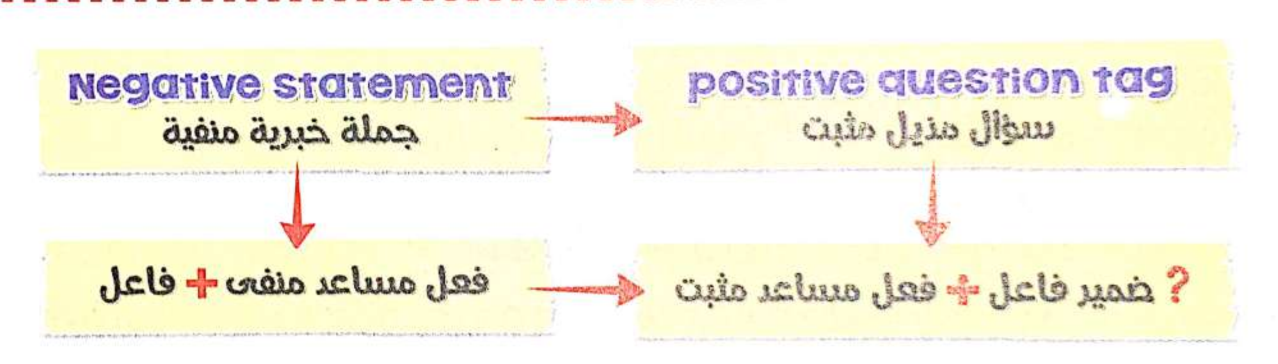
جملة خبرية ، فعل مساعد + ضمير فاعل ?

١ عند وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :



ex. - She **is** wearing glasses, **isn't** she ?

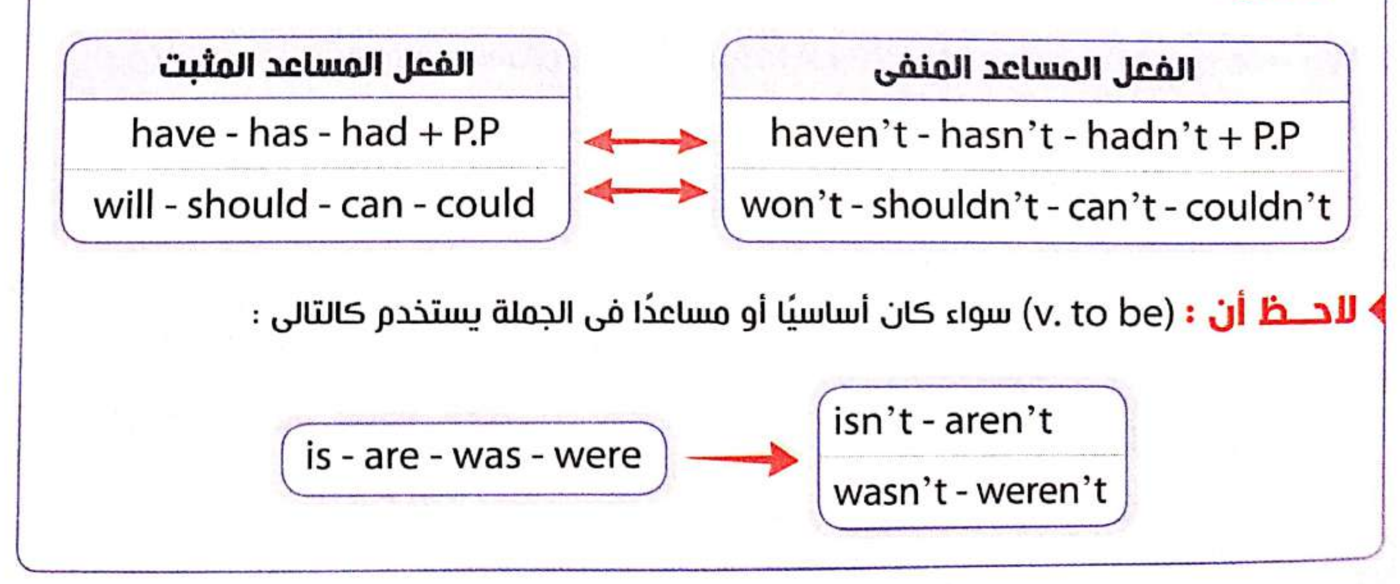
- Ashraf **should** study hard, **shouldn't** he ?



ex. - Your brother **can't** play the guitar, **can** he ?

- Maha **won't (will not)** travel to England, **will** she ?

- أى أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفى أو من النفى إلى الإثبات كالآتى :



الفعل المساعد المثبت		الفعل المساعد المنفى
have - has - had + P.P	↔	haven't - hasn't - hadn't + P.P
will - should - can - could	↔	won't - shouldn't - can't - couldn't

لاحـظ أن : (v. to be) سواء كان أساسيًا أو مساعدًا فى الجملة يستخدم كالتالى :

is - are - was - were	→	isn't - aren't wasn't - weren't

٢ عند عدم وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

السؤال المذيل	الجملة الخبرية
,don't	فعل بدون إضافات (مضارع بسيط)
,doesn't	فعل مضاف إليه ies/es/s (مضارع بسيط)
,didn't	فعل فى التصريف الثانى (ماضى بسيط)

ملحوظة : صيغة الفعل المساعد المنفى فى السؤال المذيل يجب أن تكون مختصرة (isn't - don't).

ex. - You **like** shopping, **don't** you ?
- Adel **speaks** English well, **doesn't** he ?
- She **used** the computer, **didn't** she ?

٣ لاحظ إذا كان (v. to have) فعل أساسى ينفى كالتالى :

have → don't   has → doesn't   had → didn't

ex. - Nabil has a car, doesn't he?
- We have a new flat, don't we?

٤ لاحظ أنه إذا وجدت الكلمات التالية يكون السؤال المذيل مثبت لانها تدل على النفى :

hardly - never - scarcely - seldom - few - little

ex. We **can hardly** go inside, **can** we ?

٥ تحول (I am) إلى (aren't I ?) أما (I am not) إلى (am I?).

ex. - **I am** tall , **aren't I** ?   - **I am not** short, **am I** ?

٦ عند الإجابة على السؤال المذيل :

- إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة تكون الإجابة بـ (Yes).

ex. - Nada is late, isn't she ? - **Yes**, she is.

- إذا كانت الجملة منفية تكون الإجابة بـ (No).

ex. - They aren't at home, are they ? - **No**, they aren't.

٧ تعلو نبرة صوت المتحدث فى نهاية السؤال المذيل :

- عند السؤال عن معلومة :

ex. - Omar doesn't play tennis, does he ?



Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB A person .... takes photographs is called a photographer.
   a. where b. which c. who d. when
2. SB An architect is a person .... designs buildings.
   a. who b. which c. when d. where
3. SB A doctor is a person .... looks after people's health.
   a. when b. who c. where d. whose
4. It's a nice flat, ... ?
   a. has it b. hasn't it c. isn't it d. is it
5. WB Sara wants to be a marine biologist, ... ?
   a. doesn't she b. does she c. is she d. isn't she
6. We should always eat healthy snacks, ... ?
   a. should we b. shouldn't you c. should you d. shouldn't we
7. Our parents are very helpful, ... ?
   a. are they b. they are c. they aren't d. aren't they
8. The body needs sleep, ... it ?
   a. isn't b. didn't c. doesn't d. wasn't
9. You can find vitamins in many kinds of food, ... ?
   a. aren't you b. can't you c. can you d. do you
10. Amal .... TV, didn't she ?
    a. doesn't watch b. watches c. watched d. didn't watch
11. WB Your grandmother doesn't like fish, ... ?
    a. does she b. doesn't she c. is she d. isn't she
12. WB She .... French, doesn't she ?
    a. speaks b. never speaks c. doesn't speak d. isn't speaking

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB You want to be a nurse, doesn't you ? (..............................)
2. SB It isn't hot today, does it ? (..............................)
3. A nurse is a person when looks after sick people. (..............................)
4. WB You did your homework last night, don't you ? (..............................)

IV Speaking Corner

Describing and asking questions about jobs. وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف

Questions	Answers
• Who is an architect ? من هو المهندس المعمارى ؟	- An architect is a person who designs buildings. هو شخص يقوم بتصميم المبانى.
• Who is a writer ? من هو الكاتب ؟	- A writer is a person who writes books or articles. هو شخص يكتب الكتب والمقالات.
• Who is a marine biologist ? من هو عالم الأحياء المائية ؟	- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean and the plants and animals in it. هو شخص يدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات التى توجد به.
• Who is a dentist ? من هو طبيب الأسنان ؟	- A dentist is a person who looks after people's teeth. هو شخص يقوم بالاعتناء بأسنان المرضى.



V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Your dream job»

1. My dream job is to be a marine biologist. ١. وظيفة أحلامى أن أكون عالم أحياء مائية.

2. I want to study the ocean, the plants and animals in it.
٢. أريد أن أدرس المحيط والنباتات والحيوانات الموجودة به.

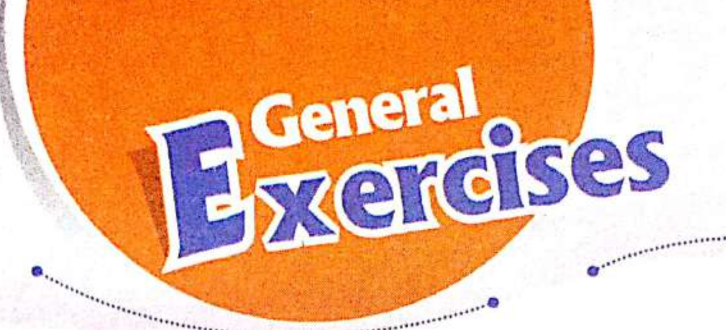
3. I'm good at science and I love the ocean. ٣. أنا جيد فى العلوم وأحب المحيط.

4. I will go diving around coral reefs. ٤. سوف أذهب للغوص حول الشعاب المرجانية.

5. My research will help to protect the plants and animals.
٥. سيساعد بحثى فى حماية النباتات والحيوانات.

6. I will test water from the ocean in the laboratory.
٦. سأقوم باختبار مياه المحيط فى المعمل.

7. I will do my best to look after our planet. ٧. سأفعل ما بوسعى لاعتنى بكوكبنا.



On Lessons 1 & 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. A marine biologist studies ....
   a. the ocean b. fruits c. vegetables d. salt
2. There are animals and plants in the ....
   a. park b. garden c. ocean d. lake
3. The .... in the oceans are beautiful.
   a. snakes b. animals c. sailors d. engineers
4. The text is about a ....
   a. scientist b. marine animal c. marine biologist d. crab

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Reham : What's your father's job ?
Nagham : He is a (1) ....
Reham : (2) .... does he work ?
Nagham : At a preparatory school.
Reham : What subject does he (3) .... ?
Nagham : He teaches English.
Reham : (4) .... does he go to school ?
Nagham : By bus.
Reham : Why does he go to school by bus ?
Nagham : Because his school is (5) .... from our house.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB Mohammed Salah is a footballer who .... a lot of goals.
   a. teaches b. scores c. meets d. takes
2. SB A/An .... is a person who designs machines and engines.
   a. engineer b. teacher c. writer d. pilot
3. That photo was taken by a clever ....
   a. programmer b. researcher c. photographer d. biologist

4. It's important to .... plants and animals in oceans.
   a. protect b. collect c. damage d. send

5. .... work with doctors to take care of sick people.
   a. Patients b. Nurses c. Architects d. Writers

6. WB I didn't like the book. I thought it was ....
   a. beautiful b. terrible c. ocean d. interesting

7. A : What about the .... of the tests ?
   B : You've succeeded.
   a. causes b. reasons c. marks d. results

8. You won't catch the bus, ... ?
   a. do you b. don't you c. won't you d. will you

9. He visits his uncle every Friday, ... ?
   a. isn't he b. doesn't he c. does he d. is he

10. There weren't any books, ... ?
   a. were there b. were they c. are they d. are there

4 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Hatem isn't at home, was he ? (....................................)
2. Samy and Kamel speak English very well, do they ? (....................................)
3. She won't travel abroad, would she ? (....................................)
4. WB Girls are quieter than boys, isn't she ? (....................................)

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"The job you want"

....

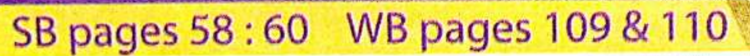
....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4







I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

apartment (n) شقة



university (n) جامعة



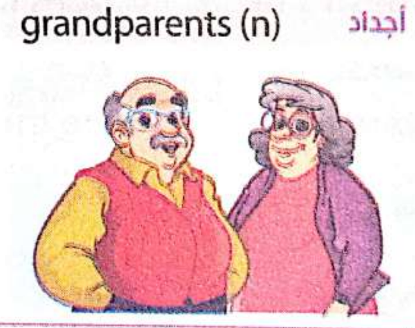
children (n) أطفال



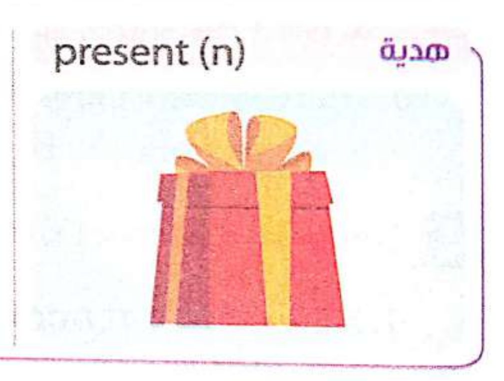
get married (v) يتزوج



grandparents (n) أجداد



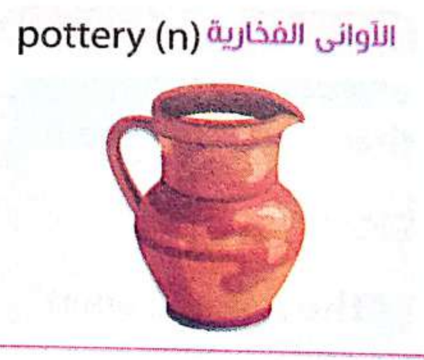
present (n) هدية



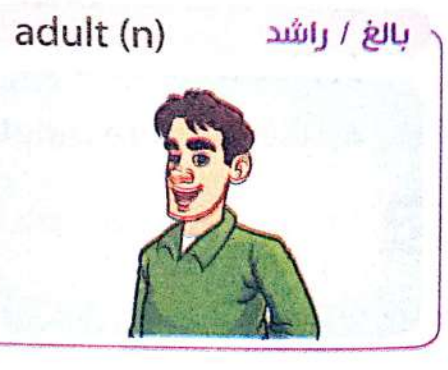
workshop (n) ورشة



pottery (n) الأوانى الفخارية



adult (n) بالغ / راشد



market (n) سوق



colourful jewellery (n) مجوهرات ملونة



basket (n) سلة



Key Vocabulary

skill (n)	مهارة	earn (v) (ed)	يكسب / يربح
education (n)	تعليم	study (ied) (v)	يذاكر / يدرس
pass (v) (ed)	يجتاز		

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 & 59 WB page 109

exam (n)	امتحان / اختبار	action (n)	حدث
subject (n)	مادة دراسية	plastic bottles (n)	زجاجات بلاستيكية
enough (adj)	كافٍ	hope (d) (v)	يتمنى
life events	أحداث حياتية	countryside (n)	الريف
travel (led) (v)	يسافر	carry (ied) (v)	يحمل
flying (n)	الطيران	player (n)	لاعب
blog (n)	مدونة	practise (d) (v)	يمارس / يتدرب
South Africa (n)	جنوب أفريقيا	probable (adj)	محتمل

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

African villages (n)	قرى أفريقية	necklace (n)	عقد / قلادة
local people (n)	المحليون	ability (n)	قدرة
businesses (n)	أعمال تجارية	beliefs (n)	معتقدات
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي	fully (adv)	تمامًا / كليًا
still (adv)	مازال	Africa (n)	قارة أفريقيا
Kenya (n)	دولة كينيا	Fayoum (n)	مدينة الفيوم
culture (n)	ثقافة	continue (d) (v)	يستمر
change (d) (v), (n)	يتغير / تغيير	Ghana (n)	دولة غانا
ring (n)	خاتم	traditional jobs (n)	وظائف تقليدية
clay (n)	صلصال / طين الفخار	modern offices (n)	مكاتب حديثة
extra (adj)	زائد / إضافي		



Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
break	يكسر / ينكسر	broke	broken
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
catch	يلحق بـ	caught	caught
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
drive	يقود	drove	driven
win	يفوز	won	won
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn

Words and Opposites كلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
local	محلى	international	دولى
modern	حديث	traditional	تقليدى

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

earn	get money from a job by working	يربح - يكسب
jewellery	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear	مجوهرات
adult	a fully grown person	بالغ / راشد
workshop	• a place where people work to create things • a room or a small building where people make or repair things.	ورشة
skill	an ability to do something well	مهارة
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, etc of a group of people	ثقافة
pottery	pots, dishes, etc made from clay	الأوانى الفخارية
apartment	a home that has a number of rooms in a building	شقة
basket	something you can use to carry or hold things	سلة
colorful	with many different colours	ملون
education	the knowledge you get from studying something	تعليم
get married	become husband and wife	يتزوج
Ghana	a country in West Africa	دولة غانا
Kenya	a country in East Africa	دولة كينيا
test	check or do a scientific experiment on something	اختبار
university	a place where you study after you leave school, for a degree	جامعة

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

pass the exams	يجتاز الاختبارات	a way for	طريقة لـ ...
have children	لديه أطفال	work hard	يعمل بجد
plans for future	خطط للمستقبل	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن
all over the country	فى جميع أنحاء البلد	move to	ينتقل إلى
all over the world	فى جميع أنحاء العالم	down the road	اسفل الطريق
catch the bus	يلحق بالاتوبيس	for many years	لعدة سنوات
learn to drive	يتعلم كيف يقود	take the rubbish from	يخرج القمامة من
travel around the world	يسافر دول العالم	(be) better for	أفضل لـ
come back	يعود	I'd love to	أود أن
repair things	يصلح الأشياء	use modern technology	
earn money	يكسب مالًا		يستخدم التكنولوجيا الحديثة
be able to	قادر على		

Collocations متلازمات لفظية

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	make	basket	يصنع سلة
	married	يتزوج		pottery	يصنع أواني فخارية
	money	يحصل على مال		jewellery	يصنع مجوهرات
do	a job	يؤدى وظيفة		things	يصنع أشياء

Many verbs become adjectives by adding the suffix (-ful).

بعض الأفعال تصبح صفة عند إضافة النهاية (ful-) لها.

Verb الفعل		Adjective الصفة	
colour	يلون	colourful	ملون
help	يساعد	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
hope	يأمل / يتمنى	hopeful	متفائل

II Reading and Listening

Reading on Lesson 3 SB page 58



I don't know which job I want to do when I'm older, but I think that education[1] is very important. I hope[2] that I pass my exams so that I can go to university. I'm going to work hard. If I go to university, I'll study maths. It's my best subject[3].

I don't like flying, so I don't want to travel around the world[4]. I want to get a good job in Egypt. I want to teach maths. If I have enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea. I'll get married, but how many children will I have ? I don't know!

Check Vocabulary

(1) التعليم | (2) يتمنى | (3) مادة دراسية | (4) يسافر حول العالم

Listening Lesson 3 SB page 59

Rami and Amira are talking about their plans for the future.

Presenter : Rami, what do you want to do when you're older ?

Rami : I really want to be an architect[1]. I must go to university[2] for that so I need to work hard. I won't pass my exams[3] if I don't work hard ! When I finish university, I want to travel. I'd like to get a job[4] in another country, like South Africa. But after a few years, I'll come back to Egypt. I'd like to get married[5] one day, but I don't want to live in Cairo. I prefer[6] the countryside[7]!

Presenter : Amira, what about you ?

Amira : I want to go to university, so I hope I'll pass my exams! If I go to university, I'll study science. I'd love to be a scientist[8]! It's a really interesting job. I'd like to get a job in Cairo and buy an apartment[9]. I want to learn to drive so that I can visit my family. One day, I'd like to get married and have children, but not for a long time !

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس معمارى | (2) جامعة | (3) اجتاز امتحاناتى | (4) يحصل على وظيفة | (5) أتزوج | (6) يفضل | (7) الريف | (8) عالم | (9) شقة سكنية



Reading on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Traditional jobs in Africa

Today, many people in Africa work in modern offices[1], but traditional jobs[2] and skills[3] are still important.

A



1. People started making pottery[4] thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults[5] can learn this skill.

B



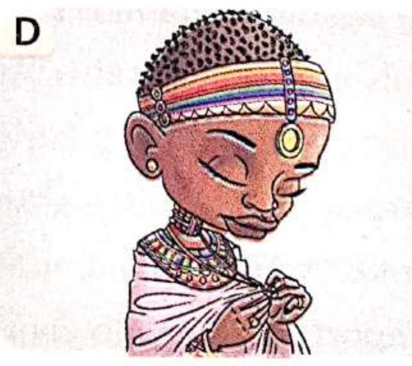
2. It is traditional to make jewellery[6] in Kenya. You can see the colourful[7] jewellery in markets[8] all over the country. Today, some local businesses[9] also use social media[10] and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because it continues[11] an old tradition[12] and it helps local people to earn money[13].

C



3. It is an important part of Africa's culture[14] to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to earn money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets[15]. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

D



Check Vocabulary

مكاتب حديثة (1)	وظائف تقليدية (2)	مهارات (3)	الأوانى الفخارية (4)	البالغين (5)
مجوهرات / حلى (6)	ملون (7)	أسواق (8)	أعمال تجارية محلية (9)	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى (10)
يستمر (11)	تقليد / عادة قديمة (12)	يكسب مال (13)	ثقافة أفريقيا (14)	سلال (15)



Videoscript on Lesson 4 SB page 60

What job will you do when you are older ? Will you be an engineer[1], who designs exciting new things ? Will you be a doctor, who looks after sick people ? Or will you be an architect[2], who designs new buildings and even cities ? These will all be important jobs in the future. But did you know that the Ancient Egyptians did many of these jobs too ? They helped to form the world we know today. Engineers in ancient Egypt designed and built a lot of things, like boats. These boats used the wind to help them travel to other parts of the world.

The Ancient Egyptians also learned how to move water from one place to the next. This helped farmers who worked far from the Nile. We use similar ideas[3] to help farmers today.

A doctor was a very important person in Ancient Egypt. The doctor used a lot of different tools. We can see some of them in this picture. The Ancient Egyptians also had dentists[4].

In the tenth century, an Egyptian doctor invented the first kind of syringe[5]. Today, doctors and scientists use syringes every day.

Imhotep was the world's very first architect. He designed a new way of building pyramids using stone. He built the Pyramid at Saqqara using this method[6]. He also used it to build the Great Pyramid at Giza. Imhotep also used stone to build columns[7]. These columns made buildings very strong. Before this, the Ancient Egyptians used mud[8] and plants to build columns. These columns sometimes fell down. But every job can be important. If you do your job well, you can help to make a better world.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مهندس	(2) مهندس معمارى	(3) افكار متشابهة	(4) أطباء أسنان
(5) حقنة	(6) طريقة / وسيلة	(7) أعمدة	(8) طين

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 pass / succeed

* pass an exam — يجتاز الامتحان

ex.: - Ashraf passed his exams.

* succeed in an exam — ينجح فى امتحان

ex.: - Ashraf succeeded in his exams.

2 maths + singular verb فعل مفرد — مادة الرياضيات

لاحظ أن مادة الرياضيات تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد أى يأتى بعدها فعل مفرد.

ex.: - Maths is my favourite subject.

3 businesses = companies — أعمال تجارية / شركات

ex.: - Today some businesses use social media to sell their products.

4 earn money = make money — يكسب مال

ex.: - My uncle works hard to earn money.

5 so that / in order to — بمعنى لكى (للتعبير عن الغرض)

جملة من زمن المضارع/الماضى البسيط + so that + subject + can / could + inf ...

ex.: - I study hard so that I can succeed.

- I put my books in a book case so that they couldn't get lost.

* in order to + inf. ...

ex.: - I study hard in order to succeed.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. SB Munir is working hard because he wants to .... his exams.
   a. fail b. pass c. past d. write
2. After finishing my school, I will go to ....
   a. kindergarten b. primary school
   c. preparatory school d. university
3. .... is very important for students' life to get good jobs.
   a. Pollution b. Education c. Engineering d. Rubbish

4. If I have enough money, I'll buy a/an .... to live in.
   a. school b. library c. apartment d. car
5. After finishing my university, I'll .... married.
   a. give b. make c. get d. take
6. The skill of making .... is making pots of clay. It's a traditional craft.
   a. jewellery b. bottles c. pottery d. poetry
7. SB Making jewellery helps some people in Kenya to .... money.
   a. win b. earn c. gain d. lose

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When I grow up, I want to work in .... country.
   a. other b. another c. others d. both
2. The teacher asked us to talk about our .... for the future.
   a. plains b. planes c. plans d. plays
3. SB You should .... hard to pass your exams.
   a. do b. make c. work d. give
4. I'll get married when I .... a good job.
   a. give b. make c. get d. bring
5. .... jewellery is a traditional craft in Kenya.
   a. Getting b. Making c. Giving d. Doing
6. "International" is the opposite of ".................... ".
   a. global b. local c. manual d. African
7. Ghana is an .... country.
   a. Asian b. American c. European d. African
8. SB Social media and the internet are used by businesses in Kenya to .... jewellery.
   a. help b. sell c. play d. make
9. WB If you .... every day, you will speak better English.
   a. pass b. run c. practise d. still
10. WB If you don't run, you won't .... the bus.
   a. earn b. catch c. learn d. sell



Language

The first conditional clause with "If" الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (If)

Formation التكوين

If + present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر)

ex. If Ali studies hard, he will pass his test.

عندما تأتى (if) فى منتصف الجملة لا نضع (,) بين الجملتين :

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) / won't + inf. (مصدر) if present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. Mona will catch the bus if she is quick.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

A Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل"

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense... ? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Will you stay inside if it's hot tomorrow ?

- Yes, I will. - No, I will not (won't).

B Wh-question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + will + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if + present Simple Tense ? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - What will you do if it is windy tomorrow ?

- We won't go to the beach.



Usage الاستخدام

We use the first conditional to talk about what will probably happen if/when another action takes place. We use if or when with the present simple, followed by (will) with a verb without (to).

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى لـ (If) للحديث عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل إذا تحقق شرط حدوثه.وتستخدم when / if مع المضارع البسيط متبوعًا بـ (will) والفعل بدون (to)

ex. - If Ahmed comes early, he will meet his uncle.
- If it is windy tomorrow, they won't go to the beach.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB If dad .... a new job, we'll move to Cairo.
   a. gets b. getting c. got d. get
2. SB Lara .... to drive if she stays in the city. She 'll use the bus.
   a. learn b. learnt c. won't learn d. learning
3. SB If you go to Fayoum, you will .... many people making pottery.
   a. saw b. see c. seen d. seeing
4. SB If I go to university, I .... study maths. It's my best subject.
   a. would b. will c. wouldn't d. won't
5. SB If I .... enough money, I'll buy an apartment near the Red Sea.
   a. had b. hadn't c. have d. haven't
6. SB If I don't work hard, I .... pass my exams.
   a. won't b. will c. would d. could
7. SB If I .... my grandparents, I'll take them a present.
   a. visits b. visited c. visiting d. visit
8. SB We .... to university if we don't pass our exams.
   a. go b. will go c. won't go d. went

9. If she drops the glass of milk on the floor, her mom will .... angry.
   a. be   b. is   c. being   d. been
10. If I .... married, I'll have a lot of children.
   a. got   b. get   c. getting   d. gets
11. WB How .... when you pass your exams ?
   a. did you feel   b. will you feel
   c. have you feel   d. would you feel
12. WB .... you learn to drive if you have a car ?
   a. Did   b. Will   c. Have   d. Would

2. Read and correct the underlined words:

1. WB Where will you **lived** if you get a good job ? (....................................)
2. If Ali passes his exams, he **would** go to university. (....................................)
3. SB I'll study maths if I **goes** to university. (....................................)
4. If my dad gets home early, I'll **being** happy. (....................................)

IV Speaking corner

Using critical thinking to discuss traditional jobs.

استخدام التفكير النقدى لمناقشة الحِرَف التقليدية.

Questions	Answers
• Why is it important to keep traditional jobs ? - لماذا من المهم أن تستمر الحِرَف التقليدية ؟	- I think because they continue an old tradition and help local people to earn money. أعتقد لأنها استمرار لعادة أو تقليد قديم وتساعد المحليين فى كسب النقود.
• How can people use modern technology to help them ? - كيف يمكن للناس استخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة فى مساعدتهم ؟	- I think some local businesses use social media and the internet to sell their products "jewellery". أعتقد ان بعض الأعمال التجارية المحلية تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى والانترنت فى بيع منتجاتهم (المجوهرات).





V Writing

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

«Your plan for future»

1. I hope that I will pass my exams.
١. أتمنى أن أجتاز اختباراتى.

2. I will study maths at university.
٢. سوف أدرس الرياضيات فى الجامعة.

3. I am going to learn how to drive.
٣. سوف أتعلم كيف أقود.

4. I will buy an apartment near the Red Sea.
٤. سوف أشترى شقة بالقرب من البحر الأحمر.

«Traditional jobs»

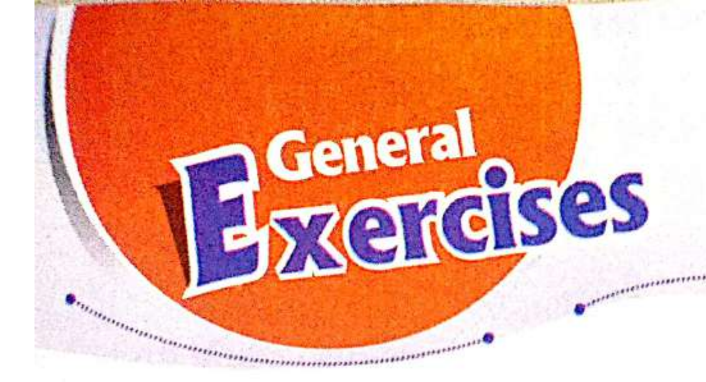
1. In Egypt, people make pottery in their workshops or their own homes.
١. فى مصر، يصنع الناس أوانى فخارية بورشهم أو بمنازلهم.

2. There are many markets in villages of Fayoum.
٢. يوجد العديد من الأسواق فى قرى الفيوم.

3. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.
٣. يمكن شراء سلال ملونة من غانا فى بلدان فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

4. Women from small villages make baskets to earn money.
٤. تصنع النساء بالقرى الصغيرة السلال لكسب النقود.

5. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over Kenya.
٥. يمكنك أن ترى المجوهرات الملونة بالأسواق فى جميع أنحاء كينيا.



On Lessons 3&4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. What is the important part of Africa's culture ? - Making ....
   a. clothes b. gloves c. baskets d. pots
2. Making baskets is a way to .... money.
   a. earn b. lose c. waste d. spend
3. What is the African country mentioned in the passage ? ....
   a. Somalia b. Ghana c. Egypt d. Sout Africa
4. There are a lot of .... who make and sell baskets in Ghana.
   a. boys b. women c. men d. children

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'd like to .... my exams to go to the university.
   a. get b. pass c. succeed d. cross
2. I learned to .... a taxi before buying my car.
   a. ride b. cycle c. drive d. dive
3. My brother .... married and had 3 children last year.
   a. made b. got c. took d. did
4. The word "traditional" means ....
   a. modern b. very new c. very few d. very old
5. WB My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week.
   a. baby b. adult c. skill d. culture
6. People work hard to .... money.
   a. sell b. pay c. earn d. send
7. Her favourite piece of .... is her diamond ring.
   a. jewellery b. culture c. furniture d. paper

8. If I go to the university, I .... geography.

a. would study b. study c. am studying d. 'll study

9. What will you take with you if you .... your grandfather ?

a. visit b. 'll visit c. visited d. visits

10. I won't buy a car if I .... enough money.

a. don't have b. have
c. didn't have d. doesn't have

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB If I eat too many sweets, <u>I'm</u> be fat. (................................)
2. WB Who <u>do</u> you see if you go out tonight ? (................................)
3. <u>Would</u> you invite me if you have a party ? (................................)
4. Will you go to the cinema if it <u>will be</u> a holiday ? (................................)

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

"Your plan for future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

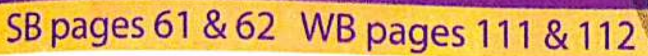
....

....

....

....

Lessons **5 & 6**



SB pages 61 & 62 WB pages 111 & 112

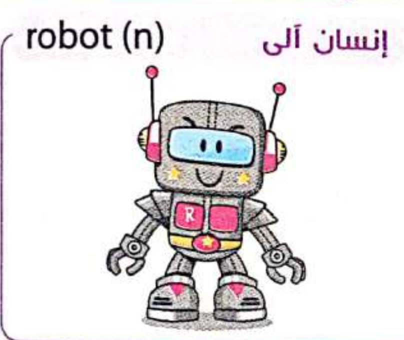




I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary (Illustrated)

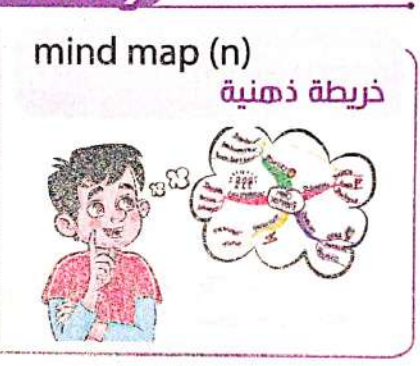
robot (n) إنسان آلى



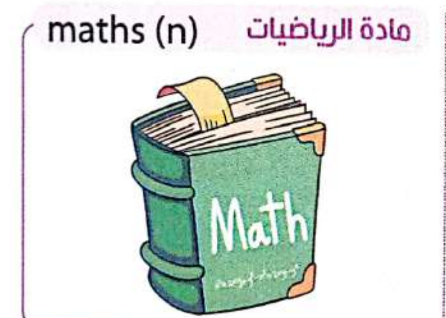
mobile phone (n) تليفون محمول



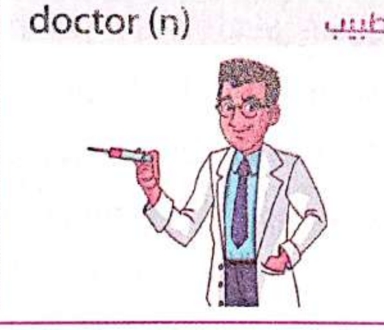
mind map (n) خريطة ذهنية



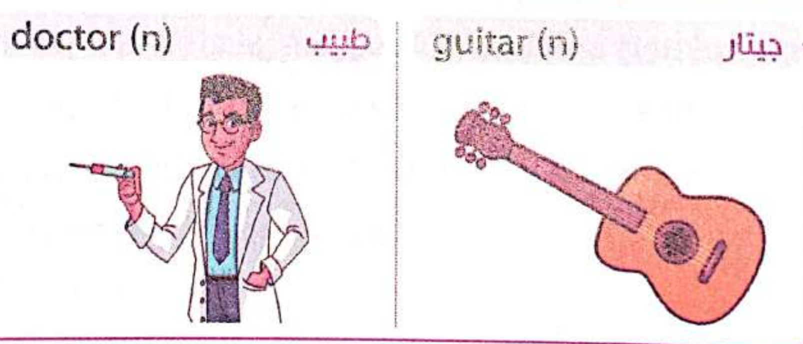
maths (n) مادة الرياضيات



doctor (n) طبيب



guitar (n) جيتار



piano (n) بيانو



countryside (n) الريف



ticket (n) تذكرة



electric car سيارة كهربائية



grandchildren (n) احفاد



injury (n) إصابة





Key Vocabulary

app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	illness (n)	مرض
cure (n)	علاج / دواء	electric (adj)	كهربائى
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا	health (n)	صحة

Lesson 5 SB page 61 WB page 111

married (adj)	متزوج	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
language (n)	لغة	project (n)	مشروع
writing (n)	كتابة	revise (d) (v)	يراجع
spelling (n)	الهجاء	area (n)	منطقة

Lesson 6 SB page 62 WB page 112

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفى	best (adj)	الأفضل
completely (adv)	بشكل كامل	description (n)	وصف
headlines	عناوين رئيسية	text (n)	نص
engineering (n)	الهندسة	exciting (adj)	مثير / شيق
personal information	معلومات شخصية	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
		introduce (d) (v)	يقدم

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
leave	يغادر	left	left
drive	يقود	drove	driven
make	يصنع	made	made
build	يبنى	built	built
begin	يبدأ	began	begun

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

app
- something that does a particular job on your phone or computer
- something on your phone that helps you to use maps, book tickets, etc.

تطبيق على الهاتف / الكمبيوتر

cure	a treatment than can make an illness better	علاج
illness	being ill	مرض
countryside	the area that is outside a town	الريف

Important expressions & prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

play the guitar	يعزف على الجيتار	have a job	يحصل على وظيفة
play the piano	يعزف على البيانو	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
design an app	يصمم تطبيق للهاتف	in ten years' time	فى غضون / خلال عشر سنوات
design a video game	يصمم لعبة		
learn to dive	يتعلم أن يغطس	learn a new language	يتعلم لغة جديدة
learn to drive	يتعلم أن يقود (سيارة)	learn new things	يتعلم اشياء جديدة
(be) / get married	يتزوج	live in town	يعيش فى مدينة صغيرة
I'd like to + inf.	أحب أن ...	live in city	يعيش فى مدينة كبيرة
finish my project	أنهى مشروعى	live in the countryside	يعيش فى الريف
finish school	ينهى الدراسة	live in a big apartment	يعيش فى شقة كبيرة
finish my book	أنهى كتابة كتابى	spend time with ...	يقضى وقتًا مع ...
learn how to revise	يتعلم كيف يراجع	live longer	يعيش لوقتًا أطول
practise reading	يتدرب على القراءة	work on	يعمل على (إنجاز شىء)
revise for the test	يراجع للامتحان	do sports	يمارس ألعاب رياضية
book tickets	يحجز تذاكر	follow the advice	يتبع النصيحة
go on holiday	يذهب فى اجازة	make an injury	يصاب بـ
start university	يبدأ دراسة فى الجامعة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
make predictions	يتنبأ	introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكار جديدة
find cures for illnesses	يجد علاجات للأمراض	give information about	يعطى معلومات عن
check for any mistakes	يتحقق من أى أخطاء	end with	ينتهى بـ
give some advice	يعطى بعض النصائح	What about later on ?	وماذا عن بعد ذلك / فيما بعد ؟
tell me about	أخبرنى عن		
		do first	يقوم بفعل شئ أولًا



II Reading and Listening

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 61

Presenter : What are your plans(1) for the future, Hussein ?

Hussein : I've got a lot of plans for the future. Next year, I want to learn to play the guitar(2). And before I leave school(3), I want to design a video game(4)!

Presenter : Wow! And what about later on ? What will your life be like in ten years' time ?

Hussein : In ten years' time, I want to have a good job. I think I'll be a doctor. I'd like to live in the city.

Presenter : Thank you, Hussein.

Presenter : Khadeeja, what are your plans for the future ?

Khadeeja : Well, one day I'd like to be a teacher. But there are lots of other things I want to do first.

Presenter : Tell me about them.

Khadeeja : Well, before I get a job, I'd like to learn a new language(5). I also want to learn to drive.

Presenter : And what will your life be like in 15 years' time ?

Khadeeja : That's a long way into the future, isn't it ? Well, in 15 years' time, I'll have a job in a school. I think I'll get married, too.

Presenter : Thanks, Khadeeja.

Check Vocabulary

(1) خطط | (2) يعزف على الجيتار | (3) يترك الدراسة | (4) يصمم لعبة فيديو | (5) لغة



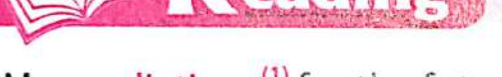
Listening on Lesson 5 WB page 104

Dina : I want to be a doctor but I need a lot of skills[1] to do that. Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my uncle. He's a doctor so he can give me some advice[2]. Next summer, I'm going to study English in England. You need to speak good English to be a doctor. Before I leave school, I'm going to do voluntary work[3] at a children's hospital[4].
In a few years' time, I want to go to a good university.
Then, in about ten years' time, I think I'll be a doctor in a good hospital!

Check Vocabulary

مهارات (1)	نصيحة (2)	عمل تطوعى (3)	مستشفى أطفال (4)





Reading on Lesson 6 SB page 62

My predictions[1] for the future
By Ahmed

In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes[2] in our lives. Technology[3] will make our lives easier[4] and more interesting. Our phones will be even more important and we will have apps[5] for everything.

Scientists will find new cures[6] for illnesses[7] so people will live longer. Some illnesses will disappear[8] completely[9].

All our cars will be electric[10]. If this happens, it will be much better for the air[11] in our cities, won't it ? I don't think I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves!

There will be a lot of interesting new jobs for people. Robots[12] will do some of the jobs that people do today. But I don't think we will have robot doctors or teachers!

I think there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future, but some things will stay the same. Children will still go to school, learn new things and spend time with friends.

Check Vocabulary

تنبؤات (1)	تغيرات (2)	تكنولوجيا (3)	تجعل حياتنا أسهل (4)	تطبيقات (5)	علاجات (6)
أمراض (7)	تختفى (8)	تمامًا (9)	كهربائى (10)	هواء (11)	الإنسان الآلى (12)

Unit 12

General Notes on Reading and Listening

1 application = app تطبيق

ex.: - My smart phone has got a lot of applications = apps.

2 in (ten) years' time فى خلال (عشر) سنوات

ex.: - Basem will buy a car in two years' time.

3 revise for (the) test يراجع لـ (أختبار)

ex.: - Rahma revises for her tests every day.

4 a country / the country

* **a country** دولة
  - Egypt is a country.
* **the country = countryside** الريف
  - The country in Egypt is fantastic.

5 cures for علاجات لـ ...

ex.: - Scientists try to find cures for cancer السرطان.

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

◉ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Apps are examples of new ....
   a. technology b. engineering c. environment d. health
2. I think some .... will disappear completely in the future.
   a. headlines b. illnesses c. changes d. numbers
3. Scientists always try to find .... for illnesses.
   a. predictions b. changes c. cures d. maps
4. Modern phones became more easier and important, they have many ....
   a. chargers b. keys c. apps d. screens

5. I think .... will do many jobs that people do today in the future.
   a. robots b. animals c. birds d. insects

6. A/An .... helps sick people to get better.
   a. businessman b. teacher c. doctor d. accountant

Exercise on Vocabulary

◉ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Sara is going to learn to .... the guitar.
   a. make b. play c. do d. give

2. Living in the .... is quieter than living in the city.
   a. countryside b. seaside c. capital d. hospital

3. SB It's important to .... your time well.
   a. explain b. plain c. plan d. plant

4. Pupils should .... well for their exams.
   a. advise b. revise c. replay d. rewrite

5. Can you .... predictions about what will happen in the next 30 years ?
   a. take b. make c. do d. give

6. When things aren't different, it means they are the ....
   a. some b. same c. similar d. sound

7. SB I think there will be a lot of .... changes in the future.
   a. boring b. exciting c. traditional d. similar

8. Technology will .... our lives more interesting.
   a. do b. make c. take d. like

9. SB The pilot is the person who .... planes.
   a. designs b. writes c. takes d. flies

10. .... work on ships and travel to many countries all over the world.
    a. Pilots b. Sailors c. Architects d. Photographers

III Speaking corner

Talking about future plans : الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية :

subj. (فاعل) + (be) going to + inf.

ex. - Next year, I'm going to design an app .

- العام القادم، سوف أقوم بتصميم تطبيق للهاتف.

subj. (فاعل) + want to + inf.

ex. - Next month, I want to pass my exams .

- الشهر القادم أريد أن أجتاز اختباراتى.

- Before I leave school, I want to learn a new language.

- قبل أن أغادر المدرسة، أريد أن أتعلم لغة جديدة.

subj. (فاعل) + 'd like to + inf.

ex. - In a few years' time, I'd like to improve my skills.

- فى خلال سنوات قليلة، أود أن أحسن من مهارتى.

- Before I get a job, I'd like to live in the town.

- قبل حصولى على وظيفة، أحب أن أعيش فى المدينة.

أما عند الحديث عن ترتيب خططك المستقبلية أو تنبؤاتك الشخصية لما سيحدث فى المستقبل

subj. (فاعل) + will + inf.

ex. - In five years' time, I think I'll be a scientist.

- فى غضون خمس سنوات، أعتقد أننى سأصبح عالمًا.

- I don't think, I will have to learn to drive because cars will drive themselves.

- لا اعتقد، أننى سوف أضطر إلى تعلم كيفية القيادة لأن السيارات ستكون ذاتية القيادة.



IV Writing

Writing tips

When you write your text, remember to :

عندما تكتب نص خاص بك تذكر أن :

- Include an introduction with a topic sentence.
  - اكتب مقدمة باستخدام جملة رئيسية.
- Use First, Second to introduce new ideas.
  - استخدم كلمة First و Second لتقدم أفكار جديدة.
- End with a conclusion.
  - قم بانهاء النص بخاتمة.
- Read your final text and check for any mistakes. Can you improve it ?
  - اقرأ النص النهائى الخاص بك وتحقق من أى أخطاء. هل يمكنك تحسينه ؟

Stop here !

الجمل الهامة المرتبطة بالدرس التى تساعدك فى كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

« Future predictions »

1. In the next 30 years, there will be a lot of changes in our lives.

١. فى الثلاثين عامًا القادمة سيكون هناك الكثير من التغيرات فى حياتنا.

2. Technology will make our lives easier and more interesting.

٢. ستجعل التكنولوجيا حياتنا أسهل وأكثر متعة.

3. Our phones will have apps for everything.

٣. سيصبح هناك تطبيقات لكل شئ على هواتفنا.

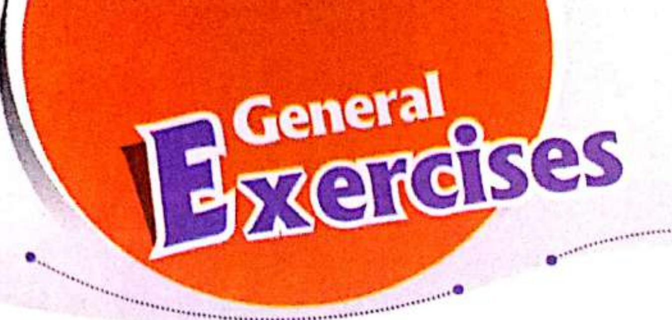
4. Scientists will find new cures for illnesses. ٤. سيجد العلماء علاجات جديدة للأمراض.

5. Some illnesses will disappear completely. ٥. ستختفى بعض الأمراض كليًا.

6. Our cars will be electric. ٦. ستصبح جميع سياراتنا كهربائية.

7. I think, there will be a lot of exciting changes in the future.

٧. أعتقد أنه سوف يوجد الكثير من التغيرات المثيرة فى المستقبل.



On Lessons 5 & 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I've got .... for the future.
   a. planes b. plans c. designs d. drawings
2. I want to play ....
   a. the guitar b. the piano c. the flute d. the lute
3. I want to .... a video game.
   a. buy b. play c. design d. make
4. When will you learn to play the guitar ? ....
   a. Next week b. Next month c. Next year d. Tomorrow

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... work is done for free.
   a. Hard b. Voluntary c. Active d. Easy
2. A : What's your .... for the future ?
   B : I'm going to travel to England.
   a. event b. time c. plan d. end
3. After school, you can get a good ....
   a. work b. job c. university d. hobby
4. I am .... that life will be better for my family.
   a. helpful b. hopeful c. dirty d. ugly
5. .... will make our lives easier.
   a. Technology b. Nature c. Activities d. Biology
6. .... will do some of the jobs, people do today, and this will be easier and faster.
   a. Rabbits b. Robots c. Craftsmen d. Workers
7. It's quieter to live in the ....
   a. town b. city c. countryside d. city centre

8. He is going .... a modern house next year.
   a. design   b. designing   c. to design   d. designs
9. I'll travel abroad in ten ....
   a. year time   b. years time   c. years' time   d. year's time
10. WB If you get up late, you .... the school bus.
   a. will catch   b. won't catch   c. wouldn't catch   d. don't catch

3 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. My best subject is English, <u>is</u> it ? (.....................................)
2. Ameer will buy a car if he <u>got</u> enough money. (.....................................)
3. WB In four weeks' time, I <u>go to</u> finish school. (.....................................)
4. SB Children will still <u>going</u> to school in the future. (.....................................)





Review on Unit 12

SB page 63 WB page 113

1. Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب	tradition	تقليد / عادة
architect	مهندس معمارى	traditional	تقليدى
businessman	رجل أعمال	countryside	الريف
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	education	التعليم
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	predictions	تنبؤات
dentist	طبيب أسنان	plans	خطط
photographer	مصور فوتوغرافى	cure	علاج / دواء
engineer	مهندس	illnesses	امراض
scientist	عالم	engineering	هندسة
pilot	طيار	electric	كهربائى
writer	كاتب	health	الصحة
marine biologist	عالم أحياء بحرية	sailor	بحار

2. Language

Question tags : الأسئلة المذيلة :

★ نستخدم هذا النوع من الأسئلة فى نهاية الجمل لتأكيد ما نعرفه أو ما نفكر فيه، فتنخفض طبقة (نبرة) الصوت فى نهاية الجملة.

- You're in the basketball team, aren't you ? (= I think you're in the team)

★ عندما يكون الفعل مثبت، نستخدم سؤال مذيل منفى وعند الإجابة نستخدم الإثبات.

- She's very friendly, isn't she ? - Yes, she is.

★ عندما يكون الفعل منفى، نستخدم سؤال مذيل مثبت وعند الإجابة نستخدم النفى.

- We aren't late, are we ? - No, we aren't.

★ يمكن استخدام السؤال المذيل للسؤال عن معلومات، فتعلو طبقة الصوت فى نهاية الجملة.

- Ashraf doesn't play football, does he ? (= Does he play football ?)

3. Speaking

Talking about future plans

الحديث عن الخطط المستقبلية

- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.
- Tomorrow, I'm going to visit my aunt.

4. Related paragraphs

موضوعات هامة مرتبطة بالوحدة :

Model Paragraph 1

"Different jobs"

My uncle has got a very interesting job. He's an engineer. An engineer is a person who designs machines, engines and designs engines for planes. My sister is a businesswoman. She works in an office and goes to meetings. My brother is a pilot. A pilot is a person who flies a plane. My cousin is a photographer. He takes photos. He likes his job very much. My neighbour is a scientist. A scientist is a person who studies science.

Model Paragraph 2

"Marine biologist"

A marine biologist is a person who studies the plants and animals in the ocean. A marine biologist must be good at science and loves the ocean. The ocean is full of interesting animals and plants. A marine biologist sometimes goes around coral reefs and sometimes tests water from the ocean in the laboratory. This job needs working a lot of time on the computer and writing the results of the tests. His researches help to protect the plants and animals in the ocean.

Model Paragraph 3

"My future plans"

I have many plans for the future. I'll study hard to pass my exams. I'll do my best to go to university. I'm going to learn to drive and swim for a long distance. I want to get a good job in Egypt. If I have enough money, I'll travel around the world. If I find a nice girl, I'll get married. I want to learn how to play the guitar. I'm going to learn a new language. I'll buy a new car.

5. Writing Skills

* معالجة جديدة للفقرة الإنشائية :



Study

* ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة فقرة إنشائية مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Related Topics الموضوعات المرتبطة بالوحدة	Helpful Expressions تعبيرات مساعدة
1. Future plans	- My (فرد من العائلة) is a/an (وظيفة).
2. My father's job	- He / She (فعل + s).
3. Famous jobs	- He / She works in (مكان).
4. My dream job	- I want to be (وظيفة) like my (فرد من العائلة).
	- A/An (وظيفة) is someone who (فعل + s).
	- I'm good at (مادة دراسية).
	- I think this job is (صفة).
	- I'd like to be a/an (وظيفة) one day.
	- I'd like to be a/an (وظيفة) because (سبب).



Try

* حاول أن تكتب جملة على كل كلمة من الكلمات التالية باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة :

Helpful Words	Try to make a sentence
- writer	I'd like to be writer one day.
- uncle	....
- maths	....
- interesting	....
- hospital	....



Exercise

- Write a paragraph of EIGHTY 80 words on :

"Future plans"

....

....

Test on unit 12



تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Listening

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. What's your uncle's job ?
   a. A doctor b. An engineer c. A businessman d. A teacher
2. Where does your uncle work ?
   a. In a building b. In an office c. In a factory d. In a school
3. What does an engineer design ?
   a. Buildings b. Machines c. Engines d. b & c
4. Is an engineer's job interesting ?
   a. Yes, it is. b. No, it isn't.
   c. I don't know. d. Not in the text.

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A : What's your job ?
B : I'm a (1) ....
A : What does a marine biologist usually study ?
B : He usually studies the ocean and (2) .... in it.
A : (3) .... do you do every day ?
B : On some days, I go diving around the coral reefs.
A : (4) .... ?
B : To test water from the ocean in my laboratory.
A : Is it an (5) .... work ?
B : Yes, but sometimes the weather is terrible.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

People started making pottery thousands of years ago in Egypt. Some people make pottery in workshops or at their own homes. If you go to Fayoum, you will see many people making pottery. There is also a school where children and adults can learn the skill.

It is traditional to make jewellery in Kenya. You can see the colourful jewellery in markets all over the country. Today, some local businesses also use social media and the internet to sell jewellery to people in different countries. It is an important skill because **it** continues an old tradition and it helps local people to earn money.

It is an important part of Africa's culture to make baskets. It is also a way for women from small African villages to **earn** money. In Ghana, there are a lot of women who make and sell baskets. You can buy colourful baskets from Ghana in countries all over the world.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What are the countries mentioned in the text ?

....

3. Do you think hand-made objects are still wanted ? Why / Why not ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. tradition　　b. making jewellery
   c. Kenya　　d. internet
5. The underlined word "**earn**" means ....
   a. buy　　b. sell　　c. get　　d. spend
6. Making pottery, jewellery and baskets are all useful ....
   a. parts　　b. culture　　c. money　　d. skills

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Scientists work hard to find new .... for illnesses.
   a. drawings　　b. cures　　c. methods　　d. models
2. Students have to study hard in order to .... their exams.
   a. get　　b. pass　　c. learn　　d. give

3. SB What are your .... for the future ?
a. pans b. planets c. plants d. plans
4. When something is .... , it's very old.
a. clear b. modern c. traditional d. medium
5. I live with my family in a small .... on the second floor.
a. apartment b. house c. skyscraper d. department
6. My cousin goes .... around the coral reefs.
a. riding b. cycling c. diving d. driving
7. A/An .... is usually good at maths.
a. photographer b. dentist c. accountant d. architect
8. They aren't very careful, ... ?
a. are they b. they are c. aren't they d. weren't they
9. Hany and Sameer won't go to the beach, ... ?
a. are they b. will he c. won't they d. will they
10. She'll pass the driving test if she .... well.
a. don't drive b. drove c. drives d. doesn't drive

5 Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB If I pass the exams, I'd go to university. (....................)
2. Tomorrow, I think I'd visit my grandpa. (....................)
3. You won't arrive late, would you ? (....................)
4. WB A businessman is a man which works in an office. (....................)

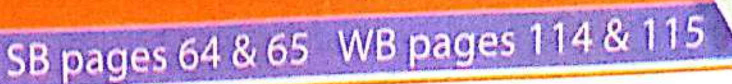
E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Traditional jobs in Africa"

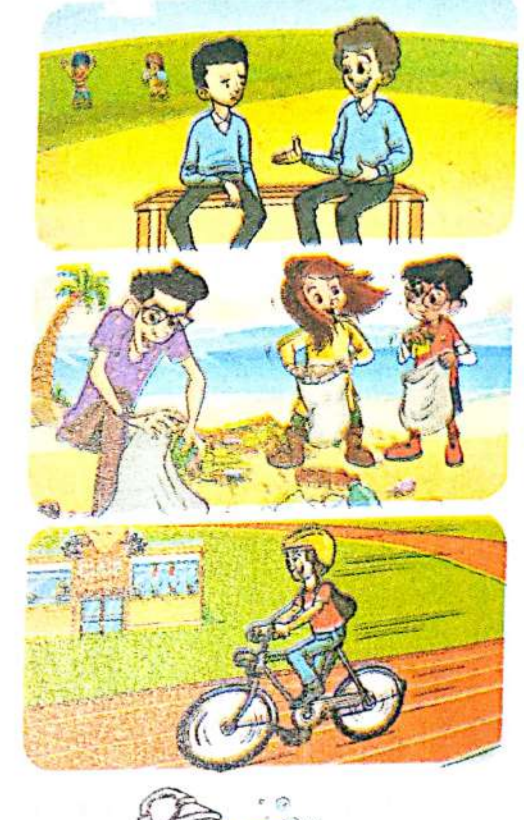
....
....
....
....
....




Review D

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115

Reading on Lesson 1 SB page 64



A : There was a film about the dangers[1] to our planet on TV yesterday. It was very sad. What can we do ?

B : We can help, can't we, Tarek ?

A : How ?

B : If we pick up[2] the rubbish[3] from the beach, the animals won't eat it.

We must walk or cycle when we can. I always ride my bike to the sports centre[4].

If we have shorter showers[5], we'll save[6] water.



You mustn't buy plastic bags. My shopping bag is made of cotton. I use it every day.



A : If we all do these things, we'll help to save our planet.

B : Thanks Ali ! I'll do all those things !

Check Vocabulary

(1) مخاطر | (2) يلتقط | (3) قمامة | (4) مركز رياضى | (5) دش قصير (باستخدام مياه أقل) | (6) يحافظ / يوفر

Listening on Lesson 2 SB page 65

Malak : Here are the boxes for the recycling project[1]. Different rubbish goes into different boxes.

Hala : Great! So which box does this bottle go into ?

Malak : What is it made of plastic or glass ?

Hala : It's made of plastic.

Malak : Ok, it goes into the yellow box.

Hala : Right ... There's another bottle here. This one is made of glass.

Malak : If it's made of glass, it goes into the blue box.

Hala : What about this magazine ? It's made of paper[2].

Malak : It goes into the red box.

Hala : Where can I put this can ?

Malak : If it's made of metal, it goes into the green box.

Hala : Yes, it's made of metal ... I'm putting it in the green box.

Malak : What's left ?

Hala : Just this T-shirt. We can't recycle that, can we ? It's made of cotton[3].

Malak : We're not going to recycle the clothes – but we can give them to other people so that they can use them. Put them in the orange box, please.

Hala : The orange box ... OK.

Malak : Great. Everything is ready[4].Thanks for your help, Hala.

Check Vocabulary

(1) مشروع تدوير المخلفات | (2) ورق | (3) قطن | (4) مستعد / جاهز

Reading on Lesson 1 WB page 114

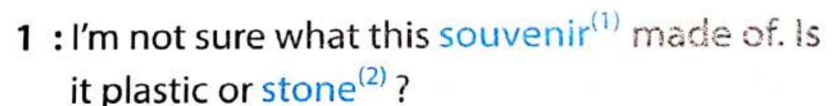
In the past, many people had traditional jobs[1] that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't they ?

For example, an aeronautical engineer[2] is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology[3], perhaps you will design drones[4]. Many people think that drones will carry our post[5] in the future. That will make the skies[6] above our cities interesting, won't it ?

Check Vocabulary

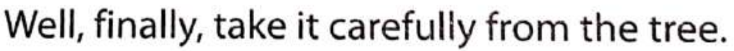
وظائف تقليدية (1)	مهندس طيران (2)	تكنولوجيا المستقبل (3)	طائرات بدون طيار (4)	البريد (5)	سماوات (6)

Listening on Lesson 2 WB page 114



1 : I'm not sure what this souvenir[1] made of. Is it plastic or stone[2] ?

2 : OK, first look for the fruit that is yellow.Then feel the fruit carefully[3]. It should not be too soft[4]. So, if it's yellow and not too soft, what should you do ?



Well, finally, take it carefully from the tree.

3 : Hello, so, it's Mrs Shabana, isn't it ? And you have got two children in this class, haven't you ? But Aya isn't in school today, is she ?

4 : Before I go to university[5], I think I'll travel for a few months. Then I'd like to work for a charity[6].



Check Vocabulary

هدية تذكارية (1)	حجر (2)	بحرص (3)	ناعم (4)	جامعة (5)	جمعية خيرية (6)

مراجعة عامة على Unit 10 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

cotton	قطن
glass	زجاج
leather	جلد
metal	معدن
plastic	بلاستيك
stone	حجر
wallet	محفظة
roof	سطح
taps	حنفيات
solar panels	ألواح شمسية
wind turbines	توربينات الرياح
earthquake	زلزال
robot	إنسان آلى
advantages	مميزات
wool	صوف
tablet	جهاز لوحى
bricks	طوب
oven	فرن
electric car	سيارة كهربائية
driverless cars	سيارات بدون سائق

Language

1- Describing materials :

What → is it / اسم مفرد → made of ?
What → are they / اسم جمع → made of ?

It is / They are made of المادة المصنوع منها الشئ

- What is the jumper made of ?
- It is made of wool.

2- will / won't for predictions :
استخدام will / won't للتنبؤ بما سيحدث فى المستقبل بـ :

Subj. (فاعل) → will / won't + inf. ....

- There will be electric cars in the future.
- We won't use landline telephones.
- Will we live on the moon ?
- Where will you live in the future.

Speaking

1. Saying what things are made of
   الحديث عن مما تصنع الأشياء
   - What is the sofa made of ?
   - It is made of leather.
   - What are the cushions made of ?
   - They are made of cotton.
2. Predicting the future
   التنبؤ بما سيحدث فى المستقبل
   - I think we will use driverless cars in 2050.
   - I disagree. I think we'll all use electric cars.

مراجعة عامة على Unit 11 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية
octopus	اخطبوط
jellyfish	قنديل البحر
stingray	سمك الراى اللاسع
turtle	سلحفاة
whale	حوت
ocean	محيط
sting	يلدغ
tail	ذيل
planet	كوكب
environment	البيئة
recycle	يعيد تدوير
nature reserve	محمية طبيعية
frighten	يخيف
rules	قواعد
local	محلى
soil	تربة زراعية
protect	يحمى
poisonous	سام
fisherman	صياد
skeleton	هيكل عظمى
seed	بذرة
respect	يحترم
throw away	يلقى بعيدًا
weak	ضعيف

Language

1- Zero conditional (If) الحالة الصفرية (If)

تستخدم للحديث عن أشياء ما تكون دائمًا صحيحة (حقائق).

If / When present simple (مضارع بسيط) , present simple (مضارع بسيط)

- If it rains, we get water.
- When it's late, I feel tired.

Present simple if / when present simple

- We get water if it rains.
- I feel tired when it's late.

2- must / musn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

تستخدم (must) للحديث عن الأشياء التى من الضرورى فعلها وتستخدم (mustn't) للحديث عن الأشياء المحظور فعلها أو غير المسموح بها.

- We must save our planet.
- We musn't throw rubbish in the ocean.

3- should / shouldn't + inf مصدر الفعل

تستخدم (should / shouldn't) للحديث عن أشياء من الجيد فعلها أو من الجيد تجنبها.

- He should study hard.
- He shouldn't be rude to his friends.

Speaking

Talking about saving the environment.

الحديث عن المحافظة على البيئة.

- We mustn't throw trash.
- We must clean our beaches.

Describing sea animals :

- The shark is very dangerous.
- The stingray is a big, flat fish.

مراجعة عامة على Unit 12 فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
accountant	محاسب
architect	مهندس معمارى
businessman	رجل أعمال
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال
scientist	عالم
photographer	مصور
engines	محركات
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية
prediction	تنبؤ
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
dentist	طبيب أسنان
writer	كاتب
engineer	مهندس
laboratory	معمل
jewellery	مجوهرات
colourful	ملون
illness	مرض
cure	علاج
machines	آلات

Language

1- Relative pronoun who

يستخدم ضمير الوصل (who) للربط بين جملتين الفاعل بهما عاقل.

- A marine biologist is a person who studies the ocean.

2- Question tag

نوع من الأسئلة يستخدم للتأكد من معلومة ويتكون من الفعل المساعد يليه ضمير فاعل ثم علامة الاستفهام (؟).

جملة خبرية مثبتة ⟶ سؤال مذيل منفى

- It's really important to look after our planet, isn't it ?

جملة خبرية منفية ⟶ سؤال مذيل مثبت

It isn't an easy question, is it ?

3- The first conditional (If) الحالة الأولى (If)

تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى (If) للحديث عن النتائج المحتملة لحدث معين.

If **present simple** (مضارع بسيط) , **will / won't** + **inf.**

- If I go to university, I'll study maths.
- If I don't study hard, I won't pass my exams.

Speaking

1. Describing and asking questions about jobs.
   وصف وتوجيه أسئلة عن الوظائف.

- Who is an architect ?

An architect is a person who designs buildings.

2. Talking about future plans
   الحديث عن خطط مستقبلية

- Tomorrow, I'm going to play a video game.
- Next year, I'm going to learn a new language.

General Exercises on Units 10 , 11 & 12

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان : يستمع الطالب إلى نص استماع من ٢٥ كلمة ويجيب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع من نهاية الكتاب)

1. Take rubbish with you when you ....
   a. travel b. arrive c. leave d. come
2. Rubbish is .... for animals.
   a. bad b. good c. useful d. healthy
3. Some animals think that .... is food.
   a. cotton b. wood c. metal d. plastic
4. Animals .... eat rubbish.
   a. must b. mustn't c. don't d. didn't

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان : يكمل الطالب محادثة بها خمس فراغات.

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Lama : I'd like to grow a tomato plant. What should I do first ?

Mariam : First, find a sunny (1) .... in the garden.

Lama : Do you mean a place under the sun ?

Mariam : Yes, that's right. Secondly, look at the ground. It must not have lots of stones or other plants in it.

Lama : Ok. What should I do after that ?

Mariam : Then, make a small (2) .... in the soil.

Lama : How deep must it be ?

Mariam : About 2cm. Next, put some water in the hole, so it is not too (3) ....

Lama : (4) .... I water it now ?

Mariam : Yes, you should. Finally, put the (5) .... in the hole and cover it with soil.

السؤال الثالث فى ورقة الامتحان : عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام وثلاثة اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال.

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In the past, many people had **traditional** jobs that people still do today. There were many teachers and bakers, for example. However, some jobs are quite new, aren't **they** ? For example, an aeronautical engineer is a person who designs things that fly. If you want to become an aeronautical engineer, you will have to study science. It is not an easy job, but it is very interesting. If you want to help future technology, perhaps you will design drones. Many people think that drones will carry our post in the future. That will make the skies above our cities interesting, won't it ?

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

2. What's your opinion about traditional jobs ?

....

3. How will our skies be interesting in the future ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. The word "**traditional**" means ....

a. new b. very old c. modern d. happy

5. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....

a. drones b. teachers c. people d. jobs

6. A drone is an example of ....

a. future technology b. future houses

c. past jobs d. past houses

السؤال الرابع فى ورقة الامتحان : يختـار الطالـب الإجابـة الصحيحة مـن ١٠ جمل (٧ جمـل مفردات لغوية + ٣ جمل قواعد لغوية) بها أربع خيارات لكل جملة.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I bought a new pair of shoes made of the best .... It is expensive.
   a. cotton b. leather c. metal d. wool
2. A .... is a machine designed to do things automatically and it is controlled by computer.
   a. robot b. turbine c. toy d. panel
3. A good work needs a good .... before it starts.
   a. plane b. job c. plant d. plan
4. A .... has a shell on its back.
   a. whale b. stingray c. turtle d. shark
5. WB To .... is to collect rubbish and make useful things with it in order to use it again.
   a. cycle b. recycle c. produce d. protect
6. We didn't see the dead animal but we saw its ....
   a. sketch b. skeleton c. height d. length
7. Scientists .... materials in the laboratory to know about them.
   a. list b. run c. test d. paste
8. The Ancient Egyptians .... electricity or televisions.
   a. had b. don't have c. have d. didn't have
9. You .... follow the rules of school or you'll be punished.
   a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. must
10. SB Samy is a photographer .... takes wonderful photos.
    a. which b. what c. where d. who

السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان : يقوم الطالب بتصحيح الكلمات التى تحتها خط فى أربع جمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية فقط.

5 A. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. The houses in many villages are made in bricks. (..............................)
2. WB If it rain , I'll take my umbrella. (..............................)
3. You will travel to London next week, can't you ? (..............................)
4. Whose is your father's job ? (..............................)

B. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. If we wanted to help environment, we keep it clean. (..............................)
2. SB A marine biologist is a person what studies sea animals. (..............................)
3. She made a wonderful dress for herself, don't she ? (..............................)
4. Students should waste their time. (..............................)

السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان : مطلوب من الطالب كتابة موضوع تعبير من ٧٠ : ٨٠ كلمة عن موضوع محدد مرتبط بكتاب الطالب.

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

"Predictions for the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....



Quick Look

Time Saving



SECOND TERM

مفكرة المعاصر
للصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Part 1 Vocabulary

Unit 7

Vocabulary

sports centre	مركز رياضى	pop	موسيقى البوب
haircut	قصة شعر	rock	موسيقى الروك
canteen	كانتين / مقصف	traditional	تقليدى
nervous	عصبى / متوتر	alone	وحيد / منفرد
really	حقًا	coconuts	جوز الهند
aquarium	متحف الأحياء المائية	sailor	بحار
bowling alley	صالة البولينج	sink	يغرق / يغوص
football stadium	إستاد كرة القدم	terrible	فظيع / مزعج
funfair	مدينة ملاهى	nearby	قريب / مجاور
planetarium	مرصد فلكى	jungle	غابة
classical	كلاسيكى	cave	كهف
jazz	موسيقى الجاز	museum	متحف
opera	الأوبرا		

Definitions

canteen	a dining room in an office, a building or a school	كانتين
nervous	worried or frightened about something	عصبى / متوتر

alone	without any other people	وحده / بمفرده
coconuts	large brown nuts	جوز الهند
aquarium	an indoor centre where you can look at sea animals and fish living in water	متحف الأحياء المائية
sailor	someone who works on a boat or a ship	بحار
sink	go down into water	يغرق / يغوص
terrible	very bad	مزعج / فظيع

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We decided to play basketball at the sports .... (WB page 117)
   a. match b. wheel c. funfair d. centre
2. We had lunch together in the school .... (SB page 4)
   a. canteen b. library c. laboratory d. music room
3. I had a/an .... two weeks ago at the barber's. (SB page 3)
   a. hair b. operation c. meal d. haircut
4. Yesterday, I went to my new school. I was quite .... because it was my first day. (SB page 4)
   a. expensive b. nervous c. dangerous d. funny
5. The pizza was .... good. (SB page 9)
   a. terrible b. well c. really d. real
6. I loved the fish, but I didn't see any whales at the .... (WB page 70)
   a. planetarium b. funfair
   c. garden d. aquarium
7. Let's go on the big wheel at the .... this weekend. (WB page 70)
   a. funfair b. museum c. stadium d. theatre

8. It was great at the .... Egypt won 2–0! *(WB page 70)*

a. cinema b. jungle c. opera d. stadium

9. We learnt a lot about the earth and the moon at the ....

a. shop b. bank *(WB page 70)*

c. planetarium d. aquarium

10. The balls are very heavy at the .... *(WB page 70)*

a. bowling alley b. tennis c. football d. volleyball

11. I like ...., but it's difficult to open them. *(WB page 73)*

a. bananas b. oranges c. peaches d. coconuts

12. My grandfather was a .... and visited countries all over the world. *(WB page 73)*

a. carpenter b. teacher c. sailor d. vet

13. Do you like working with others, or .... ? *(WB page 73)*

a. in a team b. alone c. with a group d. outside

14. When you put a stone in water, it .... *(WB page 76)*

a. thinks b. sinks c. floats d. thanks

15. I didn't like this story. It was really .... *(WB page 73)*

a. exciting b. amazing c. funny d. terrible

16. People first played .... music a long time ago. *(WB page 76)*

a. traditional b. modern c. new d. pop

17. .... is a very loud music. *(WB page 76)*

a. Classic b. Rock c. Pop d. Opera

Unit 8

Vocabulary

further	أبعد (مسافة)	wide	متسع
suspension bridge	كوبرى معلق	beautiful	جميل
sunset	غروب الشمس	treasures	كنوز
column	عمود	valuable	ذو قيمة
city	مدينة	guidebook	كتاب إرشادى
tower	برج	population	تعداد السكان
tunnel	نفق	view	منظر طبيعى
crowded	مزدحم	century	قرن (١٠٠ سنة)
empty	فارغ	entrance	مدخل
low	منخفض	deep	عميق
narrow	ضيق	amazing	مدهش
noisy	صاخب	achievement	إنجاز

definitions

cheap	not expensive	رخيص
wide	measuring something from one side to the other	متسع
safe	not dangerous	آمن
noisy	not quiet	صاخب
deep	measuring water from the top to the bottom	عميق

Opposites

Word الكلمة		Opposite العكس	
beautiful	جميل	ugly	قبيح المنظر
expensive	غالى الثمن	cheap	رخيص
high	مرتفع	low	منخفض
modern	حديث	old	قديم
quiet	هادئ	noisy	صاخب
safe	آمن	dangerous	خطير
tall	طويل	short	قصير
full	مملوء	empty	فارغ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The Tahya Masr .... goes over the Nile in Cairo. *(WB page 77)*
   a. Street b. Bridge c. Library d. High Dam
2. The Cairo .... is the tallest building in Egypt. *(WB page 77)*
   a. Station b. Tower c. Museum d. Citadel
3. Assiut is not a very big .... *(WB page 77)*
   a. village b. country c. river d. city
4. The Channel .... goes under the sea between England and France. *(WB page 77)*
   a. Tunnel b. Bridge c. Cave d. Jungle
5. We need to buy some water. This bottle is .... *(WB page 78)*
   a. full b. bright c. empty d. expensive
6. Be careful, don't hit your head on the door. It's very .... *(WB page 78)*
   a. low b. high
   c. noisy d. cheap
7. Only people and bikes can go down that road because it's very .... *(WB page 78)*
   a. narrow b. wide c. easy d. big

8. The teacher was angry because all the students were very .... *(WB page 78)*

a. tall b. happy c. quiet d. noisy

9. The market is always very busy at this time. Don't go now or it will be very .... *(WB page 78)*

a. free b. crowded c. empty d. open

10. We can't swim across the river here because it's very .... *(WB page 78)*

a. old b. short
c. wide d. long

11. I think the most .... sport is mountain climbing. *(WB page 79)*

a. dangerous b. safe c. easy d. cheap

12. We want to swim in the river, but how .... is it ? *(WB page 83)*

a. much b. noisy c. deep d. old

13. The hotel looks very nice, but how .... is it ? *(WB page 83)*

a. long b. much c. many d. cheap

14. The children want to go into the jungle, but how .... is it ? *(WB page 83)*

a. safe b. old c. tall d. long

15. Which pyramid is .... from the centre of Cairo ? *(SB page 14)*

a. wider b. different c. further d. nearer

16. .... is the time when the sun disappears from the sky at the end of the day. *(WB page 122)*

a. Sunset b. Sunrise c. Sunlight d. Sunshine

17. .... is a tall structure that holds up part of a building. *(WB page 122)*

a. Done b. Column
c. Calendar d. Aquarium

Unit 9

Vocabulary

diving	رياضة الغوص	snow	ثلج
kayaking	تجديف بالزورق	snowy	ثلجى
mountain biking	ركوب الدراجات الجبلية	storm	عاصفة
rock climbing	رياضة تسلق الصخور	stormy	عاصف
trekking	رحلة طويلة شاقة غالبًا ما تكون سيرًا على الأقدام	fog	ضباب
windsurfing	التزلج على الماء	foggy	مغطى بالضباب
zip lining	الانزلاق بالحبل	challenge	تحدى
tent	خيمة	railway line	خط السكة الحديد
rain	مطر	sailing	الإبحار
rainy	ممطر	adventure	مغامرة
sun	الشمس	guide	مرشد سياحى
sunny	مشمس	journey	رحلة (طويلة)
cloud	سحابة	plane	طائرة
cloudy	ملبد بالسحب	ship	سفينة
wind	رياح	train	قطار
windy	عاصف / شديد الرياح	frightened	خائف

Definitions

guide	a person who shows a place to tourists	مرشد سياحى
journey	a long trip from one place to another	رحلة (طويلة)
adventure	an exciting experience when something unusual or dangerous happens	مغامرة
tent	something you sleep in when you go camping	خيمة
railway line	the metal that a train travels on	خط سكة حديد
challenge	a difficult task or problem	تحدى

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can't go .... today because there's no wind. *(WB page 84)*
   a. climbing b. windsurfing c. biking d. shopping
2. All you need to go .... is a boat. *(WB page 84)*
   a. sailing b. diving c. climbing d. trekking
3. I love .... because I'm good at swimming under the water.
   a. windsurfing b. diving *(WB page 84)*
   c. sailing d. climbing
4. When you go .... you start really high, but you finish on the ground. *(WB page 84)*
   a. swimming b. riding c. sailing d. zip lining
5. We sometimes go .... for two days or more across the desert.
   a. diving b. trekking *(WB page 84)*
   c. sailing d. wind surfing
6. We want to have a .... to show us the market, because they know the best places to shop. *(WB page 85)*
   a. sailor b. teacher c. tourist d. guide
7. I love waking up in a .... and hearing the birds sing when I camp. *(WB page 85)*
   a. tent b. hotel c. house d. museum
8. They took two days to cross the desert. It was a difficult ....
   a. voyage b. journey *(WB page 85)*
   c. flight d. prize
9. I'm going to go trekking across Sinai. It's going to be a big ....
   a. term b. party *(SB page 24)*
   c. adventure d. novel



Unit 10

Vocabulary

cotton	قطن	drone	طائرة بدون طيار
glass	زجاج	electric car	سيارة كهربائية
leather	جلد	robot	انسان آلى
metal	معدن	solar panels	الواح شمسية
plastic	بلاستيك	wind turbine	توربينات الرياح
stone	حجر	cool	منعش / مائل للبرودة
wood	خشب	earthquake	زلزال
wool	صوف	space	فضاء / فراغ
bricks	طوب	warm	دافئ
roof	سطح (مبنى)	circle	دائرة
oven	فرن	rectangle	مستطيل
tap	حنفية	round	دائرى
driverless car	سيارة بدون سائق	triangle	مثلث
sign	علامة / إشارة	triangular	مثلث الشكل
electricity	كهرباء		

Definitions

tap	you can turn this to get water	حنفية
roof	this is on the top of a house	سطح
bricks	you can use these to build a wall	طوب
oven	you use this to cook food or bread	فرن
solar panels	we put them on a roof. They produce electricity using the sun	الواح شمسية
electricity	we can use the sun or the wind to produce this	كهرباء

robots	these machines can do many things for us. Some of them can talk إنسان آلى
drone	this machine can fly, but it doesn't have a pilot طائرة بدون طيار
wind turbines	they use the wind to produce electricity توربينات الرياح
electric car	it doesn't use petrol سيارة كهربائية

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. A car door is made of .... (WB page 93)

   a. glass b. leather c. wood d. metal

2. Car windows are made of .... (WB page 93)

   a. glass b. cotton c. wool d. leather

3. Expensive car seats are made of .... (WB page 93)

   a. wood b. wool c. leather d. cotton

4. It was hot outside, but it was nice and .... in my bedroom. (WB page 96)

   a. hot b. cold
   c. rainy d. cool

5. My mother wants to buy a new sofa, but I don't think we have .... for it in our living room. (WB page 96)

   a. money b. space c. free d. cotton

6. My aunt made us some bread and we ate it, it was still .... (WB page 96)

   a. wet b. warm
   c. cool d. cold

7. Some houses fell to the ground after the .... (WB page 96)

   a. journey b. earthquake c. adventure d. trip

8. .... will do some of the jobs that people do today. *(SB page 62)*

a. Animals b. Birds c. Robots d. Rabbits

9. .... is the material from the skins of animals, used to make shoes and bags. *(WB page 121)*

a. Leather b. Wood c. Metal d. Wool

10. In the future, the gardens will be on the .... *(SB page 38)*

a. room b. tower c. roof d. floor

11. Most windows are made of .... *(P.T.)*

a. wool b. glass c. cotton d. paper

Unit 11

Vocabulary

coral reef	شعب مرجانية	planet	كوكب
flat	مُسطح	recycle	يعيد تدوير
jellyfish	قنديل البحر	rubbish	قمامة
ocean	محيط	throw away	يرمى بعيدًا
octopus	أخطبوط	fisherman	صياد سمك
poisonous	سام	respect	يحترم
shark	سمك القرش	skeleton	هيكل عظمى
shell	صدفة - قوقعة	worried	قلِق
stingray	سمك الراى اللاسع	cover	يغطى
sting	يلسع	ground	أرض
turtle	سلحفاة	hole	فتحة / ثقب
whale	حوت	seed	بذرة
environment	البيئة	soil	تربة
fishing line	صنارة (لصيد السمك)	weak	ضعيف

Definitions

stingray	it can sting you	سمك الراى اللاسع
octopus	it has eight legs	اخطبوط
turtle	it has a hard shell to protect it	سلحفاة
jellyfish	a poisonous sea animal	قنديل البحر
ground	the top part of the earth, where we stand	الأرض
soil	what plants grow in	تربة
hole	an empty space in something	فتحة / ثقب
cover	put something over something else to protect or hide it	يغطى
seed	a small, hard thing made by plants, which grows into new plants	بذرة

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Don't throw away those glass bottles. We can .... them.

a. recycle b. cook *(WB page 101)*
c. cycle d. bake

2. Trees are very good for our .... because they give us clean air.

a. excitement b. improvement *(WB page 101)*
c. environment d. equipment

3. Earth is one of eight .... that go around the sun. *(WB page 101)*

a. stars b. planets c. plants d. circles

4. We don't need that dirty piece of paper. You can put it with the .... *(WB page 101)*

a. notebooks b. books c. library d. rubbish

5. A lot of .... catch fish from the Red Sea. *(WB page 104)*

a. fishermen b. doctors c. policemen d. soldiers

6. My grandmother is 65 and knows a lot! We all .... what she says. *(WB page 104)*

a. cover b. respect c. collect d. recycle

7. Ahmed lost his phone, so his mother was .... when he didn't phone her. *(WB page 104)*

a. weak b. happy c. pleased d. worried

8. Judy felt very .... after she was ill, but she is better now. *(WB page 104)*

a. pleased b. weak c. strong d. happy

9. In the museum, we saw a .... of a very old animal. Its bones were very big. *(WB page 104)*

a. map b. plant c. skeleton d. line

10. The shark is one of the most dangerous animals in the .... *(SB page 45)*

a. pond b. ocean c. lake d. river

11. A .... is poisonous. It stings you when you touch it. *(SB page 45)*

a. jellyfish b. shark c. turtle d. whale

12. When a .... is in danger, it goes into its shell. *(SB page 45)*

a. seed b. coral reef c. shark d. turtle

13. If a .... loses a tooth, it grows a new one. *(SB page 45)*

a. turtle b. shark c. whale d. jellyfish

14. You can usually .... paper, so don't throw it away. *(P.T.)*

a. recycle b. cycle c. heat d. hit

Unit 12

Vocabulary

accountant	محاسب	ocean	محيط
architect	مهندس معمارى	test	اختبار
businessman	رجل أعمال	buy an apartment	يشترى شقة
businesswoman	سيدة أعمال	get a job	يحصل على وظيفة
computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	get married	يتزوج
dentist	طبيب أسنان	go to university	يذهب للجامعة
engineer	مهندس	have children	لديه / لديها أطفال
engine	محرك	learn to drive	يتعلم قيادة سيارة
machine	آلة	pass exams	يجتاز اختبارات
photographer	مصور	travel	يسافر
scientist	عالم	app	تطبيق (على الهاتف)
writer	كاتب	countryside	الريف
laboratory	معمل علوم	design	يصمم
marine biologist	عالم أحياء مائية	cure	علاج
culture	ثقافة	illness	مرض
earn	يربح / يكسب (مال)	pilot	طيار
jewellery	مجوهرات	adult	بالغ
workshop	ورشة	pottery	صناعة الفخار (الخزف)
result	نتيجة	skill	مهارة
terrible	فظيع		

Definitions

accountant	works with money and numbers	محاسب
businessman / businesswoman	works in business	رجل أعمال / سيدة أعمال
dentist	looks after people's teeth	طبيب أسنان
scientist	works in science	عالم
architect	designs buildings	مهندس معمارى
engineer	designs machines and engines	مهندس
pilot	flies a plane	طيار
earn	get money by working	يربح / يكسب (مالًا)
jewellery	things such as rings and necklaces that you wear	مجوهرات
adult	a fully grown person	بالغ (شخص)
workshop	a room or small building where people make or repair things	ورشة
skill	an ability to do something well	مهارة
culture	the art, ideas, beliefs, ... etc. of a group of people	ثقافة
pottery	pots, dishes ... etc. made from clay	الفخار (الخزف)
countryside	an area that's outside a town or a city	الريف

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I didn't like the book. I thought it was .... *(WB page 108)*

   a. funny b. terrible c. wonderful d. exciting

2. Mariam got the .... of her test. She did very well ! *(WB page 108)*

   a. turn b. reason c. cause d. result

3. I love learning about sea life. I want to be a/an ....

a. artist b. marine biologist (WB page 108)
c. engineer d. teacher

4. A/An .... is bigger than a sea. (WB page 108)

a. ocean b. pond c. river d. lake

5. The scientist did a lot of tests in the .... (WB page 108)

a. playground b. stadium c. laboratory d. library

6. You need a lot of .... to make a beautiful basket. (WB page 110)

a. necklaces b. rings c. skulls d. skills

7. The shop had a lot of cups, plates and other .... (WB page 110)

a. pottery b. leather c. wood d. straw

8. You can see people making baskets in the .... down the road. (WB page 110)

a. workshop b. hospital c. hotel d. school

9. My cousin is a/an .... now. She was 18 last week ! (WB page 110)

a. baby b. child c. adult d. kid

10. Doctors can usually .... a lot of money. (WB page 110)

a. score b. win c. pay d. earn

11. Tourists learn a lot about ancient Egyptian .... when they visit Egypt. (WB page 110)

a. furniture b. culture c. future d. picture

12. My father bought this .... for my mother when they got married. *(WB page 110)*

 a. sandwich b. meal c. food d. jewellery

13. A/An .... is something on your phone that helps you use maps, book tickets, ... etc. *(WB page 111)*

 a. app b. map c. tap d. tape

14. To .... is when you draw something that you plan to build or make. *(WB page 111)*

 a. cycle b. recycle c. design d. build

Part 2 Structures



Unit 7

Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

تستخدم هذه التعبيرات لمعرفة توقيت حدوث شئ ما فى الماضى

in the past	فى الماضى	in 1997	فى عام ١٩٩٧
yesterday	أمس	in October	فى شهر أكتوبر
this morning	هذا الصباح		

last	year	السنة الماضية	an hour ago	منذ ساعة
	month	الشهر الماضى	three days ago	منذ ثلاثة أيام
	week	الأسبوع الماضى	six months ago	منذ ستة شهور
	Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضى	four years ago	منذ أربع سنوات

Examples :

- Yesterday, our family moved to our new house in Alexandria.
- This morning, Mum and I went shopping to buy a new school uniform for me.
- Ziad watched a football match last weekend.

Yes / No Questions السؤال بـ«هل» فى زمن الماضى.

Questions	Answers
Did you visit your uncle yesterday ?	- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.
Were you at the club last week ?	- Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't.
Was Mona tired a week ago ?	- Yes, she was. - No, she wasn't.

Wh. Questions

السؤال بكلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضي.

Questions	Answers
What did you do at the weekend ?	I visited the zoo.
How long did it take ?	Five hours.
Who came with you ?	My Friends.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. It was my birthday .... Saturday. (SB page 3)
   a. next b. ago c. last d. in
2. I .... a haircut two weeks ago. (SB page 3)
   a. have b. had c. has d. have had
3. I .... bowling last weekend. (SB page 2)
   a. go b. goes c. have gone d. went
4. He .... the bus to the city last Sunday. (WB page 71)
   a. takes b. take c. took d. has taken
5. They .... sports centre two weeks ago. (WB page 71)
   a. visited b. visits c. had visited d. visit
6. .... you go to the park ? -Yes, I did. (SB page 7)
   a. Have b. Did c. Do d. Were
7. .... did you go to the museum ? - Four days ago. (SB page 7)
   a. How b. What c. When d. Why
8. .... do you go to school ? -At 7 : 00 a.m (WB page 72)
   a. Where b. Haw c. What time d. Why

9. .... taller than your brothers and sisters ? (WB page 72)

a. Are you b. Did you c. Is she d. Is he

10. .... go shopping last weekend ? (WB page 72)

a. Are you b. Do you c. Have you d. Did you

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I ride the big wheel last weekend. (SB page 2) (...............................)
2. I went to the museum a week past. (SB page 3) (...............................)
3. Yesterday, It were my friend Dalia's birthday. (WB page 71) (...............................)
4. Do you go to the park yesterday ? (SB page 7) (...............................)
5. Are you speak French ? (WB page 72) (...............................)

Unit 8

Comparative adjectives صفات المقارنة

Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	Long adjectives الصفات الطويلة
الصفة + er + than	more / less + الصفة + than
- Toka is taller than Rokaya.	- Maths is more difficult than English.

* هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند المقارنة بين اثنين :

Adjective	Comparative مقارنة بين اثنين
good	better than
bad	worse than

ex.: - The Nile River is longer than the Amazon.

- Cairo is more crowded than Aswan.
- The weather today is better than yesterday.

Superlative adjectives	صفات التفضيل
Short adjectives الصفات القصيرة	**Long adjectives** الصفات الطويلة
the + الصفة + est	**the most / the least + الصفة**
- Salma is the shortest girl in class.	- Mona is the most beautiful girl in our school.

* هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة (تحفظ كما هى) عند التفضيل :

Adjective	Superlative (التفضيل) مقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين
good	the best
bad	the worst

ex.: - Salwa is the cleverest girl in the class.
- Maths is the most difficult subject.
- Amr Diab is the best singer.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB My friend lives .... to the school than me. *(page 15)*
   a. nearest b. near c. nearer d. as near
2. WB Cheese is .... for you than sweets. *(page 78)*
   a. good b. as good c. better d. best
3. WB I think the blue dress is .... than the red dress. *(page 78)*
   a. nice b. nicer c. nicest d. the nicest
4. WB The museum is usually .... crowded on Saturday than on Sunday. *(page 78)*
   a. more b. many c. the most d. most

5. WB My cousins felt .... after they moved to a new flat.

a. happier b. happiest (page 78)

c. more happier d. most happiest

6. SB Mountain climbing is .... dangerous sport of all. (page 17)

a. the b. the most c. more d. less

7. SB My sister is the .... in our family (page 17)

a. tallest b. tall c. taller d. as tall

8. SB Some people think that maths is the .... difficult subject.

(page 17)

a. more b. less c. as d. most

9. WB Vegetables are the .... food. (page 79)

a. healthy b. healthier c. healthiest d. less healthy

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB An elephant is <u>big</u> than a camel. (page 78) (..................................)

2. WB Adel is <u>tall</u> than Rami. (page 78) (..................................)

3. SB Cairo is <u>crowded</u> than Aswan. (page 15) (..................................)

4. WB The local markets are the <u>noisy</u> places.

(page 79) (..................................)

5. WB I think going to the museum is the <u>good</u> place for a holiday.

(page 79) (..................................)

Unit 9

(be) going to : التعبير عن المستقبل باستخدام

Formation : التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements : ١) فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

I	→	am	
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد غائب	→	is	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→	are	

ex.: I'm going to go sailing.

ex.: They are going to try zip lining.

2 Negative Statements : ٢) فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex.: We aren't going to try windsurfing.

3 Interrogative : ٣) فى صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No questions : السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex.: Is he going to go kayaking ? - Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Key words :

- tomorrow غدا
- this afternoon فى هذه الظهيرة
- next (week, year, ...) (الأسبوع القادم، السنة القادمة ....)
- this evening هذا المساء

Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

Usage : الاستخدام

We use reflexive pronouns when the subject and object of a sentence are the same.

نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول فى الجملة.

Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس	Subject الفاعل	Reflexive pronoun الضمير المنعكس
I أنا	myself بنفسى	You أنت/أنتِ	yourself بنفسك/بنفسكِ
He هو	himself بنفسه	You أنتم/أنتن	yourselves بأنفسكم/بأنفسكن
She هى	herself بنفسها	We نحن	ourselves بأنفسنا
It هو/هى لغير العاقل	itself بنفسه/بنفسها لغير العاقل	They هم/هن	themselves بأنفسهم /بأنفسهن

Examples : I made myself some salad for lunch.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB We .... going to go diving. *(page 23)*
   a. am b. do c. are d. is
2. SB I am going to .... Sinai. *(page 23)*
   a. visits b. visit c. visited d. visiting
3. SB Is she .... go trekking this afternoon ? *(page 23)*
   a. go b. going c. goes d. going to
4. WB Who is going to cook your meal .... ? *(page 84)*
   a. last week b. yesterday c. this evening d. a week ago

5. WB No, I .... I'm going to walk. (page 84)

a. am b. isn't c. am not d. aren't

6. SB We enjoyed .... when we went sailing. (page 27)

a. myself b. herself c. yourselves d. ourselves

7. SB Would you like to make .... a cup of tea ? (page 27)

a. yourself b. itself c. ourselves d. themselves

8. SB He put on a hat to protect .... (page 27)

a. himself b. herself c. themselves d. itself

9. WB The birds sleep in caves to protect .... (page 86)

a. themselves b. ourselves c. yourselves d. itself

10. WB My sister and I like taking photos of .... (page 86)

a. myself b. ourselves c. themselves d. herself

2. Read and correct the underlined words in these sentences :

1. WB What are you going to wears tomorrow ? (page 84) (........................)

2. WB Are you going to do your homework last evening ? (page 84) (........................)

3. SB Ahmed are going to go trekking next year. (page 24) (........................)

4. WB Sara has a jacket to keep myself warm. (page 86) (........................)

5. WB They made the cake myself. (page 86) (........................)



Describing materials :

We use is or are + made of to describe the material of an object.

- تستخدم (is / are + made of) لوصف المادة التى صنعت منها الأشياء.

المادة الخام المصنوع منها الشئ **+ v. to be + made of +** (المفعول) الشئ المصنوع

- تستخدم للتعبير عن المادة التى صنع منها شئ وشكل المادة الخام يتغير بعد التصنيع.

- The ball is made of plastic.
- The desk is made of wood.

Question : السؤال عن المادة التى صنعت منها الأشياء :



(المفرد) – What is the sofa made of ?
– It is made of leather.

(الجمع) – What are the cushions made of ?
– They are made of cotton.

Formation : التكوين المستقبل باستخدام (will) :

1 Affirmative Statements : ١) فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + will + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex.: There will be electric cars in the future.

2 Negative Statements : ٢) فى الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + will not / won't + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

ex.: People won't go to the beach.

3 Interrogative :
٣) فى صيغة الاستفهام :

A) Yes / No questions :
أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

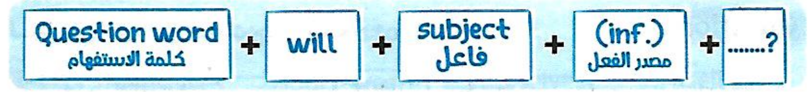


ex.: – Will there be electric cars in the future ?

– Yes, there will.

– No, there won't.

B) Wh-questions :
ب) السؤال بكلمة استفهام :



ex.: Where will people go on holiday ?

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB The cushions are .... of cotton. *(page 35)*
   a. make b. made c. making d. makes
2. SB What .... your bag made of ? *(page 35)*
   a. are b. am c. is d. were
3. SB The table is made .... wood. *(page 32)*
   a. of b. in c. into d. on
4. WB A car door .... made of metal. *(page 93)*
   a. is b. were c. are d. did
5. WB Expensive car seats .... of leather. *(page 93)*
   a. make b. are made c. are making d. made

6. SB We will .... to the moon in the future. *(page 38)*

a. go b. going c. gone d. goes

7. SB .... there be ordinary mobiles in the future ? *(page 38)*

a. Is b. Have c. Will d. Are

8. WB What will they .... there ? *(page 95)*

a. did b. doing c. do d. does

9. SB Will there be electric cars in the future ?

- Yes, there .... *(page 38)*

a. won't b. was c. is d. will

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. SB There was be a swimming pool soon. *(page 38)* (........................)
2. SB It will been made of wood. *(page 38)* (........................)
3. SB No, we will. We will use land telephones. *(page 38)* (........................)
4. SB What's your pencil case make of ? *(page 35)* (........................)
5. WB They are making of stone. *(page 99)* (........................)

Unit 11

1. Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

Statement الجملة الخبرية

If إذا / when عندما + مضارع بسيط + , + مضارع بسيط

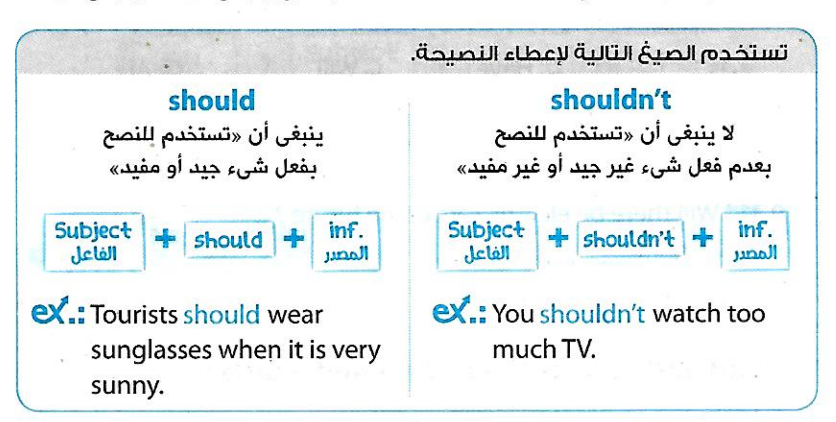
- If / When you boil water, you get steam.

= You get steam if / when you boil water.

تستخدم الحالة الصفرية If للتعبير عن الحقائق.

2. Giving advice using "should & shouldn't"

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام (should & shouldn't) بمعنى ينبغى أن / لا ينبغى أن



تستخدم الصيغ التالية لإعطاء النصيحة.

should

ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بفعل شىء جيد أو مفيد»

Subject الفاعل + should + inf. المصدر

ex.: Tourists should wear sunglasses when it is very sunny.

shouldn't

لا ينبغى أن «تستخدم للنصح بعدم فعل شىء غير جيد أو غير مفيد»

Subject الفاعل + shouldn't + inf. المصدر

ex.: You shouldn't watch too much TV.

- We shouldn't use plastic bags just once.

3. must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

We use must / mustn't + infinitive without "to" to say that something is important to do or important not to do.

نستخدم (**must / mustn't**) عندما نريد أن نقول أن من المهم القيام أو عدم القيام بشئ ما.

ex.: - We must save our planet.

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB If you touch a jellyfish, it .... you. (Page 45)

   a. sting b. stings c. stung d. stinging

2. SB The octopus swims away fast .... it's in danger. (Page 45)

   a. what b. where c. how d. when

3. WB When I .... ill, I go to bed. (Page 100)
   a. feel b. feeling c. feels d. felt
4. WB If my sister .... a lot of TV, she feels tired. (Page 100)
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. watched
5. WB If I don't water the plants in our garden, they .... (Page 100)
   a. died b. dying c. die d. dies
6. SB We .... play games on roads. (Page 47)
   a. must b. should c. mustn't d. have to
7. SB You .... share your ideas with others. (Page 49)
   a. can't b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't
8. SB We .... be angry with people you don't agree with. (Page 49)
   a. mustn't b. must c. should d. can
9. WB When you cross a road, you .... find a safe place to cross. (Page 101)
   a. shouldn't b. must c. mustn't d. can't
10. WB You mustn't run across the road. You .... walk. (Page 101)
   a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. can d. must

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

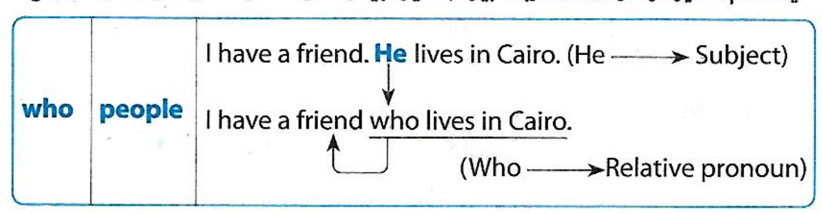
1. WB When it <u>be</u> very cold, water turns to ice. (Page 100)
   (....................................)
2. WB When my grandfather is tired, he <u>went</u> to bed. (Page 100)
   (....................................)
3. SB We <u>must</u> make a lot of noise. (Page 48)
   (....................................)
4. SB The animals <u>shouldn't</u> eat plastic. It is very bad for them.
   (Page 48) (....................................)
5. SB We <u>should</u> use plastic bags just one.
   (Page 47) (....................................)

Part 2

Unit 12

1. The relative pronouns "Who" :

- يستخدم ضمير الوصل who للربط بين جملتين ويحل محل الفاعل العاقل سواء مفرد أو جمع.



who	people	I have a friend. He lives in Cairo. (He → Subject) I have a friend who lives in Cairo. (Who → Relative pronoun)

- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل كفاعل يجب استخدام الفعل المناسب.

ex.: - I have a friend who lives in Cairo. (The friend lives in Cairo).
- I have friends who live in Cairo. (The friends live in Cairo).

2. Question Tag :

We use question tag to check information (so we expect people to agree). The voice goes down at the end of the question.

السؤال المذيل :

- هو سؤال قصير مختصر بمعنى «أليس كذلك ؟» يأتى فى نهاية الجملة لتأكيد معناها. وينخفض الصوت فى نهاية السؤال.

يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

جملة خبرية , فعل مساعد + ضمير فاعل ?

(١) عند وجود فعل مساعد فى الجملة الخبرية يتم تكوين السؤال المذيل كالآتى :

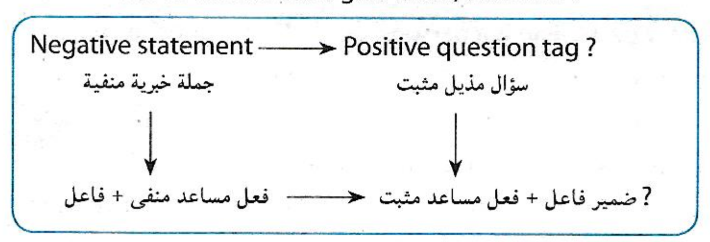
Positive statement → Negative question tag ?

جملة خبرية مثبتة → سؤال مذيل منفى

فعل مساعد مثبت + فاعل → ضمير فاعل + فعل مساعد منفى ?

Examples :

- He will write to me when he gets there, won't he ?



Examples :

- You won't forget to phone me, will you ?

– أى أنه يتم تغيير حالة الفعل المساعد من الإثبات إلى النفى أو من النفى إلى الإثبات كالآتى :

الفعل المساعد المثبت		الفعل المساعد المنفى
will - can	⟷	won't - can't

– لاحظ أن (V. To Be) سواء كان فعل أساسيًا أو مساعدًا فى الجملة يستخدم كالتالى :

is - are - was - were → isn't - aren't / wasn't - weren't

– لاحظ : وجود never فى الجملة يفيد النفى

ex.: - She never speaks English, does she ?

Exercises

1. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB A pilot is a person .... flies a plane. *(Page 55)*
   a. who b. where c. when d. which
2. SB A photographer is a person .... takes photos. *(Page 55)*
   a. which b. whose c. when d. who
3. SB A teacher is a person .... teaches students. *(Page 55)*
   a. which b. whose c. who d. when

4. WB Hany is the boy .... lives next door to me. (Page 107)

a. which b. where c. who d. when

5. WB My best friend is a person .... is very good at sport. (Page 107)

a. where b. which

c. when d. who

6. WB She wants to be a marine biologist, ... she ? (Page 108)

a. does b. isn't c. don't d. doesn't

7. WB Your name is Nawal, ... it ? (Page 108)

a. aren't b. isn't c. can't d. is

8. WB There weren't many people at the match, ... there ? (Page 108)

a. weren't b. aren't c. were d. is

9. SB You don't like fish, ... you ? (Page 57)

a. don't b. does c. have d. do

10. SB You won't forget to phone me, ... you ? (Page 57)

a. will b. are c. can d. do

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. WB Mohamed Salah is a footballer <u>when</u> scores a lot of goals.

(Page 107) (....................................)

2. WB Mr Gamal is the teacher <u>where</u> teaches us maths.

(Page 107) (....................................)

3. WB It is cold in England, <u>is</u> it ? (Page 108) (....................................)

4. WB Your grandfather lived in a big city, <u>doesn't</u> he ?

(Page 108) (....................................)

5. WB She never speaks French, <u>doesn't</u> she ?

(Page 108) (....................................)

Part 3 Language Functions

Unit 7

Speaking

1. Talking about your weekend. التحدث عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.





Questions	Answers
• How was your weekend ? كيف كانت عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟ • What happened ? ماذا حدث ؟	- It was terrible. - كانت سيئة. - I dropped my mobile phone and it broke. - أسقطت هاتفى الجوال وكُسر. - It was great. - كانت رائعة. - I went to the theatre and enjoyed a wonderful play. - ذهبت إلى المسرح واستمتعت بمسرحية رائعة.

2. Discussing types of music. الحديث عن أنواع الموسيقى.




Questions	Answers
• What type of music do you like ? ما نوع الموسيقى التى تحبها ؟	- Traditional / Classical / Pop / Jazz / Rock - الموسيقى التقليدية / الكلاسيكية / البوب / الجاز / الروك.
• Do you like ...(نوع الموسيقى)... music ? هل تحب ...(نوع)... الموسيقى ؟	- Yes, I do. نعم أحبها - No, I don't. لا، لا أحبها
• When did you learn to play the piano / drum ... ? متى تعلمت عزف البيانو / الطبلة ... ؟	- At ...(time)... . - فى ...(وقت)... . - When I was .... - عندما كنت ....

Unit 8

Speaking

1. Talking about measurements. التحدث عن وحدات القياس.

Questions 	Answers 
• What do you know about the old Egyptian Museum ? ماذا تعرف عن المتحف المصرى القديم ؟	- It opened in 1835. - تم افتتاحه عام ١٨٣٥. - There were more than 160.000 of Egypt's most valuable treasures. - كان يوجد به أكثر من ١٦٠.٠٠٠ من أكثر الكنوز القيمة فى مصر. - It didn't have space for 100.000 other objects. - لم يكن به مكان (مساحة) لـ ١٠٠.٠٠٠ شىء آخر.
• How old is the Luxor Temple ? كم عمر معبد الأقصر ؟ • How wide is the road ? كم اتساع الطريق ؟	- It's (number).......... . - يبلغ عمره (رقم)......... سنوات. - It's (number).......... meters wide. - يبلغ (رقم)......... متر.
• Which house has the most / least people ? أى منزل لديه العدد الأكثر / الأقل من الأشخاص ؟	- It's .... - إنه منزل ....

Use "just under", "more than" & "about" :

1. The Cairo Alexandria desert road is (رقم)................ km long.
2. Abraj Al-Bait clock Tower in Saudi Arabia is (رقم)................ m.
3. The Luxor Temple is just under (رقم)................ years old.

2. Making comparisons.

Questions 	Answers 
1. Which pyramid is taller, the Great Pyramid of Giza or the Red Pyramid ? أى هرم هو الأطول، الهرم الأكبر أم الهرم الأحمر ؟	- I think the Great Pyramid of Giza is taller. - أعتقد أن الهرم الأكبر بالجيزة هو الأطول.
2. Which museum is bigger, the Egyptian museum or the Grand Egyptian museum ? أى متحف هو الأكبر، المتحف المصرى أم المتحف المصرى الكبير ؟	- I think Grand Egyptian museum is bigger. - أعتقد أن المتحف المصرى الكبير هو الأكبر.
3. What do you know about the Grand Egyptian museum ? ماذا تعرف عن المتحف المصرى الكبير ؟	- I know it has more space for valuable objects. - أعرف أن به مساحة أكبر للأشياء القيمة.
4. Why do you think we have museum ? لماذا تعتقد أننا لدينا متحف ؟	- I think to save and protect valuable objects and treasures. - أعتقد أنه لحفظ وحماية الأشياء القيمة والكنوز.
5. Which one is the quietest, the Valley of the King, the Karnak Temple or Habu Temple ? أيهما الأكثر هدوئًا، وادى الملوك، معبد الكرنك أم معبد حابو ؟	- In my opinion, Habu Temple is the quietest place. - فى رأيى أنه معبد حابو هو الأكثر هدوئًا.

Unit 9

Speaking

1. Discussing activities and travel plans.

مناقشة الأنشطة وخطط السفر.

Questions 	Answers 
• What are you going to do this weekend ? ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I am going to visit Sinai. - سأزور سيناء.
• Are you going to try rock climbing ? هل ستجرب رياضة تسلق الصخور ؟	- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

2. Describing the weather.

وصف حالة الطقس.

Questions 	Answers 
• What is the weather like now ? • How is the weather now ? كيف تكون حالة الطقس اليوم ؟	- There is fog, the weather is foggy. - يوجد ضباب، الطقس ضبابى.
• How was the weather yesterday ? كيف كان الطقس بالأمس ؟	- The weather was sunny. - كان الطقس مشمسًا.
• How will the weather be tomorrow ? كيف سيكون الطقس غدًا ؟	- The weather will be windy tomorrow. - سيكون الطقس عاصف غدًا.

3. Making suggestions and responding. تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها.

Making suggestions : الاقتراح :	Accepting : الموافقة :	Refusing : الرفض :
- What shall we .... (do) tomorrow ? ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل غدًا ؟ - How / What about .... (inf. + ing /noun) ? ماذا عن .... ؟ - Shall we .... ? هل بإمكاننا .... ؟ - Why don't we .... ? لما لا .... ؟	- Good idea. فكرة جيدة. - I like .... too. أنا أحب .... أيضًا. - I know! Let's .... أنا أعرف! هيا بنا	- I don't know. I'm not very good at .... أنا لا أعرف. أنا غير جيد فى .... - I'm not sure that sounds a bit scary. أنا غير متأكد، هذا يبدو مخيف قليلًا. - I disagree. أنا لا أوافق. - I'd prefer .... أفضل أن .... - I'd rather .... أفضل أن ....

Unit 10

Speaking

1. Asking and answering questions about what things are made of :

السؤال والإجابة عن المواد التى تصنع منها الأشياء :

Questions 	Answers 
• What's your pencil case made of ? مما صنعت مقلمتك ؟	- It's made of plastic. - صنعت من البلاستيك.
• What are the curtains made of ? مما صنعت الستائر ؟	- I'm not sure; I think it's made of cotton. - أنا غير متأكد، أعتقد أنها صنعت من القماش.

• What is a car made of ? مما صنعت السيارة ؟	- That's a difficult question ! It's made of a lot of things, for example .... - إنه سؤال صعب ! لقد صنعت من أشياء كثيرة على سبيل المثال ....
• What materials will the house be made of ? ما المواد التى سوف يُصنع منها المنزل ؟	- It will be made of plastic. - سوف يُصنع من البلاستيك.

2. Talking about predictions for the future. التحدث عن تنبؤات فى المستقبل.

- The houses will be a bit different to our (houses) today.
- ستصبح المنازل مختلفة قليلًا عن المنازل اليوم.
- I think we'll need more (gardens) in the future.
- أعتقد أننا سنحتاج (حدائق) أكثر فى المستقبل.
- The (gardens) will be on the roofs in the future.
- الحدائق ستكون فى الأسطح فى المستقبل.
- People will use (electric cars) in the future.
- سيستخدم الناس السيارات الكهربائية فى المستقبل.

3. Saying years. كيف نقول السنوات.

* We usually divide years into two parts :

- عادة ما نقوم بتقسيم السنين لجزئين لقراءتها :

2050 → twenty fifty

* For the years 2000 , we say :

- عندما نقرأ سنة ٢٠٠٠، نقول :

2000 Two thousand.

* For the years 2001 - 2009 :

- لقراءة السنين ٢٠٠١ حتى ٢٠٠٩

نقول ٢٠٠٠ + الرقم.

We say two thousand + number :

2002 → two thousand and two.

Unit 11

Speaking

Talking about saving the environment :

التحدث عن حماية البيئة :

Questions 	Answers 
• How can you help save our planet ? كيف يمكنك المساعدة فى حماية كوكبنا ؟	- Well, I can plant a tree. - حسنًا، بإمكانى أن أزرع شجرة. - Trees help to keep our air healthy. - تساعد الأشجار فى أن يبقىالهواء صحى.
• What should I do first ? ماذا يجب علىّ أن أفعل أولًا ؟	- First, wash an empty plastic pot. Secondly, put some small stones. - أولًا، قم بغسل إناء بلاستيك فارغ. ثانيًا، قم بوضع بعض الأحجار الصغيرة.
• Then, what should I do ? ثم ماذا يجب على أن أفعل ؟	- Fill the pot with soil and press your finger to make a small hole. - قم بملئ الإناء بالطين (التربة) وقم بالضغط باستخدام أصبعك لعمل حفرة صغيرة.
• How deep must it be ? كم يجب أن يكون العمق ؟ • Should I water it now ? هل يجب علىّ أن أقوم بالرى الآن ؟	- It must be 2 centimetres. - يجب أن تكون ٢ سم. - Yes. - نعم.

Unit 12

Speaking

Describing and asking about jobs. وصف الوظائف والسؤال عنها.

Questions 	Answers 
• What does a/an (job) .... do ? ماذا يفعل (وظيفة) .... ؟ • What's the job of a/an .... ? ما وظيفة .... ؟	- A dentist looks after people's teeth. - يقوم طبيب الأسنان بالعناية بأسنان الأشخاص. - An engineer designs machines. - يقوم المهندس بتصميم الآلات. - An accountant finds out how much money a business gets. - يقوم المحاسب بإيجاد كم الأموال التى يحصل عليها العمل التجارى. - A businessman works in an office. - يقوم رجل الأعمال بأداء عمله داخل المكتب.
• You visit some interesting places, don't you ? أنت تقوم بزيارة بعض الأماكن الشيقة، أليس كذلك ؟	- Yes. At the moment, I'm working in the Red Sea. - نعم، فى الوقت الحالى، أعمل فى البحر الأحمر. - Last year, I worked in Australia. - العام الماضى، عملت فى أستراليا. - Before that, I worked in .... - وقبل ذلك، عملت فى ....

Exercises on Language Functions

1. Complete the following dialogue :

Hany : What did you do last year on the holiday ?

Ali : I went (1) .... in the Red Sea.

Hany : I'd love to do that. I'd like to try windsurfing, too.

Ali : What (2) .... rock climbing ?

Hany : I don't know. I think rock climbing is a bit (3) ...., but I like trekking in the (4) ....

Ali : Me, too ! I like trekking in the mountains.

Hany : Are you going to try mountain biking, Ali ?

Ali : No, I'm not going to try mountain biking. It's very (5) .... to ride a bike in the mountains.

Hany : I think you're right. Zip lining looks scary, too.

Ali : I think it looks fun !

2. Complete the following dialogue :

Ola : Good morning. Maha ?

Maha : Good morning. How are you today ?

Ola : I'm fine.

Maha : What shall we do on Saturday ?

Ola : Why don't we go rock (1) .... ?

Maha : I'm not sure. It's quite dangerous. I'd (2) .... to do a different activity.

Ola : Ok. How about (3) .... basketball ?

Maha : I don't (4) .... I'm not very tall.

Ola : ok, not rock climbing or basketball. I know ! Let's play (5) ....

Maha : Good idea ! I always enjoy playing tennis.

3. Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer : Hello ! Mohamed ?

Mohamed : Hello Tamer ! Can I ask you a question ?

Tamer : Sure.

Mohamed : What is a car made of ?

Tamer : That's a difficult question ! It's (1) .... a lot of things

Mohamed : Like what ?

Tamer : For example, a car (2) .... is made of metal and the (3) .... are made of glass.

Mohamed : What are the seats (4) .... of, where you sit ?

Tamer : I (5) .... expensive car seats are made of leather.

Mohamed : Thank you, Tamer.

4. Complete the following dialogue :

Interviewer : What are you designing at the moment ?

Ahmed : I'm working on a project for houses in the future. They'll be different to our houses today.

Interviewer : In what ways (1) .... they be different ?

Ahmed : Well, I think we'll need more (2) .... in the future, but there won't be much space. So the garden will be on the (3) ....

Interviewer : A garden on the roof, great !

Ahmed : And I think people will all use electric cars in the future, So there'll be chargers for electricity car next to the house.

Interviewer : How will people get their electricity ?

Ahmed : There'll be lots of solar panels and a wind turbine. They'll make (4) ....

Interviewer : Great ! What else will be different (5) .... 2050 ?

Ahmed : Well, I think there will be robots to do all the housework.

5. Complete the following dialogue

Teacher : Is there anyone who wants to help to save our planet ?

Student : Yes, I am.

Teacher : Then, (1) .... can you do ?

Student : I can plant a (2) ....

Teacher : Well, how will you do that ?

Student : (3) .... , I will have a plastic pot.

Teacher : Go on !

Student : Secondly, I will (4) .... the pot with soil. Then make a hole to put the seed.

Teacher : How (5) .... must it be ?

Student : I must be 2 centimetres.

6. Complete the following dialogue :

Presenter : What's the best thing about your job ?

Interviewee : I help to (1) .... the plants.

Presenter : Oh, it's important to look after plants, (2) .... it ?

Interviewee : (3) ....

Presenter : And what's the worst thing about your job ?

Interviewee : Every job has some bad things, doesn't it ?

Presenter : Yes, it (4) .... Let me ask (5) .... you enjoy your job ?

Interviewee : Of course. I love it so much.

Presenter : Thank you.

Interviewee : You're welcome.

Answers of Main Book (1st Prep.)

إجابات كتاب الشرح للصف الأول الإعدادى

Unit (7)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. stadium 2. a. funfair
3. d. planetarium 4. c. aquarium
5. d. diary 6. a. exhibition
7. b. nervous

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. museum 2. b. alley
3. c. wheel 4. c. Area
5. b. statues 6. c. aged
7. a. shopping 8. c. had
9. c. took 10. a. uniform
11. a. moved 12. d. canteen

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. yesterday 2. d. did
3. a. moved 4. c. had
5. c. yesterday 6. c. visited
7. c. feel 8. c. drove
9. d. bought 10. c. Did
11. d. see 12. b. leave

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. have (had) 2. go (went)
3. last (ago) 4. Did (Were)
5. do (did) 6. listen (listened)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. swimming
2. c. salads
3. c. sister
4. a. sports

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. funfair 2. like
3. wheel 4. much
5. was

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. had 2. a. moved
3. c. make
4. a. bowling alley
5. b. canteen 6. a. friendly
7. b. planetarium
8. b. was 9. b. swam
10. d. eat

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is (was) 2. went (go)
3. next (last) 4. have (had)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. island 2. c. cave
3. a. sailor 4. a. Jazz
5. c. storm 6. b. jungle
7. a. coconuts 8. b. opinions
9. b. trumpet

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. play 2. c. interviewer
3. a. through 4. c. share
5. b. nearby 6. c. terrible
7. a. adventure 8. b. rained
9. c. voice 10. c. musician
11. a. sinks

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. Are 2. a. Has
3. a. Does 4. a. Is
5. c. What 6. b. What time
7. c. Which 8. c. Do
9. a. How many
10. b. Does

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Has (Have)
2. How (What / Which)
3. many (much)
4. Why (How)
5. When (Where)
6. What (Who)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. favourite 2. Do
3. don't 4. to
5. Who

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. music 2. c. rocks
3. d. voice 4. a. sink
5. a. down 6. c. nuts
7. b. clever 8. c. Are
9. c. What 10. b. Who

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. play (to play) 2. Did (Do)
3. into (on) 4. does (has)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. stadium 2. a. peppers
3. b. team 4. d. theatre

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. kind 2. c. really
3. d. woke 4. b. closed
5. b. working 6. b. have
7. a. windy

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. my father
2. c. Saturday
3. d. an hour
4. c. terrible

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. fantastic / my favourite
2. go 3. have
4. who 5. did

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. sailor 2. b. windy
3. a. Traditional
4. b. cooking 5. c. ticket
6. a. sinks 7. b. terrible
8. a. although 9. b. went
10. b. were

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. Tomorrow (Yesterday)
2. is (was)
3. sees (see) 4. go (went)

Test on Unit 7

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. watching sports
2. b. science
3. c. 5
4. d. busy

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. terrible 2. up
3. What 4. breakfast
5. closed

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. He arrived on the island.
2. It is an adventure story.
3. Because he wanted a warm place to sleep.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. b. food 5. c. island
6. b. rocks

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Museum 2. a. dead
3. b. decisions 4. c. riding

5. a. terrible 6. d. called
7. a. floats 8. b. watched
9. a. did 10. b. because

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. was (is)
2. listens (listened)
3. and (but)
4. don't (haven't)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Unit (8)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. population 2. a. country
3. c. road
4. c. measurements
5. c. tunnel 6. a. bridges
7. b. crowded

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. modern 2. b. narrow
3. b. high 4. c. guess
5. d. capital 6. a. Tower
7. b. did 8. c. visitors
9. b. busy 10. a. empty

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. higher
2. a. more difficult
3. c. longer
4. a. more beautiful
5. a. colder than
6. c. prettier than
7. b. richer
8. c. more crowded
9. d. nearer
10. a. warmer than

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. longest (longer)
2. easy (easier)
3. tallest (taller)
4. nicest (nicer)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. course 2. high
3. About 4. long
5. old

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. taller 2. a. nearer
3. c. worst 4. b. deep
5. a. traffic 6. d. describe
7. b. many 8. c. tourists
9. a. worse 10. c. longer

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. fast (faster) 2. then (than)
3. high (higher)
4. beautiful (more beautiful)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. suspension 2. b. sunset
3. c. view 4. b. climbing
5. c. achievements

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. ugly 2. b. expensive
3. a. high 4. b. across
5. b. think 6. d. of
7. b. in 8. d. with
9. c. opinion

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. widest
2. d. the most difficult
3. a. quieter 4. c. the nicest
5. b. the best
6. d. the most boring
7. c. the biggest
8. a. largest 9. d. less
10. d. the most exciting
11. c. most

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. busier (busiest)
2. more (most)
3. better (best)
4. most (more)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. widest 2. a. May
3. c. 67.36 4. c. Island

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. more 2. b. biggest
3. c. to 4. c. crowded
5. c. floor 6. c. give
7. d. dangerous 8. a. noisy
9. a. like 10. c. opinion

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. much (many) 2. more (most)
3. good (best) 4. long (wide)
5. the more (the most)
6. How (What) 4. never (ever)

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. competition 2. a. valuable
3. b. entrance 4. a. design
5. b. treasures 6. b. columns
7. c. display

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. space 2. d. welcomed
3. b. reason 4. c. century
5. b. spend 6. b. same
7. d. allow 8. a. popular

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. kings 2. a. tourists
3. b. quietest 4. d. day

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. about 2. c. historical
3. c. popular
4. b. crowded
5. b. most difficult
6. a. easiest 7. c. deep
8. d. subject 9. c. oldest
10. a. protect

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. most (the most)
2. quieter (quietest)
3. better (best) 4. fast (faster)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Test on Unit 8

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. In Cairo
2. c. walking
3. d. 2019
4. b. The river

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. walking 2. long
3. widest 4. course
5. time

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. It is about the Grand Egyptian Museum.
2. Valuable objects.
3. Because the old one did not have space for objects.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. b. expensive
5. b. smaller 6. a. near

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. crowded 2. b. suspensio

3. d. ugly 4. a. Bridge
5. c. space 6. d. treasures
7. c. columns 8. c. quietest
9. c. nicest 10. b. because

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. long (the longest)
2. more (the most)
3. good (better)
4. tallest (taller)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Unit (9)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. windsurfing 2. c. climbing
3. c. tent 4. a. negotiate
5. b. trekking 6. a. sailing
7. b. diving 8. d. journey

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. dangerous 2. b. went
3. b. try 4. c. takes
5. c. water 6. b. scary
7. b. guide 8. b. equipment
9. a. Bedouins 10. a. first
1. d. camel

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. go 2. b. am
3. b. going 4. b. going to
5. b. are going to go
6. c. is going to
7. c. is going to rain
8. b. win
9. c. am going to crash
10. b. is going to

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. don't (am not)
2. Will (Are)
3. slept (sleep)
4. going to (am going to)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. In Dahab
2. c. with her family
3. c. Try rock climbing
4. a. This afternoon

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. mountains
2. No
3. What
4. Why
5. time

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. plans 2. a. climbing
3. c. exciting 4. d. guide
5. b. Bedouin
6. c. windsurfing
7. b. journey
8. a. 'm going to travel
9. d. to do
10. d. is going to travel

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. last (next)
2. sleeping (to sleep)
3. from (of)
4. go (going)

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. transport 2. b. dark
3. a. article 4. b. railway
5. a. sunny

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. came 2. b. put
3. c. sounds 4. c. made
5. c. take 6. b. do
7. d. weather 8. a. British
9. b. fell 10. c. wind
11. c. foggy 12. b. adventure
13. b. taught 14. d. snow

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. ourselves 2. b. himself
3. d. myself 4. a. yourself
5. b. itself 6. b. themselves
7. b. herself 8. a. yourself
9. d. by 10. c. herself
11. d. themselves

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. himself (myself)
2. herself (itself)
3. himself (herself)
4. themselves (himself)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. yesterday 2. c. sunny
3. a. Yes, we did
4. c. Dark clouds

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. article 2. a. challenge
3. c. hurt 4. b. wet
5. c. snow 6. a. lining
7. b. made 8. c. yourself
9. d. themselves
10. b. herself

3. Read and correct the underline words :

1. itself (himself)
2. herself (yourself)

3. himself (herself)
4. themselves (ourselves)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :
Student's own answer.

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. Basketball 2. b. album
3. c. magazines 4. d. beach

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. respect 2. c. about
3. a. forms 4. c. made
5. c. looking 6. b. Dear
7. b. do 8. d. reply
9. b. mistakes 10. a. advantages
11. b. make 12. a. special

Exercise on Speaking Corner

Complete the following dialogue :

1. try 2. about
3. at 4. let's
5. when

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. Maher
2. b. Alexandria
3. c. Tomorrow
4. a. train

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. do 2. Yes
3. No 4. Where
5. How often

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. go 2. c. How about
3. d. themselves
4. a. made 5. a. excited
6. d. introduction
7. b. opinion
8. c. hobby 9. b. forms
10. c. do

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. spending (spend)
2. see (seeing)
3. playing (to play)
4. in (at)

Test on Unit 9

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. South Africa
2. a. tomorrow
3. a. Yes, there's
4. b. an adventure

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. was 2. with
3. How long 4. dangerous
5. move

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. A friend's visit.
2. By the beach.
3. Student's own answer.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. b. hope 5. c. grandad
6. d. a,b & c

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. trekking 2. b. adventure
3. c. zip 4. c. guide
5. b. skill 6. a. equipment
7. d. towel 8. d. themselves
9. d. 'm going to
10. d. is she going to

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doing (do)
2. you (yourself)
3. me (myself)
4. flying (to fly)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Unit (10)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. cushions 2. a. wall
3. b. tap 4. d. roof

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. plastic 2. c. wood
3. c. television 4. d. metal
5. b. wallet 6. b. main
7. b. bricks 8. b. colour
9. c. ovens 10. c. on
11. a. wool

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. are 2. c. is
3. d. made 4. a. 's
5. d. it's 6. a. weren't
7. c. were 8. b. was
9. c. made 10. b. weren't

2. Read and correct the underline words :

1. were (was) 2. are (is)
3. is (are) 4. some (any)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. metal
2. c. windows
3. a. plastic
4. a. seats

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. objects 2. b. wood
3. d. Age 4. a. Cushions
5. b. village 6. a. oven
7. c. tap 8. c. were
9. c. any 10. c. of

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. by (of) 2. it (it is)
3. no (any)
4. were (were not)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 3& 4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

. b. electric
. b. Solar panels
d. Architects 4. b. materials
b. Driverless 6. b. earthquake

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. take 2. b. safer
3. b. drive 4. b. drive
5. c. teachers 6. c. igloo
7. b. keep 8. c. Space
9. d. warm 10. c. cool
11. c. rectangular
12. a. circle

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. will 2. d. use
3. c. be 4. b. get
5. d. have 6. a. won't
7. d. use 8. b. look
9. b. will have
10. a. will

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. been (be)
2. being (be)
3. goes (go)
4. took (take)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. in the future
2. c. Robots

3. b. plastic
4. b. plastic bricks

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. an architect 2. what
3. doing 4. the gardens
5. why

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. electricity
2. b. sun 3. c. Driverless
4. d. Rockets 5. b. earthquake
6. a. warm 7. b. dream
8. c. will be 9. c. be
10. a. use

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. to have (have)
2. aren't (will)
3. goes (go)
4. were (be)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. creative 2. b. amazing
3. c. technology 4. b. timeline

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. moved 2. c. look
3. c. down 4. b. detail
5. b. make 6. b. with
7. d. make

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. 2018
2. b. the Red Sea
3. a. Cairo
4. c. ride

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. in
2. c. will you have
3. b. were
4. b. magination
5. b. creative
6. b. League 7. b. African
8. a. fun 9. a. plan
10. c. imagine

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. on (in) 2. had (have)
3. on (in) 4. on (down)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Test on Unit 10

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. Cairo
2. a. El Mokawloon
3. c. 2010
4. a. Basel

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Ancient 2. When
3. weren't 4. By
5. From

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Round Houses.
2. Yes, because they were strong and has space.
3. Snow or rain falls from the roof.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. b. at the top
5. a. a round building
6. b. shapes

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. painted 2. a. make
3. b. valley 4. a. oven
5. c. modern 6. b. panels
7. a. amazing 8. a. will
9. c. any 10. d. travel

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. used (use) 2. is (are)
3. it's (is it)
4. hundred (thousand)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Unit (11)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. whale 2. c. turtles
3. c. Shark 4. b. octopus
5. b. environment 6. b. recycle
7. b. planets 8. d. coral reefs
9. d. jellyfish 10. c. poisonous

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. protect 2. c. shell
3. d. tails 4. d. loses

5. b. danger 6. b. goes
7. d. hungry 8. c. take
9. d. from 10. c. throw away
11. b. text

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. feel 2. d. feels
3. b. becomes 4. c. see
5. c. touch 6. c. if
7. a. melts 8. c. have
9. d. loses 10. b. Turn
11. b. go 12. a. laugh

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. boils (boil) 2. made (make)
3. Where (When / If)
4. wearing (wear)
5. turned (turns)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Shark 2. live
3. shell 4. protects
5. sting

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. stings 2. d. teeth
3. b. environment
4. a. octopus 5. c. poisonous
6. c. use something again
7. b. planet 8. d. must
9. a. save 10. d. it rains

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. 'll feel (feel)
2. mustn't (must)
3. shouted (shout)
4. might happen (will happen)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. reserves 2. b. pots
3. d. ground 4. a. soil
5. b hole 6. c. seed

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. make 2. c. into
3. b. about 4. c. of
5. b. doing 6. b. share
7. b. Making 8. c. with
9. c. keep 10. b. planet
11. c. warm 12. c. make

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. must 2. a. mustn't
3. c. take 4. a. walk
5. b. mustn't 6. a. be

7. d. do 8. c. should
9. d. mustn't 10. a. must
11. c. mustn't

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. came (come)
2. must (mustn't)
3. made (make)
4. cleaned (clean)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. c. save 2. b. planet
3. a. Trees 4. b. air

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. reserve 2. see
3. animals 4. food
5. important

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. frighten 2. b. reserves
3. a. healthy 4. c. empty
5. b. hole 6. c. seed
7. d. rubbish 8. a. Listen
9. a. forget 10. c. much

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. watered (water)
2. sharing (share)
3. found (find)
4. must (mustn't)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. writer 2. a. skeleton
3. b. fishermen 4. c. respect
5. b. gloves 6. a. headphones
7. d. snack

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. worried 2. c. line
3. d. took 4. b. skeleton
5. c. main 6. b. up
7. a. role 8. a. weak
9. d. teach

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. Fisherman
2. c. catch fish
3. c. One day
4. a. at the end of

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d. Brave 2. b. skeleton
3. b. dangerous
4. c. shark 5. b. ticket

6. c. gloves 7. b. come back
8. a. What 9. a. clean
10. b. mustn't

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. cleans (clean)
2. doing (to do)
3. study (to study)
4. threw (throw)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Test on Unit 11

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. The shark
2. c. The shark
3. c. A new one grows
4. c. 20.000

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. Where 2. pots
3. do 4. Fill
5. water

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Dangers of plastic on the environment.
2. They are useful but sometimes poisonous.
3. Because they eat plastic.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. b. places by the sea
5. c. papers and glass
6. d. death

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. stings 2. c. follow
3. b. should I do
4. b. tired
5. d. Throw away
6. b. planet
7. b. environment
8. b. centre
9. a. roads 10. c. nature

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. must (mustn't)
2. we should (should we)
3. to eat (eat)
4. rained (rains)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Unit (12)

Lessons 1 & 2

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. accountant
2. d. photographer
3. b. architect 4. c. writer
5. d. scientist 6. b. dentist
7. c. businessman
8. c. computer programmer
9. c. designs
10. c. businesswoman
11. d. pilot 12. b. teacher
13. b. a marine biologist

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. look 2. b. results
3. d. dive 4. c. at
5. a. goals 6. c. in
7. b. name

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c. who 2. a. who
3. b. who 4. c. isn't it
5. a. doesn't she
6. b. shouldn't you
7. d. aren't they
8. c. doesn't 9. b. can't you
10. c. watched 11. a. does she
12. a. speaks

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. doesn't (don't)
2. does (is)
3. when (who)
4. don't (didn't)

General Exercises

Lessons 1 & 2

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. a. the ocean 2. c. ocean
3. b. animals
4. c. marine biologist

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. teacher 2. Where
3. teach 4. How
5. far

3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. scores 2. a. engineer
3. c. photographer
4. a. protect
5. b. Nurses 6. b. terrible
7. d. results
8. d. will you 9. b. doesn't he
10. a. were there

4. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. was (is) 2. do (don't)
3. would (will)
4. isn't she (aren't they)

5. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 3&4

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. pass 2. d. university
3. b. Education 4. c. apartment
5. c. get 6. c. pottery
7. b. earn

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. another 2. c. plans
3. c. work 4. c. get
5. b. Making 6. b. local
7. d. African 8. b. sell
9. c. practise 10. b. catch

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. gets 2. c. won't learn
3. b. see 4. b. will
5. c. have 6. a. won't
7. d. visit 8. c. won't go
9. a. be 10. b. get
11. b. will you feel
12. b. Will

2. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. lived (live) 2. would (will)
3. goes (go) 4. being (be)

General Exercises

Lessons 3 & 4

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d

1. c. baskets 2. a. earn
3. b. Ghana 4. b. women

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. pass 2. c. drive
3. b. got 4. d. very old
5. b. adult 6. c. earn
7. a. jewellery 8. d. 'll study
9. a. visit 10. a. don't have

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'm (will) 2. do (will)
3. Would (will) 4. will be (is)

4. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.

Lessons 5&6

Exercise on Key Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a. technology 2. b. illnesses
3. c. cures 4. c. apps
5. a. robots 6. c. doctor

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. play 2. a. countryside
3. c. plan 4. b. revise

5. b. make 6. b. same
7. b. exciting 8. b. make
9. d. flies 10. b. sailors

General Exercises

Lessons 5 & 6

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. plans 2. a. the guitar
3. c. design 4. c. Next year

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. Voluntary 2. c. plan
3. b. job 4. b. hopeful
5. a. Technology 6. b. Robots
7. c. countryside 8. c. to design
9. c. years' time
10. b. won't catch

3. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. is (isn't) 2. got (gets)
3. go to (am going to)
4. going (go)

Test on Unit 12

A. Listening

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. b. An engineer
2. c. In a factory
3. d. b & c 4. a. Yes, it is.

B. Language Functions

2. Complete the following dialogue :

1. marine biologist
2. life animals 3. What
4. Why do upon go diving ?
5. interesting

C. Reading Comprehension

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Traditional business.
2. Egypt, Kenya and Ghana.
3. Yes, because they are beautiful.

b. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

4. d. internet 5. c. get
6. d. skills

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b. cures 2. b. pass
3. d. plans 4. c. traditional
5. a. apartment 6. c. diving
7. c. accountant 8. a. are they
9. d. will they 10. c. drives

5. Read and correct the underlined words :

1. I'd (will) 2. I'd (will)
3. would (will) 4. which (who)

E. Writing

6. Write a paragraph of EIGHTY (80) words on :

Student's own answer.